



## **Routing Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)**

**First Published:** 2018-03-30

### **Americas Headquarters**

Cisco Systems, Inc.  
170 West Tasman Drive  
San Jose, CA 95134-1706  
USA  
<http://www.cisco.com>  
Tel: 408 526-4000  
800 553-NETS (6387)  
Fax: 408 527-0883





# CONTENTS

---

## CHAPTER 1

### Configuring Bidirectional Forwarding Detection 1

#### Bidirectional Forwarding Detection 1

##### Finding Feature Information 1

##### Prerequisites for Bidirectional Forwarding Detection 1

##### Restrictions for Bidirectional Forwarding Detection 2

##### Information About Bidirectional Forwarding Detection 2

##### BFD Operation 2

##### Benefits of Using BFD for Failure Detection 5

##### How to Configure Bidirectional Forwarding Detection 6

##### Configuring BFD Session Parameters on the Interface 6

##### Configuring BFD Support for Dynamic Routing Protocols 7

##### Configuring BFD Support for Static Routing 19

##### Configuring BFD Echo Mode 21

##### Creating and Configuring BFD Templates 23

##### Monitoring and Troubleshooting BFD 24

##### Feature Information for Bidirectional Forwarding Detection 25

---

## CHAPTER 2

### Configuring MSDP 27

#### Information About Configuring MSDP 27

##### MSDP Overview 27

##### MSDP Operation 28

##### MSDP Benefits 29

##### How to Configure MSDP 30

##### Default MSDP Configuration 30

##### Configuring a Default MSDP Peer 30

##### Caching Source-Active State 32

Requesting Source Information from an MSDP Peer	33
Controlling Source Information that Your Switch Originates	34
Redistributing Sources	35
Filtering Source-Active Request Messages	37
Controlling Source Information that Your Switch Forwards	38
Using a Filter	38
Using TTL to Limit the Multicast Data Sent in SA Messages	40
Controlling Source Information that Your Switch Receives	41
Configuring an MSDP Mesh Group	43
Shutting Down an MSDP Peer	44
Including a Bordering PIM Dense-Mode Region in MSDP	45
Configuring an Originating Address other than the RP Address	47
Monitoring and Maintaining MSDP	48
Configuration Examples for Configuring MSDP	49
Configuring a Default MSDP Peer: Example	49
Caching Source-Active State: Example	49
Requesting Source Information from an MSDP Peer: Example	50
Controlling Source Information that Your Switch Originates: Example	50
Controlling Source Information that Your Switch Forwards: Example	50
Controlling Source Information that Your Switch Receives: Example	50
Feature Information for Multicast Source Discovery Protocol	50

---

**CHAPTER 3**
**Configuring IP Unicast Routing 51**

Restrictions for IP Unicast Routing	51
Information About Configuring IP Unicast Routing	51
Information About IP Routing	52
Types of Routing	52
Classless Routing	53
Address Resolution	55
Proxy ARP	56
ICMP Router Discovery Protocol	56
UDP Broadcast Packets and Protocols	56
Broadcast Packet Handling	57
IP Broadcast Flooding	57

How to Configure IP Routing	58
How to Configure IP Addressing	59
Default IP Addressing Configuration	59
Assigning IP Addresses to Network Interfaces	60
Using Subnet Zero	62
Disabling Classless Routing	63
Configuring Address Resolution Methods	63
Defining a Static ARP Cache	64
Setting ARP Encapsulation	65
Enabling Proxy ARP	66
Routing Assistance When IP Routing is Disabled	67
Proxy ARP	67
Default Gateway	68
ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP)	68
Configuring Broadcast Packet Handling	70
Enabling Directed Broadcast-to-Physical Broadcast Translation	70
Forwarding UDP Broadcast Packets and Protocols	72
Establishing an IP Broadcast Address	73
Flooding IP Broadcasts	75
Monitoring and Maintaining IP Addressing	76
How to Configure IP Unicast Routing	77
Enabling IP Unicast Routing	77
Example of Enabling IP Routing	78
What to Do Next	78
Monitoring and Maintaining the IP Network	78
Feature Information for IP Unicast Routing	79

---

## CHAPTER 4

### Configuring RIP 81

Information About RIP	81
Summary Addresses and Split Horizon	81
How to Configure RIP	82
Default RIP Configuration	82
Configuring Basic RIP Parameters	82
Configuring RIP Authentication	84

Configuring Summary Addresses and Split Horizon	86
Configuring Split Horizon	87
Configuration Example for Summary Addresses and Split Horizon	88

---

**CHAPTER 5**
**Configuring OSPF 91**

Information About OSPF	91
OSPF Nonstop Forwarding	91
OSPF NSF Awareness	92
OSPF NSF Capability	92
OSPF Area Parameters	92
Other OSPF Parameters	92
LSA Group Pacing	93
Loopback Interfaces	93
How to Configure OSPF	94
Default OSPF Configuration	94
Configuring Basic OSPF Parameters	95
Configuring OSPF Interfaces	96
Configuring OSPF Area Parameters	99
Configuring Other OSPF Parameters	100
Changing LSA Group Pacing	102
Configuring a Loopback Interface	103
Monitoring OSPF	104
Configuration Examples for OSPF	105
Example: Configuring Basic OSPF Parameters	105

---

**CHAPTER 6**
**Configuring EIGRP 107**

Information About EIGRP	107
EIGRP Features	107
EIGRP Components	108
EIGRP Nonstop Forwarding	108
EIGRP NSF Awareness	109
EIGRP NSF Capability	109
EIGRP Stub Routing	109
How to Configure EIGRP	110

Default EIGRP Configuration	110
Configuring Basic EIGRP Parameters	112
Configuring EIGRP Interfaces	113
Configuring EIGRP Route Authentication	115
Monitoring and Maintaining EIGRP	117

---

## CHAPTER 7

### Configuring BGP 119

Restrictions for BGP	119
Information About BGP	119
BGP Network Topology	119
Nonstop Forwarding Awareness	121
Information About BGP Routing	121
Routing Policy Changes	121
BGP Decision Attributes	122
Route Maps	123
BGP Filtering	123
Prefix List for BGP Filtering	124
BGP Community Filtering	124
BGP Neighbors and Peer Groups	125
Aggregate Routes	125
Routing Domain Confederations	125
BGP Route Reflectors	125
Route Dampening	126
More BGP Information	126
How to Configure BGP	126
Default BGP Configuration	126
Enabling BGP Routing	129
Managing Routing Policy Changes	131
Configuring BGP Decision Attributes	132
Configuring BGP Filtering with Route Maps	134
Configuring BGP Filtering by Neighbor	135
Configuring BGP Filtering by Access Lists and Neighbors	136
Configuring Prefix Lists for BGP Filtering	137
Configuring BGP Community Filtering	138

Configuring BGP Neighbors and Peer Groups	140
Configuring Aggregate Addresses in a Routing Table	142
Configuring Routing Domain Confederations	143
Configuring BGP Route Reflectors	145
Configuring Route Dampening	146
Monitoring and Maintaining BGP	147

---

## CHAPTER 8

### Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6 149

Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6	149
Information About Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6	149
Multiprotocol BGP Extensions for IPv6	149
Multiprotocol BGP for the IPv6 Multicast Address Family	149
How to Implement Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6	150
Configuring an IPv6 BGP Routing Process and BGP Router ID	150
Configuring IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Between Two Peers	152
Configuring IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Between Two Peers Using Link-Local Addresses	153
Configuring an IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Peer Group	156
Configuring a Route Map for IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Prefixes	158
Redistributing Prefixes into IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP	161
Advertising Routes into IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP	162
Advertising IPv4 Routes Between IPv6 BGP Peers	163
Assigning BGP Administrative Distance for Multicast BGP Routes	165
Generating IPv6 Multicast BGP Updates	167
Configuring the IPv6 BGP Graceful Restart Capability	168
Resetting IPv6 BGP Sessions	169
Verifying the IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Configuration	170
Configuration Examples for Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6	171
Example: Configuring a BGP Process, BGP Router ID, and IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Peer	171
Example: Configuring an IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Peer Using a Link-Local Address	171
Example Configuring an IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Peer Group	172
Example: Configuring a Route Map for IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Prefixes	172
Example Redistributing Prefixes into IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP	173
Example: Advertising Routes into IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP	173
Example: Advertising IPv4 Routes Between IPv6 Peers	173



Additional References for Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6	174
Feature Information for Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6	174

---

## CHAPTER 9

### Configuring IS-IS Routing 175

Information About IS-IS Routing	175
Nonstop Forwarding Awareness	176
IS-IS Global Parameters	176
IS-IS Interface Parameters	176
How to Configure IS-IS	177
Default IS-IS Configuration	177
Enabling IS-IS Routing	178
Configuring IS-IS Global Parameters	180
Configuring IS-IS Interface Parameters	183
Monitoring and Maintaining IS-IS	185
Feature Information for IS-IS	186

---

## CHAPTER 10

### Configuring Multi-VRF CE 187

Information About Multi-VRF CE	187
Understanding Multi-VRF CE	187
Network Topology	188
Packet-Forwarding Process	189
Network Components	189
VRF-Aware Services	189
How to Configure Multi-VRF CE	190
Default Multi-VRF CE Configuration	190
Multi-VRF CE Configuration Guidelines	191
Configuring VRFs	191
Configuring VRF-Aware Services	193
Configuring VRF-Aware Services for ARP	193
Configuring VRF-Aware Services for Ping	193
Configuring VRF-Aware Services for SNMP	194
Configuring VRF-Aware Services for NTP	195
Configuring VRF-Aware Services for uRPF	198
Configuring VRF-Aware RADIUS	199

Configuring VRF-Aware Services for Syslog	199
Configuring VRF-Aware Services for Traceroute	200
Configuring VRF-Aware Services for FTP and TFTP	200
Configuring Multicast VRFs	201
Configuring a VPN Routing Session	203
Configuring BGP PE to CE Routing Sessions	204
Monitoring Multi-VRF CE	205
Configuration Examples for Multi-VRF CE	205
Multi-VRF CE Configuration Example	205
Feature Information for Multi-VRF CE	209

---

**CHAPTER 11**
**Configuring Unicast Reverse Path Forwarding 211**

Configuring Unicast Reverse Path Forwarding	211
---	-----

---

**CHAPTER 12**
**Protocol-Independent Features 213**

Protocol-Independent Features	213
Distributed Cisco Express Forwarding	213
Information About Cisco Express Forwarding	213
How to Configure Cisco Express Forwarding	214
Load-Balancing Scheme for CEF Traffic	215
Restrictions for Configuring a Load-Balancing Scheme for CEF Traffic	215
CEF Load-Balancing Overview	216
Per-Destination Load Balancing for CEF Traffic	216
Load-Balancing Algorithms for CEF Traffic	216
How to Configure a Load-Balancing for CEF Traffic	216
Configuration Examples for CEF Traffic Load-Balancing	218
Number of Equal-Cost Routing Paths	219
Information About Equal-Cost Routing Paths	219
How to Configure Equal-Cost Routing Paths	219
Static Unicast Routes	220
Information About Static Unicast Routes	220
Configuring Static Unicast Routes	221
Default Routes and Networks	222
Information About Default Routes and Networks	222

How to Configure Default Routes and Networks	222
Route Maps to Redistribute Routing Information	223
Information About Route Maps	223
How to Configure a Route Map	223
How to Control Route Distribution	227
Policy-Based Routing	228
Restrictions for Configuring PBR	228
Information About Policy-Based Routing	229
How to Configure PBR	230
Filtering Routing Information	233
Setting Passive Interfaces	233
Controlling Advertising and Processing in Routing Updates	234
Filtering Sources of Routing Information	235
Managing Authentication Keys	236
Prerequisites	236
How to Configure Authentication Keys	237

---

## CHAPTER 13

<b>Configuring Generic Routing Encapsulation(GRE) Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership</b>	<b>239</b>
Restrictions for GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership	239
Information About GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership	239
How to Configure GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership	240
Configuration Example for GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership	241
Additional References	242
Feature History for Generic Routing Encapsulation Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership	243

---

## CHAPTER 14

<b>Configuring Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE</b>	<b>245</b>
Prerequisites for Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE	245
Restrictions for Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE	245
Information About Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE	246
Information About NHRP	246
Information About mGRE	246
How to Configure Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE	248

Configuring Unicast mGRE for Hub	248
Configuring Unicast mGRE at a Spoke	250
Configuring Unicast mGRE at the Hub	251
Configuring Multicast mGRE	252
Verifying the mGRE Configuration	253
Configuration Examples for Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE	256
Example: Configuring Unicast mGRE for Hub	256
Example: Configuring Unicast mGRE at Spoke	256
Example: Configuring Unicast mGRE at Hub	257
Example: Configuring Multicast mGRE	257
Sample mGRE Configuration at Hub and Spokes	257
Feature History and Information for Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE	258

---

**CHAPTER 15**
**Configuring BGP Support for 4-byte ASN 261**

Information About BGP Support for 4-byte ASN	261
BGP Autonomous System Number Formats	261
Cisco Implementation of 4-Byte Autonomous System Numbers	263
How to Configure BGP Support for 4-byte ASN	264
Configuring a BGP Routing Process and Peers Using 4-Byte Autonomous System Numbers	264
Modifying the Default Output and Regular Expression Match Format for 4-Byte Autonomous System Numbers	267
Configuration Examples for BGP Support for 4-byte ASN	271
Examples: Configuring a BGP Routing Process and Peers Using 4-Byte Autonomous System Numbers	271
Examples: Configuring a VRF and Setting an Extended Community Using a BGP 4-Byte Autonomous System Number	274
Additional References for BGP Support for 4-byte ASN	275
Feature History and Information for BGP Support for 4-byte ASN	276

---

**CHAPTER 16**
**Configuring BGP Graceful Shutdown 277**

Information About BGP Graceful Shutdown	277
Purpose and Benefits of BGP Graceful Shutdown	277
GSHUT Community	277
BGP GSHUT Enhancement	278

How to Configure BGP Graceful Shutdown	278
Shutting Down a BGP Link Gracefully	278
Filtering BGP Routes Based on the GSHUT Community	280
Configuring BGP GSHUT Enhancement	282
Configuration Examples for BGP Graceful Shutdown	283
Example: Shutting Down a BGP Link Gracefully	283
Example: Filtering BGP Routes Based on the GSHUT Community	284
Example: BGP GSHUT Enhancement	284
Additional References	286
Feature Information for BGP Graceful Shutdown	286

---

## CHAPTER 17

### Configuring EIGRP MIB 287

EIGRP MIB	287
Prerequisites for EIGRP MIB	287
Restrictions for EIGRP MIB	287
Information About EIGRP MIB	287
EIGRP MIB Overview	287
EIGRP Interface Table	288
EIGRP Neighbor Table	289
EIGRP Topology Table	290
EIGRP Traffic Statistics Table	291
EIGRP VPN Table	293
EIGRP Notifications	293
How to Enable EIGRP MIB	294
Enabling EIGRP MIB Notifications	294
Configuration Examples for EIGRP MIB	295
Example: Enabling EIGRP MIB Notifications	295
Additional References for EIGRP MIB	295
Feature Information for EIGRP MIB	296

---

## CHAPTER 18

### Configuring EIGRP Wide Metrics 297

EIGRP Wide Metrics	297
Information About EIGRP Wide Metrics	297
EIGRP Composite Cost Metrics	297

EIGRP Wide Metrics	298
EIGRP Metric Weights	299
Additional References for EIGRP MIB	301
Feature Information for EIGRP Wide Metrics	301

---

**CHAPTER 19**
**Configuring OSPFv3 Fast Convergence - LSA and SPF Throttling 303**

OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling	303
Information About OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling	303
Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling	303
How to Configure OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling	304
Tuning LSA and SPF Timers for OSPFv3 Fast Convergence	304
Configuring LSA and SPF Throttling for OSPFv3 Fast Convergence	305
Configuration Examples for OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling	306
Example: Configuring LSA and SPF Throttling for OSPFv3 Fast Convergence	306
Additional References	306
Feature Information for OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling	307

---

**CHAPTER 20**
**Configuring NSSA for OSPFv2 309**

Configuring NSSA for OSPFv2	309
Information About Configuring NSSA for OSPF	309
Characteristics of RFC 3101	309
RFC 1587 Compliance	309
ABR as NSSA Link State Advertisement Translator	310
How to Configure NSSA for OSPF	311
Configuring an OSPFv2 NSSA Area and Its Parameters	311
Configuring an NSSA ABR as a Forced NSSA LSA Translator	313
Disabling RFC 3101 Compatibility and Enabling RFC 1587 Compatibility	314
Configuration Examples for OSPF NSSA	315
Example: Configuring OSPF NSSA	315
Example: OSPF NSSA Area with RFC 3101 Disabled and RFC 1587 Active	317
Example: Verifying OSPF NSSA	319
Additional References for OSPF Not-So-Stubby Areas (NSSA)	324
Feature Information for Configuring NSSA	324

---

**CHAPTER 21****Configuring OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer 327**

- Information About the OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer 327
- How to Configure the OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer 328
- Configuration Examples for the OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer 330
  - Example: Configuring the OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer 330
  - Example: Verifying OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer 330
- Additional References for OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer 331
- Feature Information for OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer 332

---

**CHAPTER 22****Configuring OSPFv3 BFD 333**

- OSPFv3 for BFD 333
  - Information About OSPFv3 for BFD 333
  - How to Configure OSPFv3 for BFD 333
    - Configuring BFD Support for OSPFv3 333
    - Retrieving BFDv6 Information for Monitoring and Troubleshooting 337
  - Configuring BFD Support for OSPFv3 338
    - Example: Displaying OSPF Interface Information about BFD 338
- Additional References 338
- Feature Information for OSPFv3 for BFD 339

---

**CHAPTER 23****Configuring OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option 341**

- OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option 341
  - Information About OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option 341
  - OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option 341
- How to Calculate OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option 342
  - Calculating OSPFv3 External Path Preferences per RFC 5340 342
- Configuration Examples for OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option 342
  - Example: Calculating OSPFv3 External Path Preferences per RFC 5340 342
- Additional References 343
- Feature Information for OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option 343

---

**CHAPTER 24****Configuring Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3 345**

- Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3 345

Information About Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3	345
OSPFv3 Graceful Shutdown	345
How to Configure Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3	345
Configuring Graceful Shutdown of the OSPFv3 Process	345
Configuring Graceful Shutdown of the OSPFv3 Process in Address-Family Configuration Mode	347
Configuration Examples for Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3	348
Example: Configuring Graceful Shutdown of the OSPFv3 Process	348
Example: Configuring Graceful Shutdown of the OSPFv3 Interface	348
Additional References for Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3	349
Feature Information for Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3	349

---

## CHAPTER 25

### Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3 351

Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3	351
Information About Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3	351
RFC 1587 Compliance	351
ABR as OSPFv3 NSSA LSA Translator	351
How to Configure NSSA for OSPFv3	353
Configuring an OSPFv3 NSSA Area and Its Parameters	353
Configuring an NSSA ABR as a Forced NSSA LSA Translator for OSPFv3	355
Disabling RFC 3101 Compatibility and Enabling RFC 1587 Compatibility	356
Configuration Examples for Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3	357
Example: NSSA for OSPFv3	357
Additional References for Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3	358
Feature Information for Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3	359

---

## CHAPTER 26

### Configuring OSPF Retransmissions Limit 361

OSPF Retransmissions Limit	361
Restrictions For OSPF Retransmissions Limit	361
Information About OSPF Retransmissions Limit	361
Overview About OSPF Retransmissions Limit	361
Benefits	361
How to Configure OSPF Retransmissions Limit	362
Setting OSPF Retransmission Limits	362



Configuration Examples for OSPF Retransmissions Limit 362

Example: Configuring OSPF Retransmissions Limit 362

Additional References for OSPF Retransmissions Limit 363

Feature Information for OSPF Retransmissions Limit 363

---

## CHAPTER 27

### Configuring OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA 365

OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA 365

Information About OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA 365

OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA 365

How to Configure OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA 365

Configuring the OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA 365

Configuration Examples for OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA 367

Example: Verifying the OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA 367

Additional References 367

Feature Information for OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA 367

---

## CHAPTER 28

### Configuring OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore 369

OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore 369

Information About OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore 369

Demand Circuit Ignore Support 369

How to Configure OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore 369

Configuring Demand Circuit Ignore Support for OSPFv3 369

Configuration Examples for OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore 370

Example: Demand Circuit Ignore Support for OSPFv3 370

Additional References for OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore 371

Feature Information for OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore 371

---

## CHAPTER 29

### Configuring Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3 373

Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3 373

Prerequisites for Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3 373

Information About Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3 373

OSPFv3 Prefix Suppression Support 373

Globally Suppress IPv4 and IPv6 Prefix Advertisements by Configuring the OSPFv3 Process 374

Suppress IPv4 and IPv6 Prefix Advertisements on a Per-Interface Basis 374

How to Configure Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3	374
Configuring Prefix Suppression Support of the OSPFv3 Process	374
Configuring Prefix Suppression Support of the OSPFv3 Process in Address-Family Configuration Mode	375
Configuring Prefix Suppression Support on a Per-Interface Basis	376
Troubleshooting IPv4 and IPv6 Prefix Suppression	377
Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3	378
Example: Configuring Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3	378
Feature Information for Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3	379



## CHAPTER 1

# Configuring Bidirectional Forwarding Detection

- [Bidirectional Forwarding Detection, on page 1](#)

## Bidirectional Forwarding Detection

This document describes how to enable the Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) protocol. BFD is a detection protocol that is designed to provide fast forwarding path failure detection times for all media types, encapsulations, topologies, and routing protocols.

BFD provides a consistent failure detection method for network administrators, in addition to fast forwarding path failure detection. Because the network administrator can use BFD to detect forwarding path failures at a uniform rate, rather than the variable rates for different routing protocol hello mechanisms, network profiling and planning will be easier, and reconvergence time will be consistent and predictable.

## Finding Feature Information

Your software release may not support all the features documented in this module. For the latest caveats and feature information, see Bug Search Tool and the release notes for your platform and software release. To find information about the features documented in this module, and to see a list of the releases in which each feature is supported, see the feature information table at the end of this module.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to <http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn>. An account on Cisco.com is not required.

## Prerequisites for Bidirectional Forwarding Detection

- Cisco Express Forwarding and IP routing must be enabled on all participating switches.
- One of the IP routing protocols supported by BFD must be configured on the switches before BFD is deployed. You should implement fast convergence for the routing protocol that you are using. See the IP routing documentation for your version of Cisco IOS software for information on configuring fast convergence. See the Restrictions for Bidirectional Forwarding Detection section for more information on BFD routing protocol support in Cisco IOS software.

## Restrictions for Bidirectional Forwarding Detection

- BFD works only for directly connected neighbors. BFD neighbors must be no more than one IP hop away. Multihop configurations are not supported.
- BFD support is not available for all platforms and interfaces. To confirm BFD support for a specific platform or interface and obtain the most accurate platform and hardware restrictions, see the Cisco IOS software release notes for your software version.
- BFD packets are not matched in the QoS policy for self-generated packets.
- BFD packets are matched in the **class class-default** command. So, the user must make sure of the availability of appropriate bandwidth to prevent dropping of BFD packets due to oversubscription.
- BFD HA support is not available starting Cisco Denali IOS XE 16.3.1

## Information About Bidirectional Forwarding Detection

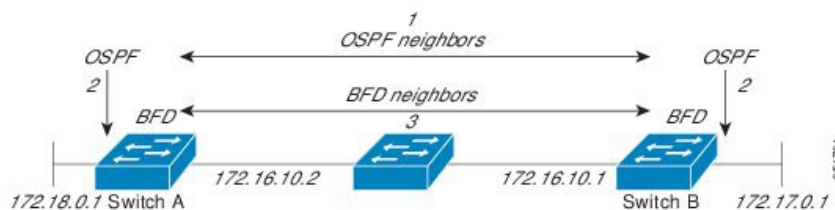
### BFD Operation

BFD provides a low-overhead, short-duration method of detecting failures in the forwarding path between two adjacent routers, including the interfaces, data links, and forwarding planes.

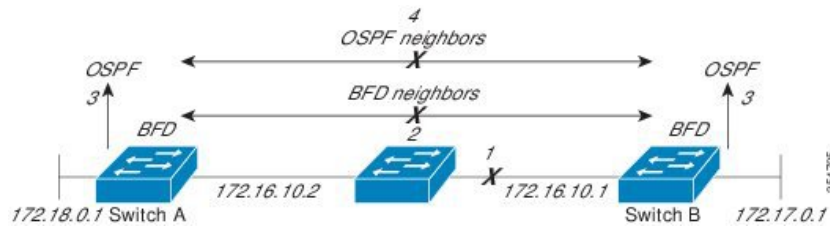
BFD is a detection protocol that you enable at the interface and routing protocol levels. Cisco supports BFD asynchronous mode, which depends on the sending of BFD control packets between two systems to activate and maintain BFD neighbor sessions between routers. Therefore, in order for a BFD session to be created, you must configure BFD on both systems (or BFD peers). Once BFD has been enabled on the interfaces and at the router level for the appropriate routing protocols, a BFD session is created, BFD timers are negotiated, and the BFD peers will begin to send BFD control packets to each other at the negotiated interval.

### Neighbor Relationships

BFD provides fast BFD peer failure detection times independently of all media types, encapsulations, topologies, and routing protocols BGP, EIGRP, IS-IS, and OSPF. By sending rapid failure detection notices to the routing protocols in the local router to initiate the routing table recalculation process, BFD contributes to greatly reduced overall network convergence time. The figure below shows a simple network with two routers running OSPF and BFD. When OSPF discovers a neighbor (1) it sends a request to the local BFD process to initiate a BFD neighbor session with the OSPF neighbor router (2). The BFD neighbor session with the OSPF neighbor router is established (3).



The figure below shows what happens when a failure occurs in the network (1). The BFD neighbor session with the OSPF neighbor router is torn down (2). BFD notifies the local OSPF process that the BFD neighbor is no longer reachable (3). The local OSPF process tears down the OSPF neighbor relationship (4). If an alternative path is available, the routers will immediately start converging on it.



A routing protocol needs to register with BFD for every neighbor it acquires. Once a neighbor is registered, BFD initiates a session with the neighbor if a session does not already exist.

OSPF registers with BFD when:

- A neighbor finite state machine (FSM) transitions to full state.
- Both OSPF BFD and BFD are enabled.

On broadcast interfaces, OSPF establishes a BFD session only with the designated router (DR) and backup designated router (BDR), but not between any two routers in DROTHER state.

## BFD Detection of Failures

Once a BFD session has been established and timer negotiations are complete, BFD peers send BFD control packets that act in the same manner as an IGP hello protocol to detect liveness, except at a more accelerated rate. The following information should be noted:

- BFD is a forwarding path failure detection protocol. BFD detects a failure, but the routing protocol must take action to bypass a failed peer.
- Starting Cisco IOS XE Denali 16.3.1, Cisco devices will support BFD version 0, where devices will use one BFD session for multiple client protocols in the implementation. For example, if a network is running OSPF and EIGRP across the same link to the same peer, only one BFD session will be established, and BFD will share session information with both routing protocols.

## BFD Version Interoperability

All BFD sessions come up as Version 1 by default and will be interoperable with Version 0. The system automatically performs BFD version detection, and BFD sessions between neighbors will run in the highest common BFD version between neighbors. For example, if one BFD neighbor is running BFD Version 0 and the other BFD neighbor is running Version 1, the session will run BFD Version 0. The output from the **show bfd neighbors [details]** command will verify which BFD version a BFD neighbor is running.

See the Example Configuring BFD in an EIGRP Network with Echo Mode Enabled by Default for an example of BFD version detection.

## BFD Session Limits

Starting Cisco IOS XE Denali 16.3.1, the number of BFD sessions that can be created has been increased to 100.

## BFD Support for Nonbroadcast Media Interfaces

Starting Cisco IOS XE Denali 16.3.1, the BFD feature is supported on routed, SVI and L3 portchannels.

The **bfd interval** command must be configured on the interface to initiate BFD monitoring.

## BFD Support for Nonstop Forwarding with Stateful Switchover

Typically, when a networking device restarts, all routing peers of that device detect that the device went down and then came back up. This transition results in a routing flap, which could spread across multiple routing domains. Routing flaps caused by routing restarts create routing instabilities, which are detrimental to the overall network performance. Nonstop forwarding (NSF) helps to suppress routing flaps in devices that are enabled with stateful switchover (SSO), thereby reducing network instability.

NSF allows for the forwarding of data packets to continue along known routes while the routing protocol information is being restored after a switchover. With NSF, peer networking devices do not experience routing flaps. Data traffic is forwarded through intelligent line cards or dual forwarding processors while the standby RP assumes control from the failed active RP during a switchover. The ability of line cards and forwarding processors to remain up through a switchover and to be kept current with the Forwarding Information Base (FIB) on the active RP is key to NSF operation.

In devices that support dual RPs, SSO establishes one of the RPs as the active processor; the other RP is designated as the standby processor, and then synchronizes information between them. A switchover from the active to the standby processor occurs when the active RP fails, when it is removed from the networking device, or when it is manually taken down for maintenance.

### BFD Intervals Based on Interface

The following table displays the relationship between interfaces, BFD intervals and the Timeout values that must be configured on the interfaces:



**Note** The BFD intervals that are listed below are applicable only for the Cisco Catalyst 9500 High Performance Series Switches.

Types of Interface	Minimum Supported Values for BFD Timer	
	Standalone	Redundant Systems
Physical Interface	50ms * 3	250ms * 3
L3 Subinterface	50ms * 3	750ms * 3
Switch Virtual Interface (SVI)	100ms * 3	750ms * 3
Layer 3 Portchannel	250ms * 3	750ms * 3
Layer 3 Portchannel Subinterface	250ms * 3	750ms * 3

## BFD Support for Stateful Switchover

The BFD protocol provides short-duration detection of failures in the path between adjacent forwarding engines. In network deployments that use dual RP routers or switches (to provide redundancy), the routers have a graceful restart mechanism that protects the forwarding state during a switchover between the active RP and the standby RP.

The dual RPs have variable switchover times that depend on the ability of the hardware to detect a communication failure. When BFD is running on the RP, some platforms are not able to detect a switchover before the BFD protocol times out; these platforms are referred to as slow switchover platforms.

## BFD Support for Static Routing

Unlike dynamic routing protocols, such as OSPF and BGP, static routing has no method of peer discovery. Therefore, when BFD is configured, the reachability of the gateway is completely dependent on the state of the BFD session to the specified neighbor. Unless the BFD session is up, the gateway for the static route is considered unreachable, and therefore the affected routes will not be installed in the appropriate Routing Information Base (RIB).

For a BFD session to be successfully established, BFD must be configured on the interface on the peer and there must be a BFD client registered on the peer for the address of the BFD neighbor. When an interface is used by dynamic routing protocols, the latter requirement is usually met by configuring the routing protocol instances on each neighbor for BFD. When an interface is used exclusively for static routing, this requirement must be met by configuring static routes on the peers.

If a BFD configuration is removed from the remote peer while the BFD session is in the up state, the updated state of the BFD session is not signaled to IPv4 static. This will cause the static route to remain in the RIB. The only workaround is to remove the IPv4 static BFD neighbor configuration so that the static route no longer tracks BFD session state. Also, if you change the encapsulation type on a serial interface to one that is unsupported by BFD, BFD will be in a down state on that interface. The workaround is to shut down the interface, change to a supported encapsulation type, and then reconfigure BFD.

A single BFD session can be used by an IPv4 static client to track the reachability of next hops through a specific interface. You can assign a BFD group for a set of BFD-tracked static routes. Each group must have one active static BFD configuration, one or more passive BFD configurations, and the corresponding static routes to be BFD-tracked. Nongroup entries are BFD-tracked static routes for which a BFD group is not assigned. A BFD group must accommodate static BFD configurations that can be part of different VRFs. Effectively, the passive static BFD configurations need not be in the same VRF as that of the active configuration.

For each BFD group, there can be only one active static BFD session. You can configure the active BFD session by adding a static BFD configuration and a corresponding static route that uses the BFD configuration. The BFD session in a group is created only when there is an active static BFD configuration and the static route that uses the static BFD configuration. When the active static BFD configuration or the active static route is removed from a BFD group, all the passive static routes are withdrawn from the RIB. Effectively, all the passive static routes are inactive until an active static BFD configuration and a static route to be tracked by the active BFD session are configured in the group.

Similarly, for each BFD group, there can be one or more passive static BFD configurations and their corresponding static routes to be BFD-tracked. Passive static session routes take effect only when the active BFD session state is reachable. Though the active BFD session state of the group is reachable, the passive static route is added to the RIB only if the corresponding interface state is up. When a passive BFD session is removed from a group, it will not affect the active BFD session if one existed, or the BFD group reachability status.

## Benefits of Using BFD for Failure Detection

When you deploy any feature, it is important to consider all the alternatives and be aware of any trade-offs being made.

The closest alternative to BFD in conventional EIGRP, IS-IS, and OSPF deployments is the use of modified failure detection mechanisms for EIGRP, IS-IS, and OSPF routing protocols.

If you set EIGRP hello and hold timers to their absolute minimums, the failure detection rate for EIGRP falls to within a one- to two-second range.

If you use fast hellos for either IS-IS or OSPF, these Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP) protocols reduce their failure detection mechanisms to a minimum of one second.

There are several advantages to implementing BFD over reduced timer mechanisms for routing protocols:

- Although reducing the EIGRP, IS-IS, and OSPF timers can result in minimum detection timer of one to two seconds, BFD can provide failure detection in less than one second.
- Because BFD is not tied to any particular routing protocol, it can be used as a generic and consistent failure detection mechanism for EIGRP, IS-IS, and OSPF.
- Because some parts of BFD can be distributed to the data plane, it can be less CPU-intensive than the reduced EIGRP, IS-IS, and OSPF timers, which exist wholly at the control plane.

## How to Configure Bidirectional Forwarding Detection

### Configuring BFD Session Parameters on the Interface

To configure BFD on an interface, you need to set the baseline BFD session parameters on an interface. Repeat the steps in this procedure for each interface over which you want to run BFD sessions to BFD neighbors.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. Perform one of the following steps:
  - **ip address** *ipv4-address mask*
  - **ipv6 address** *ipv6-address/mask*
4. **bfd interval** *milliseconds min\_rx milliseconds multiplier interval-multiplier*
5. **end**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	Perform one of the following steps: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ip address</b> <i>ipv4-address mask</i></li> <li>• <b>ipv6 address</b> <i>ipv6-address/mask</i></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b>	Configures an IP address for the interface.



	Command or Action	Purpose
	Configuring an IPv4 address for the interface:  <pre>Device(config-if)# ip address 10.201.201.1 255.255.255.0</pre> Configuring an IPv6 address for the interface:  <pre>Device(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:db8:1:1::1/32</pre>	
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>bfd interval</b> <i>milliseconds</i> <b>min_rx</b> <i>milliseconds</i> <b>multiplier</b> <i>interval-multiplier</i>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device(config-if)# bfd interval 100 min_rx 100 multiplier 3</pre>	Enables BFD on the interface.  The BFD interval configuration is removed when the subinterface on which it is configured is removed.  The BFD interval configuration is not removed when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• an IPv4 address is removed from an interface</li> <li>• an IPv6 address is removed from an interface</li> <li>• IPv6 is disabled from an interface</li> <li>• an interface is shutdown</li> <li>• IPv4 CEF is disabled globally or locally on an interface</li> <li>• IPv6 CEF is disabled globally or locally on an interface</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device(config-if)# end</pre>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring BFD Support for Dynamic Routing Protocols

### Configuring BFD Support for eBGP

This section describes the procedure for configuring BFD support for BGP so that BGP is a registered protocol with BFD and will receive forwarding path detection failure messages from BFD.

#### Before you begin

e BGP must be running on all participating routers.

The baseline parameters for BFD sessions on the interfaces over which you want to run BFD sessions to BFD neighbors must be configured. See the Configuring BFD Session Parameters on the Interface section for more information.



**Note** Output from the **show bfd neighbors details** command shows the configured intervals.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp *as-tag***
4. **neighbor *ip-address* fall-over bfd**
5. **end**
6. **show bfd neighbors [details]**
7. **show ip bgp neighbor**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp <i>as-tag</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp tag1</pre>	Specifies a BGP process and enters router configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor <i>ip-address</i> fall-over bfd</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 172.16.10.2 fall-over bfd</pre>	Enables BFD support for fallover.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# end</pre>	Exits router configuration mode and returns the router to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show bfd neighbors [details]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show bfd neighbors detail</pre>	(Optional) Verifies that the BFD neighbor is active and displays the routing protocols that BFD has registered.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip bgp neighbor</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip bgp neighbor</pre>	(Optional) Displays information about BGP and TCP connections to neighbors.

## Configuring BFD Support for EIGRP

This section describes the procedure for configuring BFD support for EIGRP so that EIGRP is a registered protocol with BFD and will receive forwarding path detection failure messages from BFD. There are two methods for enabling BFD support for EIGRP:

- You can enable BFD for all of the interfaces for which EIGRP is routing by using the **bfd all-interfaces** command in router configuration mode.
- You can enable BFD for a subset of the interfaces for which EIGRP is routing by using the **bfd interface type number** command in router configuration mode.

### Before you begin

EIGRP must be running on all participating routers.

The baseline parameters for BFD sessions on the interfaces over which you want to run BFD sessions to BFD neighbors must be configured. See the Configuring BFD Session Parameters on the Interface section for more information.



**Note** Output from the **show bfd neighbors details** command shows the configured intervals.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router eigrp as-number**
4. Do one of the following:
  - **bfd all-interfaces**
  - **bfd interface type number**
5. **end**
6. **show bfd neighbors [details]**
7. **show ip eigrp interfaces [type number] [as-number] [detail]**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  • Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router eigrp <i>as-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router eigrp 123</pre>	Configures the EIGRP routing process and enters router configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>bfd all-interfaces</b></li> <li>• <b>bfd interface <i>type number</i></b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bfd all-interfaces</pre> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bfd interface GigabitFastEthernet 1/0/1</pre>	Enables BFD globally on all interfaces associated with the EIGRP routing process.  or  Enables BFD on a per-interface basis for one or more interfaces associated with the EIGRP routing process.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router) end</pre>	Exits router configuration mode and returns the router to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show bfd neighbors [details]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show bfd neighbors details</pre>	(Optional) Verifies that the BFD neighbor is active and displays the routing protocols that BFD has registered.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip eigrp interfaces [<i>type number</i>] [<i>as-number</i>] [detail]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip eigrp interfaces detail</pre>	(Optional) Displays the interfaces for which BFD support for EIGRP has been enabled.

## Configuring BFD Support for IS-IS

This section describes the procedures for configuring BFD support for IS-IS so that IS-IS is a registered protocol with BFD and will receive forwarding path detection failure messages from BFD. There are two methods for enabling BFD support for IS-IS:

- You can enable BFD for all of the interfaces on which IS-IS is supporting IPv4 routing by using the **bfd all-interfaces** command in router configuration mode. You can then disable BFD for one or more of those interfaces using the **isis bfd disable** command in interface configuration mode.
- You can enable BFD for a subset of the interfaces for which IS-IS is routing by using the **isis bfd** command in interface configuration mode.

To configure BFD support for IS-IS, perform the steps in one of the following sections:

### Prerequisites

IS-IS must be running on all participating routers.

The baseline parameters for BFD sessions on the interfaces that you want to run BFD sessions to BFD neighbors over must be configured. See the Configuring BFD Session Parameters on the Interface section for more information.



**Note** Output from the **show bfd neighbors details** command shows the configured intervals. The output does not show intervals that were changed because hardware-offloaded BFD sessions were configured with Tx and Rx intervals that are not multiples of 50 ms.

### Configuring BFD Support for IS-IS for All Interfaces

To configure BFD on all IS-IS interfaces that support IPv4 routing, perform the steps in this section.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router isis** *area-tag*
4. **bfd all-interfaces**
5. **exit**
6. **interface** *type number*
7. **ip router isis** [ *tag* ]
8. **isis bfd** [disable]
9. **end**
10. **show bfd neighbors** [details]
11. **show clns interface**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router isis</b> <i>area-tag</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router isis tag1</pre>	Specifies an IS-IS process and enters router configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>bfd all-interfaces</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bfd all-interfaces</pre>	Enables BFD globally on all interfaces associated with the IS-IS routing process.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# exit</pre>	(Optional) Returns the router to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>interface type number</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface fastethernet 6/0</pre>	(Optional) Enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>ip router isis [ tag ]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip router isis tag1</pre>	(Optional) Enables support for IPv4 routing on the interface.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>isis bfd [disable]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# isis bfd</pre>	(Optional) Enables or disables BFD on a per-interface basis for one or more interfaces associated with the IS-IS routing process.  <b>Note</b> You should use the <b>disable</b> keyword only if you had earlier enabled BFD on all of the interfaces that IS-IS is associated with, using the <b>bfd all-interfaces</b> command in configuration mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# end</pre>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns the router to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show bfd neighbors [details]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show bfd neighbors details</pre>	(Optional) Displays information that can be used to verify if the BFD neighbor is active and displays the routing protocols that BFD has registered.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>show clns interface</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show clns interface</pre>	(Optional) Displays information that can be used to verify if BFD for IS-IS has been enabled for a specific IS-IS interface that is associated.

### Configuring BFD Support for IS-IS for One or More Interfaces

To configure BFD for only one or more IS-IS interfaces, perform the steps in this section.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **interface** *type number*
4. **ip router isis** [ *tag* ]
5. **isis bfd** [disable]
6. **end**
7. **show bfd neighbors** [details]
8. **show clns interface**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>type number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface fastethernet 6/0</pre>	Enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip router isis</b> [ <i>tag</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip router isis tag1</pre>	Enables support for IPv4 routing on the interface.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>isis bfd</b> [disable] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# isis bfd</pre>	Enables or disables BFD on a per-interface basis for one or more interfaces associated with the IS-IS routing process.  <b>Note</b> You should use the <b>disable</b> keyword only if you enabled BFD on all of the interfaces that IS-IS is associated with using the <b>bfd all-interfaces</b> command in router configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# end</pre>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns the router to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show bfd neighbors [details]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show bfd neighbors details</pre>	(Optional) Displays information that can help verify if the BFD neighbor is active and displays the routing protocols that BFD has registered.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>show clns interface</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show clns interface</pre>	(Optional) Displays information that can help verify if BFD for IS-IS has been enabled for a specific IS-IS interface that is associated.

## Configuring BFD Support for OSPF

This section describes the procedures for configuring BFD support for OSPF so that OSPF is a registered protocol with BFD and will receive forwarding path detection failure messages from BFD. You can either configure BFD support for OSPF globally on all interfaces or configure it selectively on one or more interfaces.

There are two methods for enabling BFD support for OSPF:

- You can enable BFD for all of the interfaces for which OSPF is routing by using the **bfd all-interfaces** command in router configuration mode. You can disable BFD support on individual interfaces using the **ip ospf bfd [disable]** command in interface configuration mode.
- You can enable BFD for a subset of the interfaces for which OSPF is routing by using the **ip ospf bfd** command in interface configuration mode.

See the following sections for tasks for configuring BFD support for OSPF:

### Configuring BFD Support for OSPF for All Interfaces

To configure BFD for all OSPF interfaces, perform the steps in this section.

If you do not want to configure BFD on all OSPF interfaces and would rather configure BFD support specifically for one or more interfaces, see the Configuring BFD Support for OSPF for One or More Interfaces section.

#### Before you begin

OSPF must be running on all participating routers.

The baseline parameters for BFD sessions on the interfaces over which you want to run BFD sessions to BFD neighbors must be configured. See the Configuring BFD Session Parameters on the Interface section for more information.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router ospf** *process-id*
4. **bfd all-interfaces**
5. **exit**
6. **interface** *type number*
7. **ip ospf bfd [disable]**



8. **end**
9. **show bfd neighbors [details]**
10. **show ip ospf**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospf <i>process-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router ospf 4</pre>	Specifies an OSPF process and enters router configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>bfd all-interfaces</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bfd all-interfaces</pre>	Enables BFD globally on all interfaces associated with the OSPF routing process.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# exit</pre>	(Optional) Returns the device to global configuration mode. Enter this command only if you want to perform Step 7 to disable BFD for one or more interfaces.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>interface <i>type number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface fastethernet 6/0</pre>	(Optional) Enters interface configuration mode. Enter this command only if you want to perform Step 7 to disable BFD for one or more interfaces.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>ip ospf bfd [disable]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip ospf bfd disable</pre>	(Optional) Disables BFD on a per-interface basis for one or more interfaces associated with the OSPF routing process.  <b>Note</b> You should use the <b>disable</b> keyword only if you enabled BFD on all of the interfaces that OSPF is associated with using the <b>bfd all-interfaces</b> command in router configuration mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns the router to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# end	
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show bfd neighbors [details]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show bfd neighbors detail	(Optional) Displays information that can help verify if the BFD neighbor is active and displays the routing protocols that BFD has registered.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show ip ospf</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip ospf	(Optional) Displays information that can help verify if BFD for OSPF has been enabled.

### Configuring BFD Support for OSPF for One or More Interfaces

To configure BFD on one or more OSPF interfaces, perform the steps in this section.

#### Before you begin

OSPF must be running on all participating routers.

The baseline parameters for BFD sessions on the interfaces over which you want to run BFD sessions to BFD neighbors must be configured. See the Configuring BFD Session Parameters on the Interface section for more information.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface *type number*
4. ip ospf bfd [disable]
5. end
6. show bfd neighbors [details]
7. show ip ospf

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>type number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface fastethernet 6/0</pre>	Enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip ospf bfd [disable]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip ospf bfd</pre>	Enables or disables BFD on a per-interface basis for one or more interfaces associated with the OSPF routing process.  <b>Note</b> You should use the <b>disable</b> keyword only if you enabled BFD on all of the interfaces that OSPF is associated with using the <b>bfd all-interfaces</b> command in router configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# end</pre>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns the router to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show bfd neighbors [details]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show bfd neighbors details</pre>	(Optional) Displays information that can help verify if the BFD neighbor is active and displays the routing protocols that BFD has registered.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip ospf</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip ospf</pre>	(Optional) Displays information that can help verify if BFD support for OSPF has been enabled.

### Configuring BFD Support for HSRP

Perform this task to enable BFD support for Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP.) Repeat the steps in this procedure for each interface over which you want to run BFD sessions to HSRP peers.

HSRP supports BFD by default. If HSRP support for BFD has been manually disabled, you can reenable it at the router level to enable BFD support globally for all interfaces or on a per-interface basis at the interface level.

#### Before you begin

- HSRP must be running on all participating routers.
- Cisco Express Forwarding must be enabled.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **ip cef [distributed]**

4. **interface** *type number*
5. **ip address** *ip-address mask*
6. **standby** [*group-number*] **ip** [*ip-address* [**secondary**]]
7. **standby bfd**
8. **exit**
9. **standby bfd all-interfaces**
10. **exit**
11. **show standby neighbors**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip cef [distributed]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip cef</pre>	Enables Cisco Express Forwarding or distributed Cisco Express Forwarding.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>type number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface FastEthernet 6/0</pre>	Enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip address</b> <i>ip-address mask</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.0.22 255.255.0.0</pre>	Configures an IP address for the interface.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>standby</b> [ <i>group-number</i> ] <b>ip</b> [ <i>ip-address</i> [ <b>secondary</b> ]] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# standby 1 ip 10.0.0.11</pre>	Activates HSRP.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>standby bfd</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# standby bfd</pre>	(Optional) Enables HSRP support for BFD on the interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# exit</pre>	Exits interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>standby bfd all-interfaces</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# standby bfd all-interfaces</pre>	(Optional) Enables HSRP support for BFD on all interfaces.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# exit</pre>	Exits global configuration mode.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>show standby neighbors</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show standby neighbors</pre>	(Optional) Displays information about HSRP support for BFD.

## Configuring BFD Support for Static Routing

Perform this task to configure BFD support for static routing. Repeat the steps in this procedure on each BFD neighbor. For more information, see the "Example: Configuring BFD Support for Static Routing" section.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **interface** *type number*
4. Perform one of the following steps:
  - **ip address** *ipv4-address mask*
  - **ipv6 address** *ipv6-address/mask*
5. **bfd interval** *milliseconds mix\_rx milliseconds multiplier interval-multiplier*
6. **exit**
7. **ip route static bfd** *interface-type interface-number ip-address [group group-name [passive]]*
8. **ip route** [**vrf** *vrf-name*] *prefix mask {ip-address | interface-type interface-number [ip-address]}* [**dhcp**] [*distance*] [**name** *next-hop-name*] [**permanent** | **track** *number*] [**tag** *tag*]
9. **exit**
10. **show ip static route**
11. **show ip static route bfd**
12. **exit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>type number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface serial 2/0</pre>	Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	Perform one of the following steps: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ip address</b> <i>ipv4-address mask</i></li> <li>• <b>ipv6 address</b> <i>ipv6-address/mask</i></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> Configuring an IPv4 address for the interface: <pre>Device(config-if)# ip address 10.201.201.1 255.255.255.0</pre> Configuring an IPv6 address for the interface: <pre>Device(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:db8:1:1::1/32</pre>	Configures an IP address for the interface.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>bfd interval</b> <i>milliseconds</i> <b>mix_rx</b> <i>milliseconds</i> <b>multiplier</b> <i>interval-multiplier</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# bfd interval 500 min_rx 500 multiplier 5</pre>	Enables BFD on the interface. The bfd interval configuration is removed when the subinterface on which it is configured is removed. The bfd interval configuration is not removed when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• an IPv4 address is removed from an interface</li> <li>• an IPv6 address is removed from an interface</li> <li>• IPv6 is disabled from an interface</li> <li>• an interface is shutdown</li> <li>• IPv4 CEF is disabled globally or locally on an interface</li> <li>• IPv6 CEF is disabled globally or locally on an interface</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# exit</pre>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>ip route static bfd interface-type interface-number ip-address [group group-name [passive]]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip route static bfd TenGigabitEthernet1/0/1 10.10.10.2 group group1 passive</pre>	Specifies a static route BFD neighbor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <i>interface-type</i>, <i>interface-number</i>, and <i>ip-address</i> arguments are required because BFD support exists only for directly connected neighbors.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>ip route [vrf vrf-name] prefix mask {ip-address   interface-type interface-number [ip-address]} [dhcp] [distance] [name next-hop-name] [permanent   track number] [tag tag]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip route 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0</pre>	Specifies a static route BFD neighbor.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# exit</pre>	Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show ip static route</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip static route</pre>	(Optional) Displays static route database information.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>show ip static route bfd</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip static route bfd</pre>	(Optional) Displays information about the static BFD configuration from the configured BFD groups and nongroup entries.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# exit</pre>	Exits privileged EXEC mode and returns to user EXEC mode.

## Configuring BFD Echo Mode

BFD echo mode is enabled by default, but you can disable it such that it can run independently in each direction.

BFD echo mode works with asynchronous BFD. Echo packets are sent by the forwarding engine and forwarded back along the same path in order to perform detection--the BFD session at the other end does not participate in the actual forwarding of the echo packets. The echo function and the forwarding engine are responsible for

## Prerequisites

the detection process; therefore, the number of BFD control packets that are sent out between two BFD neighbors is reduced. In addition, because the forwarding engine is testing the forwarding path on the remote (neighbor) system without involving the remote system, there is an opportunity to improve the interpacket delay variance, thereby achieving quicker failure detection times than when using BFD Version 0 with BFD control packets for the BFD session.

Echo mode is described as without asymmetry when it is running on both sides (both BFD neighbors are running echo mode).

## Prerequisites

BFD must be running on all participating routers.

Before using BFD echo mode, you must disable the sending of Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) redirect messages by entering the **no ip redirects** command, in order to avoid high CPU utilization.

The baseline parameters for BFD sessions on the interfaces over which you want to run BFD sessions to BFD neighbors must be configured. See the Configuring BFD Session Parameters on the Interface section for more information.

## Restrictions

BFD echo mode does not work in conjunction with Unicast Reverse Path Forwarding (uRPF) configuration. If BFD echo mode and uRPF configurations are enabled, then the sessions will flap.

## Disabling BFD Echo Mode Without Asymmetry

The steps in this procedure show how to disable BFD echo mode without asymmetry—no echo packets will be sent by the router, and the router will not forward BFD echo packets that are received from any neighbor routers.

Repeat the steps in this procedure for each BFD router.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **no bfd echo**
4. **end**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Router&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Router# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>no bfd echo</b>	Disables BFD echo mode.



	Command or Action	Purpose
	<b>Example:</b>  Router(config)# no bfd echo	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>no</b> form to disable BFD echo mode.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Router(config)# end	Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Creating and Configuring BFD Templates

You can configure a single-hop template to specify a set of BFD interval values. BFD interval values specified as part of the BFD template are not specific to a single interface.



**Note** Configuring bfd-template will disable echo mode.

### Configuring a Single-Hop Template

Perform this task to create a BFD single-hop template and configure BFD interval timers.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **bfd-template single-hop** *template-name*
4. **interval min-tx** *milliseconds* **min-rx** *milliseconds* **multiplier** *multiplier-value*
5. **end**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>bfd-template single-hop</b> <i>template-name</i>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# bfd-template single-hop bfdtemplatel	Creates a single-hop BFD template and enters BFD configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>interval min-tx</b> <i>milliseconds</i> <b>min-rx</b> <i>milliseconds</i> <b>multiplier</b> <i>multiplier-value</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(bfd-config)# interval min-tx 120 min-rx 100 multiplier 3</pre>	Configures the transmit and receive intervals between BFD packets, and specifies the number of consecutive BFD control packets that must be missed before BFD declares that a peer is unavailable.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(bfd-config)# end</pre>	Exits BFD configuration mode and returns the device to privileged EXEC mode.

## Monitoring and Troubleshooting BFD

This section describes how to retrieve BFD information for maintenance and troubleshooting. The commands in these tasks can be entered as needed, in any order desired.

This section contains information for monitoring and troubleshooting BFD for the following Cisco platforms:

### Monitoring and Troubleshooting BFD

To monitor or troubleshoot BFD on Cisco 7600 series routers, perform one or more of the steps in this section.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **show bfd neighbors [details]**
3. **debug bfd [packet | event]**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Router&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>show bfd neighbors [details]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Router# show bfd neighbors details</pre>	(Optional) Displays the BFD adjacency database. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>details</b> keyword shows all BFD protocol parameters and timers per neighbor.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>debug bfd [packet   event]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Router# debug bfd packet</pre>	(Optional) Displays debugging information about BFD packets.

## Feature Information for Bidirectional Forwarding Detection

*Table 1: Feature Information for Bidirectional Forwarding Detection*

Feature Name	Release	Feature Information
Bidirectional Forwarding Detection	Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a	This feature was introduced





## CHAPTER 2

# Configuring MSDP

- [Information About Configuring MSDP](#), on page 27
- [How to Configure MSDP](#), on page 30
- [Monitoring and Maintaining MSDP](#), on page 48
- [Configuration Examples for Configuring MSDP](#), on page 49
- [Feature Information for Multicast Source Discovery Protocol](#), on page 50

## Information About Configuring MSDP

This section describes how to configure the Multicast Source Discovery Protocol (MSDP) on the switch. The MSDP connects multiple Protocol-Independent Multicast sparse-mode (PIM-SM) domains.

MSDP is not fully supported in this software release because of a lack of support for Multicast Border Gateway Protocol (MBGP), which works closely with MSDP. However, it is possible to create default peers that MSDP can operate with if MBGP is not running.



**Note** To use this feature, the active switch must be running the Network Advantage feature set.

## MSDP Overview

MSDP allows multicast sources for a group to be known to all rendezvous points (RPs) in different domains. Each PIM-SM domain uses its own RPs and does not depend on RPs in other domains. An RP runs MSDP over the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) to discover multicast sources in other domains.

An RP in a PIM-SM domain has an MSDP peering relationship with MSDP-enabled devices in another domain. The peering relationship occurs over a TCP connection, primarily exchanging a list of sources sending to multicast groups. The TCP connections between RPs are achieved by the underlying routing system. The receiving RP uses the source lists to establish a source path.

The purpose of this topology is to have domains discover multicast sources in other domains. If the multicast sources are of interest to a domain that has receivers, multicast data is delivered over the normal, source-tree building mechanism in PIM-SM. MSDP is also used to announce sources sending to a group. These announcements must originate at the domain's RP.

MSDP depends heavily on the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) or MBGP for interdomain operation. We recommend that you run MSDP in RPs in your domain that are RPs for sources sending to global groups to be announced to the Internet.

## MSDP Operation

When a source sends its first multicast packet, the first-hop router (*designated router* or RP) directly connected to the source sends a PIM register message to the RP. The RP uses the register message to register the active source and to forward the multicast packet down the shared tree in the local domain. With MSDP configured, the RP also forwards a source-active (SA) message to all MSDP peers. The SA message identifies the source, the group the source is sending to, and the address of the RP or the originator ID (the IP address of the interface used as the RP address), if configured.

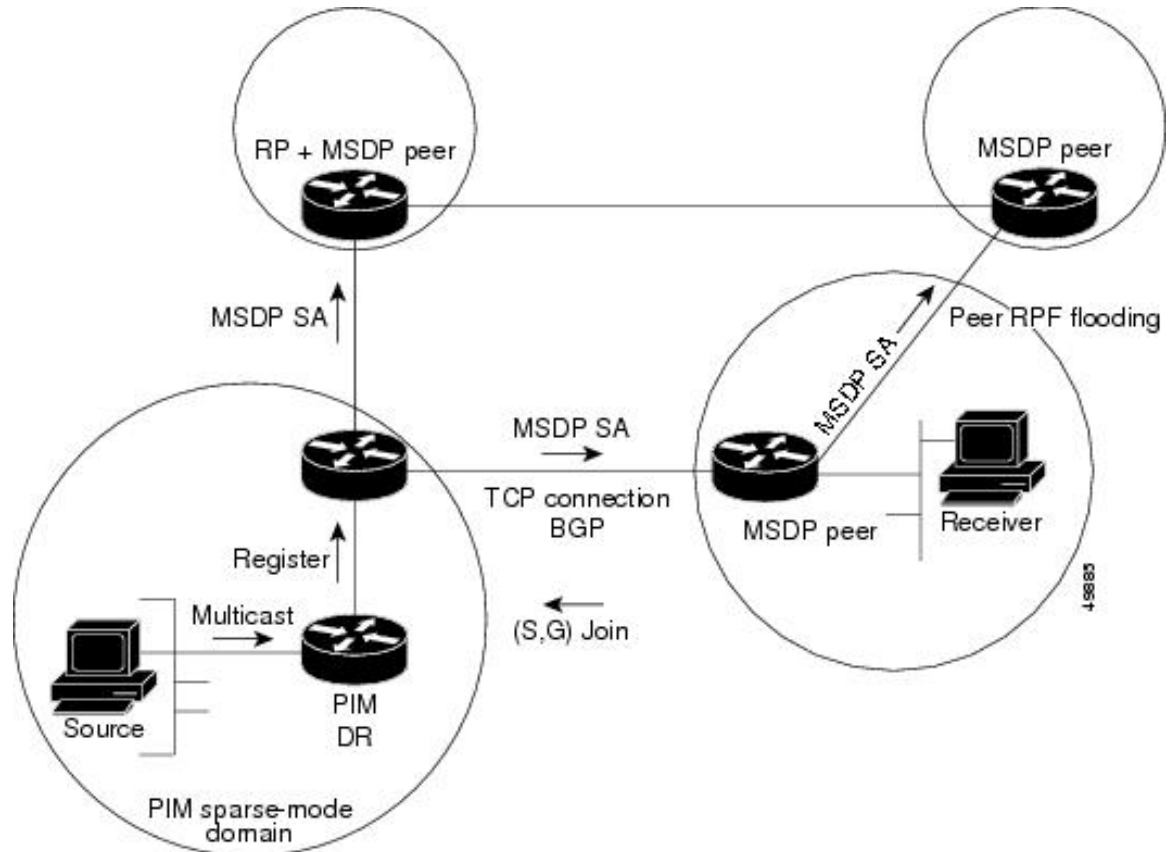
Each MSDP peer receives and forwards the SA message away from the originating RP to achieve peer reverse-path flooding (RPF). The MSDP device examines the BGP or MBGP routing table to discover which peer is the next hop toward the originating RP of the SA message. Such a peer is called an *RPF peer* (reverse-path forwarding peer). The MSDP device forwards the message to all MSDP peers other than the RPF peer. For information on how to configure an MSDP peer when BGP and MBGP are not supported, see the [Configuring a Default MSDP Peer, on page 30](#).

If the MSDP peer receives the same SA message from a non-RPF peer toward the originating RP, it drops the message. Otherwise, it forwards the message to all its MSDP peers.

The RP for a domain receives the SA message from an MSDP peer. If the RP has any join requests for the group the SA message describes and if the (\*,G) entry exists with a nonempty outgoing interface list, the domain is interested in the group, and the RP triggers an (S,G) join toward the source. After the (S,G) join reaches the source's DR, a branch of the source tree has been built from the source to the RP in the remote domain. Multicast traffic can now flow from the source across the source tree to the RP and then down the shared tree in the remote domain to the receiver.

**Figure 1: MSDP Running Between RP Peers**

This figure shows MSDP operating between two MSDP peers. PIM uses MSDP as the standard mechanism to register a source with the RP of a domain. When MSDP is configured, this sequence occurs.



By default, the switch does not cache source or group pairs from received SA messages. When the switch forwards the MSDP SA information, it does not store it in memory. Therefore, if a member joins a group soon after an SA message is received by the local RP, that member needs to wait until the next SA message to hear about the source. This delay is known as join latency.

Local RPs can send SA requests and get immediate responses for all active sources for a given group. By default, the switch does not send any SA request messages to its MSDP peers when a new member joins a group and wants to receive multicast traffic. The new member waits to receive the next periodic SA message.

If you want a new member of a group to learn the active multicast sources in a connected PIM sparse-mode domain that are sending to a group, configure the switch to send SA request messages to the specified MSDP peer when a new member joins a group.

## MSDP Benefits

MSDP has these benefits:

- It breaks up the shared multicast distribution tree. You can make the shared tree local to your domain. Your local members join the local tree, and join messages for the shared tree never need to leave your domain.

- PIM sparse-mode domains can rely only on their own RPs, decreasing reliance on RPs in another domain. This increases security because you can prevent your sources from being known outside your domain.
- Domains with only receivers can receive data without globally advertising group membership.
- Global source multicast routing table state is not required, saving memory.

# How to Configure MSDP

## Default MSDP Configuration

MSDP is not enabled, and no default MSDP peer exists.

## Configuring a Default MSDP Peer

### Before you begin

Configure an MSDP peer.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip msdp default-peer <i>ip-address</i>   <i>name</i> [prefix-list <i>list</i>]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Router(config)# ip msdp default-peer 10.1.1.1 prefix-list site-a</pre>	<p>Defines a default peer from which to accept all MSDP SA messages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <i>ip-address</i> / <i>name</i>, enter the IP address or Domain Name System (DNS) server name of the MSDP default peer.</li> <li>• (Optional) For <b>prefix-list</b> <i>list</i>, enter the list name that specifies the peer to be the default peer only for the listed prefixes. You can have multiple active default peers when you have a prefix list associated with each.</li> </ul> <p>When you enter multiple <b>ip msdp default-peer</b> commands with the <b>prefix-list</b> keyword, you use all the default peers at the same time for different RP</p>



	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>prefixes. This syntax is typically used in a service provider cloud that connects stub site clouds.</p> <p>When you enter multiple <b>ip msdp default-peer</b> commands without the <b>prefix-list</b> keyword, a single active peer accepts all SA messages. If that peer fails, the next configured default peer accepts all SA messages. This syntax is typically used at a stub site.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<p><b>ip prefix-list</b> <i>name</i> [<b>description</b> <i>string</i>]   <b>seq</b> <i>number</i> {<b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b>} <i>network length</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Router(config)# ip prefix-list site-a seq 3 permit 12 network length 128</pre>	<p>(Optional) Creates a prefix list using the name specified in Step 2.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (Optional) For <b>description</b> <i>string</i>, enter a description of up to 80 characters to describe this prefix list.</li> <li>• For <b>seq</b> <i>number</i>, enter the sequence number of the entry. The range is 1 to 4294967294.</li> <li>• The <b>deny</b> keyword denies access to matching conditions.</li> <li>• The <b>permit</b> keyword permits access to matching conditions.</li> <li>• For <i>network length</i>, specify the network number and length (in bits) of the network mask that is permitted or denied.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<p><b>ip msdp description</b> {<i>peer-name</i>   <i>peer-address</i>} <i>text</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Router(config)# ip msdp description peer-name site-b</pre>	<p>(Optional) Configures a description for the specified peer to make it easier to identify in a configuration or in <b>show</b> command output.</p> <p>By default, no description is associated with an MSDP peer.</p>
<b>Step 6</b>	<p><b>end</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<p><b>show running-config</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 8</b>	<p><b>copy running-config startup-config</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# <code>copy running-config startup-config</code>	

## Caching Source-Active State

If you want to sacrifice some memory in exchange for reducing the latency of the source information, you can configure the Device to cache SA messages. Perform the following steps to enable the caching of source/group pairs:

Follow these steps to enable the caching of source/group pairs:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <code>enable</code>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip msdp cache-sa-state [list access-list-number]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>ip msdp cache-sa-state 100</code>	Enables the caching of source/group pairs (create an SA state). Those pairs that pass the access list are cached. For <b>list access-list-number</b> , the range is 100 to 199. <b>Note</b> An alternative to this command is the <b>ip msdp sa-reques</b> global configuration command, which causes the Device to send an SA request message to the MSDP peer when a new member for a group becomes active.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>access-list access-list-number {deny   permit} protocol source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>access-list 100 permit ip 171.69.0.0 0.0.255.255 224.2.0.0 0.0.255.255</code>	Creates an IP extended access list, repeating the command as many times as necessary. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>access-list-number</i>, the range is 100 to 199. Enter the same number created in Step 2.</li> <li>The <b>deny</b> keyword denies access if the conditions are matched. The <b>permit</b> keyword permits access if the conditions are matched.</li> <li>For <i>protocol</i>, enter <b>ip</b> as the protocol name.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <i>source</i>, enter the number of the network or host from which the packet is being sent.</li> <li>• For <i>source-wildcard</i>, enter the wildcard bits in dotted decimal notation to be applied to the source. Place ones in the bit positions that you want to ignore.</li> <li>• For <i>destination</i>, enter the number of the network or host to which the packet is being sent.</li> <li>• For <i>destination-wildcard</i>, enter the wildcard bits in dotted decimal notation to be applied to the destination. Place ones in the bit positions that you want to ignore.</li> </ul> <p>Recall that the access list is always terminated by an implicit deny statement for everything.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Requesting Source Information from an MSDP Peer

If you want a new member of a group to learn the active multicast sources in a connected PIM sparse-mode domain that are sending to a group, perform this task for the Device to send SA request messages to the specified MSDP peer when a new member joins a group. The peer replies with the information in its SA cache. If the peer does not have a cache configured, this command has no result. Configuring this feature reduces join latency but sacrifices memory.

Follow these steps to configure the Device to send SA request messages to the MSDP peer when a new member joins a group and wants to receive multicast traffic:

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip msdp sa-request {ip-address   name}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip msdp sa-request 171.69.1.1</pre>	<p>Configure the Device to send SA request messages to the specified MSDP peer.</p> <p>For <i>ip-address   name</i>, enter the IP address or name of the MSDP peer from which the local Device requests SA messages when a new member for a group becomes active.</p> <p>Repeat the command for each MSDP peer that you want to supply with SA messages.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Controlling Source Information that Your Switch Originates

You can control the multicast source information that originates with your Device:

- Sources you advertise (based on your sources)
- Receivers of source information (based on knowing the requestor)

For more information, see the [Redistributing Sources, on page 35](#) and the [Filtering Source-Active Request Messages, on page 37](#).

## Redistributing Sources

SA messages originate on RPs to which sources have registered. By default, any source that registers with an RP is advertised. The *A flag* is set in the RP when a source is registered, which means the source is advertised in an SA unless it is filtered.

Follow these steps to further restrict which registered sources are advertised:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip msdp redistribute [list access-list-name] [asn aspath-access-list-number] [route-map map]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip msdp redistribute list 21</pre>	<p>Configures which (S,G) entries from the multicast routing table are advertised in SA messages.</p> <p>By default, only sources within the local domain are advertised.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (Optional) <b>list access-list-name</b>— Enters the name or number of an IP standard or extended access list. The range is 1 to 99 for standard access lists and 100 to 199 for extended lists. The access list controls which local sources are advertised and to which groups they send.</li> <li>• (Optional) <b>asn aspath-access-list-number</b>—Enters the IP standard or extended access list number in the range 1 to 199. This access list number must also be configured in the <b>ip as-path access-list</b> command.</li> <li>• (Optional) <b>route-map map</b>—Enters the IP standard or extended access list number in the range 1 to 199. This access list number must also be configured in the <b>ip as-path access-list</b> command.</li> </ul> <p>The Device advertises (S,G) pairs according to the access list or autonomous system path access list.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<p>Use one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>access-list</code><i>access-list-number</i> {deny permit} <i>source</i> [<i>source-wildcard</i>]</li> <li><code>access-list</code><i>access-list-number</i> {deny permit} <i>protocol source source-wildcard destination</i> <i>destination-wildcard</i></li> </ul> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config)# access list 21 permit 194.1.22.0</pre> <p>or</p> <pre>Device(config)# access list 21 permit ip 194.1.22.0 10.1.1.10 194.3.44.0 10.1.1.10</pre>	<p>Creates an IP standard access list, repeating the command as many times as necessary.</p> <p>or</p> <p>Creates an IP extended access list, repeating the command as many times as necessary.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>access-list-number</i>—Enters the same number created in Step 2. The range is 1 to 99 for standard access lists and 100 to 199 for extended lists.</li> <li><b>deny</b>—Denies access if the conditions are matched. The <b>permit</b> keyword permits access if the conditions are matched.</li> <li><i>protocol</i>—Enters <b>ip</b> as the protocol name.</li> <li><i>source</i>—Enters the number of the network or host from which the packet is being sent.</li> <li><i>source-wildcard</i>—Enters the wildcard bits in dotted decimal notation to be applied to the source. Place ones in the bit positions that you want to ignore.</li> <li><i>destination</i>—Enters the number of the network or host to which the packet is being sent.</li> <li><i>destination-wildcard</i>—Enters the wildcard bits in dotted decimal notation to be applied to the destination. Place ones in the bit positions that you want to ignore.</li> </ul> <p>Recall that the access list is always terminated by an implicit deny statement for everything.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<p><b>end</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<p><b>show running-config</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 7</b>	<p><b>copy running-config startup-config</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Filtering Source-Active Request Messages

By default, only Device that are caching SA information can respond to SA requests. By default, such a Device honors all SA request messages from its MSDP peers and supplies the IP addresses of the active sources.

However, you can configure the Device to ignore all SA requests from an MSDP peer. You can also honor only those SA request messages from a peer for groups described by a standard access list. If the groups in the access list pass, SA request messages are accepted. All other such messages from the peer for other groups are ignored.

To return to the default setting, use the **no ip msdp filter-sa-request** *{ip-address| name}* global configuration command.

Follow these steps to configure one of these options:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	Use one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>ip msdp filter-sa-request {ip-addressname}</code></li> <li>• <code>ip msdp filter-sa-request {ip-addressname} list access-list-number</code></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip msdp filter sa-request 171.69.2.2</pre>	Filters all SA request messages from the specified MSDP peer. or Filters SA request messages from the specified MSDP peer for groups that pass the standard access list. The access list describes a multicast group address. The range for the access-list-number is 1 to 99.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>access-list access-list-number {deny   permit} source [source-wildcard]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# access-list 1 permit 192.4.22.0 0.0.0.255</pre>	Creates an IP standard access list, repeating the command as many times as necessary. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <i>access-list-number</i>, the range is 1 to 99.</li> <li>• The <b>deny</b> keyword denies access if the conditions are matched. The <b>permit</b> keyword permits access if the conditions are matched.</li> <li>• For <i>source</i>, enter the number of the network or host from which the packet is being sent.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(Optional) For <i>source-wildcard</i>, enter the wildcard bits in dotted decimal notation to be applied to the source. Place ones in the bit positions that you want to ignore.</li> </ul> <p>Recall that the access list is always terminated by an implicit deny statement for everything.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config) # end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Controlling Source Information that Your Switch Forwards

By default, the Device forwards all SA messages it receives to all its MSDP peers. However, you can prevent outgoing messages from being forwarded to a peer by using a filter or by setting a time-to-live (TTL) value.

### Using a Filter

By creating a filter, you can perform one of these actions:

- Filter all source/group pairs
- Specify an IP extended access list to pass only certain source/group pairs
- Filter based on match criteria in a route map

Follow these steps to apply a filter:

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.



	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device> <b>enable</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<p>Use one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ip msdp sa-filter out</b>  {ip-address name}</li> <li>• <b>ip msdp sa-filter out</b>  {ip-address name}  list access-list-number</li> <li>• <b>ip msdp sa-filter out</b>  {ip-address name}  route-map map-tag</li> </ul> <p><b>Example:</b></p> Device(config)# <b>ip msdp sa-filter out</b> <b>switch.cisco.com</b> <p>or</p> Device(config)# <b>ip msdp sa-filter out list 100</b> <p>or</p> Device(config)# <b>ip msdp sa-filter out</b> <b>switch.cisco.com route-map 22</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Filters all SA messages to the specified MSDP peer.</li> <li>• Passes only those SA messages that pass the IP extended access list to the specified peer. The range for the extended <i>access-list-number</i> is 100 to 199.</li> </ul> <p>If both the <b>list</b> and the <b>route-map</b> keywords are used, all conditions must be true to pass any (S,G) pair in outgoing SA messages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Passes only those SA messages that meet the match criteria in the route map <i>map-tag</i> to the specified MSDP peer.</li> </ul> <p>If all match criteria are true, a <b>permit</b> from the route map passes routes through the filter. A <b>deny</b> filters routes.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>access-list access-list-number {deny   permit} protocol source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>access list 100 permit ip</b> <b>194.1.22.0 10.1.1.10 194.3.44.0 10.1.1.10</b>	<p>(Optional) Creates an IP extended access list, repeating the command as many times as necessary.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <i>access-list-number</i>, enter the number specified in Step 2.</li> <li>• The <b>deny</b> keyword denies access if the conditions are matched. The <b>permit</b> keyword permits access if the conditions are matched.</li> <li>• For <i>protocol</i>, enter <b>ip</b> as the protocol name.</li> <li>• For <i>source</i>, enter the number of the network or host from which the packet is being sent.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>source-wildcard</i>, enter the wildcard bits in dotted decimal notation to be applied to the source. Place ones in the bit positions that you want to ignore.</li> <li>For <i>destination</i>, enter the number of the network or host to which the packet is being sent.</li> <li>For <i>destination-wildcard</i>, enter the wildcard bits in dotted decimal notation to be applied to the destination. Place ones in the bit positions that you want to ignore.</li> </ul> <p>Recall that the access list is always terminated by an implicit deny statement for everything.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Using TTL to Limit the Multicast Data Sent in SA Messages

You can use a TTL value to control what data is encapsulated in the first SA message for every source. Only multicast packets with an IP-header TTL greater than or equal to the *ttl* argument are sent to the specified MSDP peer. For example, you can limit internal traffic to a TTL of 8. If you want other groups to go to external locations, you must send those packets with a TTL greater than 8.

Follow these steps to establish a TTL threshold:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip msdp ttl-threshold {ip-address   name} ttl</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip msdp ttl-threshold switch.cisco.com 0</pre>	Limits which multicast data is encapsulated in the first SA message to the specified MSDP peer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>ip-address   name</i>, enter the IP address or name of the MSDP peer to which the TTL limitation applies.</li> <li>For <i>ttl</i>, enter the TTL value. The default is 0, which means all multicast data packets are forwarded to the peer until the TTL is exhausted. The range is 0 to 255.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Controlling Source Information that Your Switch Receives

By default, the Device receives all SA messages that its MSDP RPF peers send to it. However, you can control the source information that you receive from MSDP peers by filtering incoming SA messages. In other words, you can configure the Device to not accept them.

You can perform one of these actions:

- Filter all incoming SA messages from an MSDP peer
- Specify an IP extended access list to pass certain source/group pairs
- Filter based on match criteria in a route map

Follow these steps to apply a filter:

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	Use one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ip msdp sa-filter in</b>  <code>{ip-address name}</code></li> <li>• <b>ip msdp sa-filter in</b>  <code>{ip-address name}</code>  <code>list access-list-number</code></li> <li>• <b>ip msdp sa-filter in</b>  <code>{ip-address name}</code>  <code>route-map map-tag</code></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip msdp sa-filter in switch.cisco.com</pre> or <pre>Device(config)# ip msdp sa-filter in list 100</pre> or <pre>Device(config)# ip msdp sa-filter in switch.cisco.com route-map 22</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Filters all SA messages to the specified MSDP peer.</li> <li>• Passes only those SA messages from the specified peer that pass the IP extended access list. The range for the extended <i>access-list-number</i> is 100 to 199.</li> </ul> If both the <b>list</b> and the <b>route-map</b> keywords are used, all conditions must be true to pass any (S,G) pair in outgoing SA messages. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Passes only those SA messages from the specified MSDP peer that meet the match criteria in the route map <i>map-tag</i>.</li> </ul> If all match criteria are true, a <b>permit</b> from the route map passes routes through the filter. A <b>deny</b> filters routes.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>access-list access-list-number {deny   permit} protocol source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# access list 100 permit ip 194.1.22.0 10.1.1.10 194.3.44.0 10.1.1.10</pre>	(Optional) Creates an IP extended access list, repeating the command as many times as necessary. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>access-list-number</i>, enter the number specified in Step 2.</li> <li>• The <b>deny</b> keyword denies access if the conditions are matched. The <b>permit</b> keyword permits access if the conditions are matched.</li> <li>• For <i>protocol</i>, enter <b>ip</b> as the protocol name.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <i>source</i>, enter the number of the network or host from which the packet is being sent.</li> <li>• For <i>source-wildcard</i>, enter the wildcard bits in dotted decimal notation to be applied to the source. Place ones in the bit positions that you want to ignore.</li> <li>• For <i>destination</i>, enter the number of the network or host to which the packet is being sent.</li> <li>• For <i>destination-wildcard</i>, enter the wildcard bits in dotted decimal notation to be applied to the destination. Place ones in the bit positions that you want to ignore.</li> </ul> <p>Recall that the access list is always terminated by an implicit deny statement for everything.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring an MSDP Mesh Group

An MSDP mesh group is a group of MSDP speakers that have fully meshed MSDP connectivity among one another. Any SA messages received from a peer in a mesh group are not forwarded to other peers in the same mesh group. Thus, you reduce SA message flooding and simplify peer-RPF flooding. Use the **ip msdp mesh-group** global configuration command when there are multiple RPs within a domain. It is especially used to send SA messages across a domain. You can configure multiple mesh groups (with different names) in a single Device.

Follow these steps to create a mesh group:

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip msdp mesh-group name {ip-address   name}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip msdp mesh-group 2 switch.cisco.com</pre>	<p>Configures an MSDP mesh group, and specifies the MSDP peer belonging to that mesh group.</p> <p>By default, the MSDP peers do not belong to a mesh group.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>name</i>, enter the name of the mesh group.</li> <li>For <i>ip-address   name</i>, enter the IP address or name of the MSDP peer to be a member of the mesh group.</li> </ul> <p>Repeat this procedure on each MSDP peer in the group.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Shutting Down an MSDP Peer

If you want to configure many MSDP commands for the same peer and you do not want the peer to become active, you can shut down the peer, configure it, and later bring it up. When a peer is shut down, the TCP connection is terminated and is not restarted. You can also shut down an MSDP session without losing configuration information for the peer.

Follow these steps to shut down a peer:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip msdp shutdown {peer-name   peer address}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip msdp shutdown switch.cisco.com</pre>	Shuts down the specified MSDP peer without losing configuration information. For <i>peer-name   peer address</i> , enter the IP address or name of the MSDP peer to shut down.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Including a Bordering PIM Dense-Mode Region in MSDP

You can configure MSDP on a Device that borders a PIM sparse-mode region with a dense-mode region. By default, active sources in the dense-mode region do not participate in MSDP.



**Note** We do not recommend using the **ip msdp border sa-address** global configuration command. It is better to configure the border router in the sparse-mode domain to proxy-register sources in the dense-mode domain to the RP of the sparse-mode domain and have the sparse-mode domain use standard MSDP procedures to advertise these sources.

The **ip msdp originator-id** global configuration command also identifies an interface to be used as the RP address. If both the **ip msdp border sa-address** and the **ip msdp originator-id** global configuration commands are configured, the address derived from the **ip msdp originator-id** command specifies the RP address.

Follow these steps to configure the border router to send SA messages for sources active in the dense-mode region to the MSDP peers:

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip msdp border sa-address <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip msdp border sa-address 0/1</pre>	<p>Configures the switch on the border between a dense-mode and sparse-mode region to send SA messages about active sources in the dense-mode region.</p> <p>For <i>interface-id</i>, specifies the interface from which the IP address is derived and used as the RP address in SA messages.</p> <p>The IP address of the interface is used as the Originator-ID, which is the RP field in the SA message.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip msdp redistribute [<i>list access-list-name</i>] [<i>asn aspath-access-list-number</i>] [<i>route-map map</i>]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip msdp redistribute list 100</pre>	<p>Configures which (S,G) entries from the multicast routing table are advertised in SA messages.</p> <p>For more information, see the <a href="#">Redistributing Sources, on page 35</a>.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>show running-config</b>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring an Originating Address other than the RP Address

You can allow an MSDP speaker that originates an SA message to use the IP address of the interface as the RP address in the SA message by changing the Originator ID. You might change the Originator ID in one of these cases:

- If you configure a logical RP on multiple Device in an MSDP mesh group.
- If you have a Device that borders a PIM sparse-mode domain and a dense-mode domain. If a Device borders a dense-mode domain for a site, and sparse-mode is being used externally, you might want dense-mode sources to be known to the outside world. Because this Device is not an RP, it would not have an RP address to use in an SA message. Therefore, this command provides the RP address by specifying the address of the interface.

If both the **ip msdp border sa-address** and the **ip msdp originator-id** global configuration commands are configured, the address derived from the **ip msdp originator-id** command specifies the address of the RP.

Follow these steps to allow an MSDP speaker that originates an SA message to use the IP address on the interface as the RP address in the SA message:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip msdp originator-id</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config) # ip msdp originator-id 0/1</pre>	Configures the RP address in SA messages to be the address of the originating device interface. For <i>interface-id</i> , specify the interface on the local Device.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config) # end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Monitoring and Maintaining MSDP

Commands that monitor MSDP SA messages, peers, state, and peer status:

**Table 2: Commands for Monitoring and Maintaining MSDP**

Command	Purpose
<b>debug ip msdp</b> [ <i>peer-address</i>   <i>name</i> ] [ <b>detail</b> ] [ <b>routes</b> ]	Debugs an MSDP activity.
<b>debug ip msdp resets</b>	Debugs MSDP peer reset reasons.
<b>show ip msdp count</b> [ <i>autonomous-system-number</i> ]	Displays the number of sources and groups originated in SA messages from each autonomous system. The <b>ip msdp cache-sa-state</b> command must be configured for this command to produce any output.
<b>show ip msdp peer</b> [ <i>peer-address</i>   <i>name</i> ]	Displays detailed information about an MSDP peer.
<b>show ip msdp sa-cache</b> [ <i>group-address</i>   <i>source-address</i>   <i>group-name</i>   <i>source-name</i> ] [ <i>autonomous-system-number</i> ]	Displays (S,G) state learned from MSDP peers.

Command	Purpose
<b>show ip msdp summary</b>	Displays MSDP peer status and SA message counts.

Commands that clear MSDP connections, statistics, and SA cache entries:

**Table 3: Commands for Clearing MSDP Connections, Statistics, or SA Cache Entries**

Command	Purpose
<b>clear ip msdp peer</b> <i>peer-address</i>   <i>name</i>	Clears the TCP connection to the specified MSDP peer, resetting all MSDP message counters.
<b>clear ip msdp statistics</b> [ <i>peer-address</i>   <i>name</i> ]	Clears statistics counters for one or all the MSDP peers without resetting the sessions.
<b>clear ip msdp sa-cache</b> [ <i>group-address</i>   <i>name</i> ]	Clears the SA cache entries for all entries, all sources for a specific group, or all entries for a specific source/group pair.

## Configuration Examples for Configuring MSDP

### Configuring a Default MSDP Peer: Example

This example shows a partial configuration of Router A and Router C in . Each of these ISPs have more than one customer (like the customer in ) who use default peering (no BGP or MBGP). In that case, they might have similar configurations. That is, they accept SAs only from a default peer if the SA is permitted by the corresponding prefix list.

Router A

```
Router(config)# ip msdp default-peer 10.1.1.1
Router(config)# ip msdp default-peer 10.1.1.1 prefix-list site-a
Router(config)# ip prefix-list site-b permit 10.0.0.0/1
```

Router C

```
Router(config)# ip msdp default-peer 10.1.1.1 prefix-list site-a
Router(config)# ip prefix-list site-b permit 10.0.0.0/1
```

### Caching Source-Active State: Example

This example shows how to enable the cache state for all sources in 171.69.0.0/16 sending to groups 224.2.0.0/16:

```
Device(config)# ip msdp cache-sa-state 100
Device(config)# access-list 100 permit ip 171.69.0.0 0.0.255.255 224.2.0.0 0.0.255.255
```

## Requesting Source Information from an MSDP Peer: Example

This example shows how to configure the switch to send SA request messages to the MSDP peer at 171.69.1.1:

```
Device(config)# ip msdp sa-request 171.69.1.1
```

## Controlling Source Information that Your Switch Originates: Example

This example shows how to configure the switch to filter SA request messages from the MSDP peer at 171.69.2.2. SA request messages from sources on network 192.4.22.0 pass access list 1 and are accepted; all others are ignored.

```
Device(config)# ip msdp filter sa-request 171.69.2.2 list 1
Device(config)# access-list 1 permit 192.4.22.0 0.0.0.255
```

## Controlling Source Information that Your Switch Forwards: Example

This example shows how to allow only (S,G) pairs that pass access list 100 to be forwarded in an SA message to the peer named *switch.cisco.com*:

```
Device(config)# ip msdp peer switch.cisco.com connect-source gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config)# ip msdp sa-filter out switch.cisco.com list 100
Device(config)# access-list 100 permit ip 171.69.0.0 0.0.255.255 224.20 0 0.0.255.255
```

## Controlling Source Information that Your Switch Receives: Example

This example shows how to filter all SA messages from the peer named *switch.cisco.com*:

```
Device(config)# ip msdp peer switch.cisco.com connect-source gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config)# ip msdp sa-filter in switch.cisco.com
```

## Feature Information for Multicast Source Discovery Protocol

**Table 4: Feature Information for Multicast Source Discovery Protocol**

Feature Name	Release	Feature Information
Multicast Source Discovery Protocol	Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a	This feature was introduced



## CHAPTER 3

# Configuring IP Unicast Routing

- [Restrictions for IP Unicast Routing, on page 51](#)
- [Information About Configuring IP Unicast Routing, on page 51](#)
- [Information About IP Routing, on page 52](#)
- [How to Configure IP Routing, on page 58](#)
- [How to Configure IP Addressing, on page 59](#)
- [Monitoring and Maintaining IP Addressing, on page 76](#)
- [How to Configure IP Unicast Routing, on page 77](#)
- [Monitoring and Maintaining the IP Network, on page 78](#)
- [Feature Information for IP Unicast Routing, on page 79](#)

## Restrictions for IP Unicast Routing

- On enabling IP routing, the VLAN configured as SVI will also learn broadcast ARP requests which are not self destined.
- The number of routed ports and SVIs that you can configure is 4000. Exceeding the recommended number and volume of features being implemented might impact CPU utilization because of hardware limitations.
- Subnetwork Access Protocol (SNAP) address resolution is not supported on this device.

## Information About Configuring IP Unicast Routing

This module describes how to configure IP Version 4 (IPv4) unicast routing on the switch.

A switch stack operates and appears as a single router to the rest of the routers in the network. Basic routing functions like static routing and the Routing Information Protocol (RIP), are available with both the Network Essentials license and the Network Advantage license. To use advanced routing features and other routing protocols, you must have the Network Advantage license enabled on the standalone switch or on the active switch.



### Note

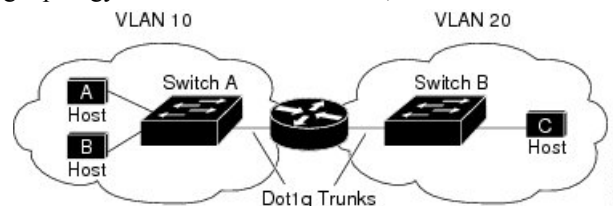
In addition to IPv4 traffic, you can also enable IP Version 6 (IPv6) unicast routing and configure interfaces to forward IPv6 traffic if the switch or switch stack is running the Network Essentials or Network Advantage license.

## Information About IP Routing

In some network environments, VLANs are associated with individual networks or subnetworks. In an IP network, each subnetwork is mapped to an individual VLAN. Configuring VLANs helps control the size of the broadcast domain and keeps local traffic local. However, network devices in different VLANs cannot communicate with one another without a Layer 3 device (router) to route traffic between the VLAN, referred to as inter-VLAN routing. You configure one or more routers to route traffic to the appropriate destination VLAN.

**Figure 2: Routing Topology Example**

This figure shows a basic routing topology. Switch A is in VLAN 10, and Switch B is in VLAN 20. The router



has an interface in each VLAN.

When Host A in VLAN 10 needs to communicate with Host B in VLAN 10, it sends a packet addressed to that host. Switch A forwards the packet directly to Host B, without sending it to the router.

When Host A sends a packet to Host C in VLAN 20, Switch A forwards the packet to the router, which receives the traffic on the VLAN 10 interface. The router checks the routing table, finds the correct outgoing interface, and forwards the packet on the VLAN 20 interface to Switch B. Switch B receives the packet and forwards it to Host C.

## Types of Routing

Routers and Layer 3 switches can route packets in these ways:

- By using default routing
- By using preprogrammed static routes for the traffic
- By dynamically calculating routes by using a routing protocol

Default routing refers to sending traffic with a destination unknown to the router to a default outlet or destination.

Static unicast routing forwards packets from predetermined ports through a single path into and out of a network. Static routing is secure and uses little bandwidth, but does not automatically respond to changes in the network, such as link failures, and therefore, might result in unreachable destinations. As networks grow, static routing becomes a labor-intensive liability.

Dynamic routing protocols are used by routers to dynamically calculate the best route for forwarding traffic. There are two types of dynamic routing protocols:

- Routers using distance-vector protocols maintain routing tables with distance values of networked resources, and periodically pass these tables to their neighbors. Distance-vector protocols use one or a series of metrics for calculating the best routes. These protocols are easy to configure and use.

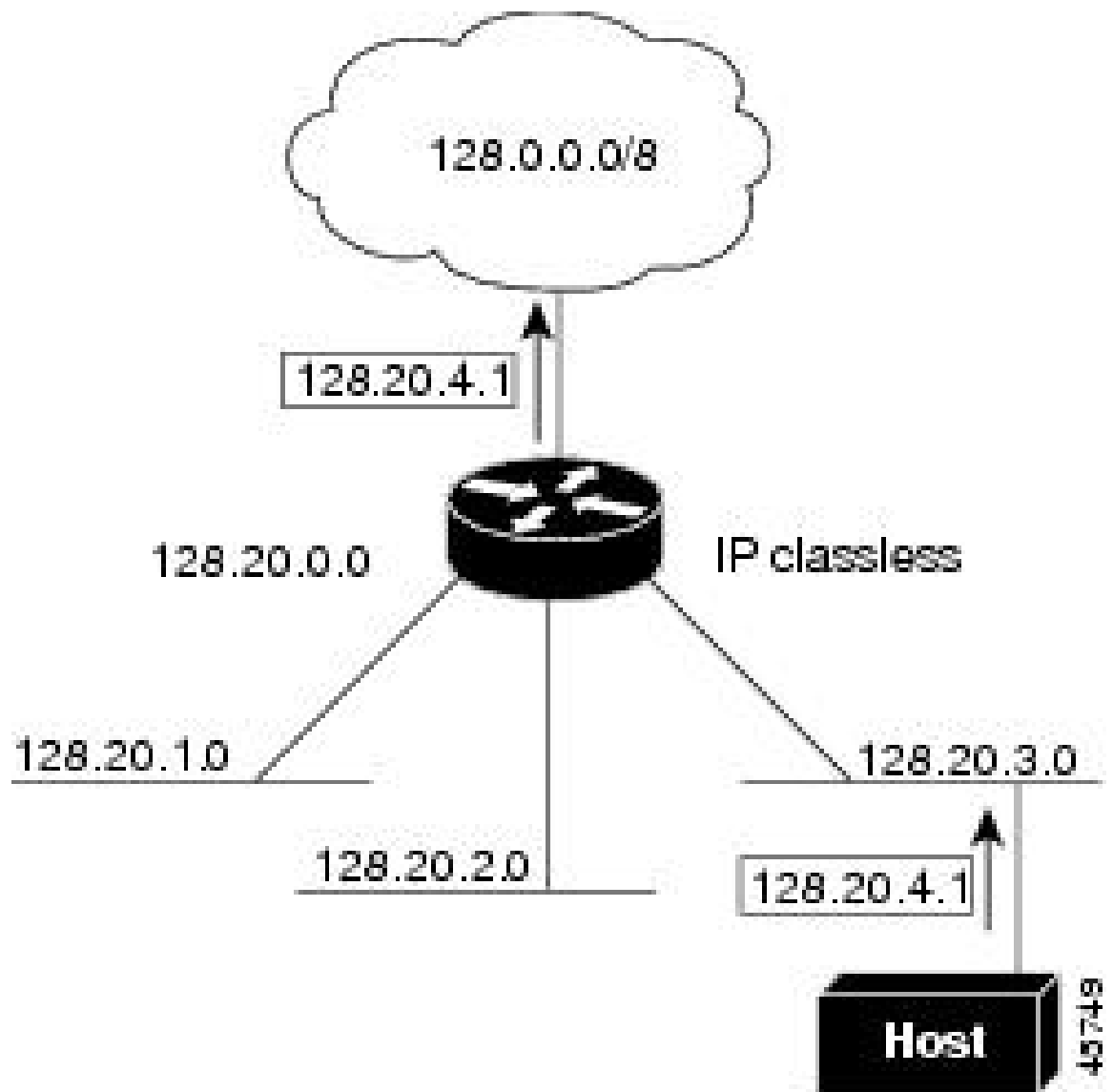
- Routers using link-state protocols maintain a complex database of network topology, based on the exchange of link-state advertisements (LSAs) between routers. LSAs are triggered by an event in the network, which speeds up the convergence time or time required to respond to these changes. Link-state protocols respond quickly to topology changes, but require greater bandwidth and more resources than distance-vector protocols.

Distance-vector protocols supported by the switch are Routing Information Protocol (RIP), which uses a single distance metric (cost) to determine the best path and Border Gateway Protocol (BGP), which adds a path vector mechanism. The switch also supports the Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) link-state protocol and Enhanced IGRP (EIGRP), which adds some link-state routing features to traditional Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (IGRP) to improve efficiency.

## Classless Routing

By default, classless routing behavior is enabled on the Device when it is configured to route. With classless routing, if a router receives packets for a subnet of a network with no default route, the router forwards the packet to the best supernet route. A supernet consists of contiguous blocks of Class C address spaces used to simulate a single, larger address space and is designed to relieve the pressure on the rapidly depleting Class B address space.

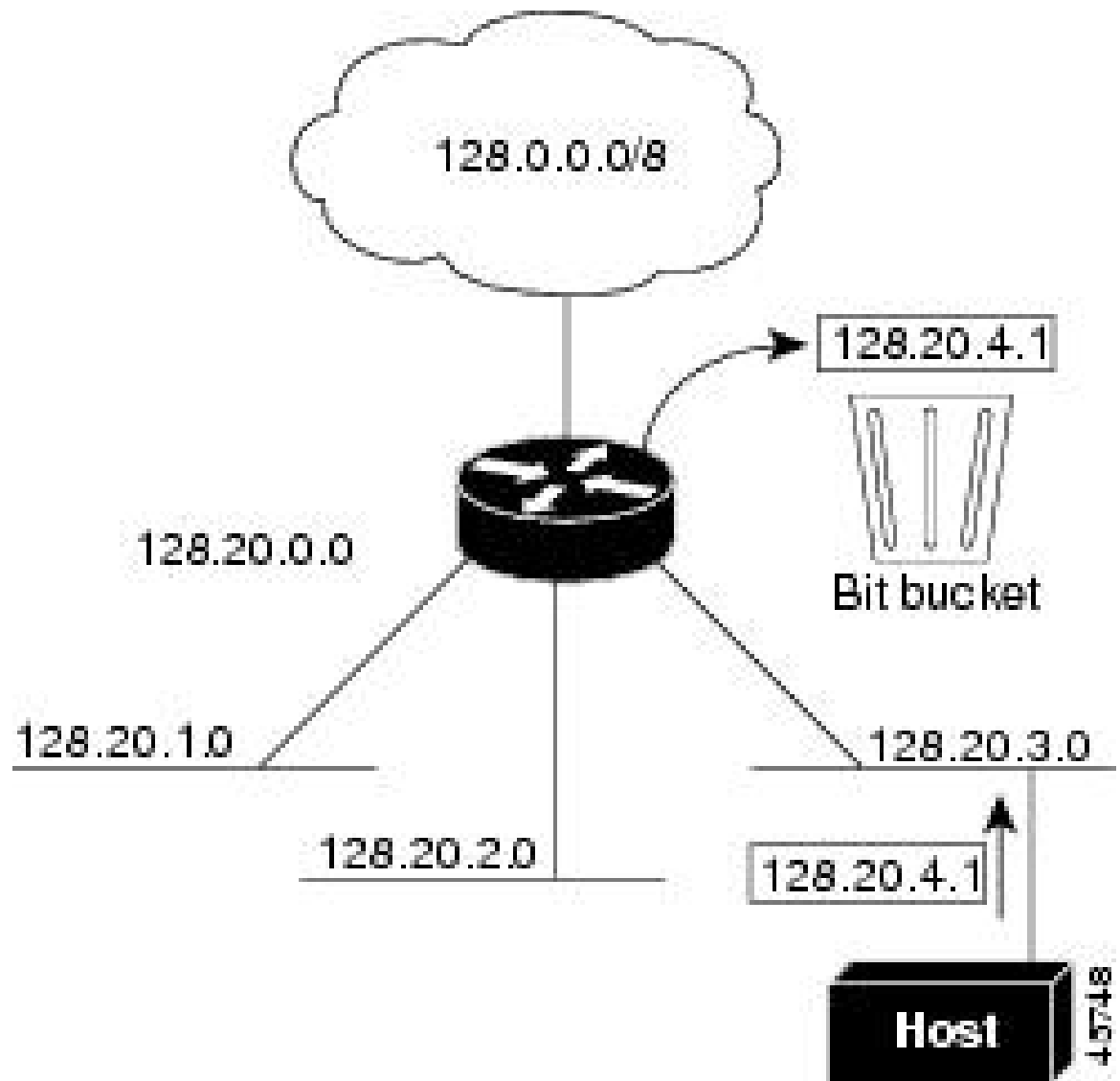
In the figure, classless routing is enabled. When the host sends a packet to 120.20.4.1, instead of discarding the packet, the router forwards it to the best supernet route. If you disable classless routing and a router receives packets destined for a subnet of a network with no network default route, the router discards the packet.

*Figure 3: IP Classless Routing*

In the figure, the router in network 128.20.0.0 is connected to subnets 128.20.1.0, 128.20.2.0, and 128.20.3.0. If the host sends a packet to 120.20.4.1, because there is no network default route, the router discards the packet.



Figure 4: No IP Classless Routing



To prevent the Device from forwarding packets destined for unrecognized subnets to the best supernet route possible, you can disable classless routing behavior.

## Address Resolution

You can control interface-specific handling of IP by using address resolution. A device using IP can have both a local address or MAC address, which uniquely defines the device on its local segment or LAN, and a network address, which identifies the network to which the device belongs.

The local address or MAC address is known as a data link address because it is contained in the data link layer (Layer 2) section of the packet header and is read by data link (Layer 2) devices. To communicate with a device on Ethernet, the software must learn the MAC address of the device. The process of learning the MAC address from an IP address is called *address resolution*. The process of learning the IP address from the MAC address is called *reverse address resolution*.

The Device can use these forms of address resolution:

- Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is used to associate IP address with MAC addresses. Taking an IP address as input, ARP learns the associated MAC address and then stores the IP address/MAC address association in an ARP cache for rapid retrieval. Then the IP datagram is encapsulated in a link-layer frame and sent over the network.
- Proxy ARP helps hosts with no routing tables learn the MAC addresses of hosts on other networks or subnets. If the Device (router) receives an ARP request for a host that is not on the same interface as the ARP request sender, and if the router has all of its routes to the host through other interfaces, it generates a proxy ARP packet giving its own local data link address. The host that sent the ARP request then sends its packets to the router, which forwards them to the intended host.

The Device also uses the Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP), which functions the same as ARP does, except that the RARP packets request an IP address instead of a local MAC address. Using RARP requires a RARP server on the same network segment as the router interface. Use the **ip rarp-server address** interface configuration command to identify the server.

For more information on RARP, see the *Cisco IOS Configuration Fundamentals Configuration Guide*

## Proxy ARP

Proxy ARP, the most common method for learning about other routes, enables an Ethernet host with no routing information to communicate with hosts on other networks or subnets. The host assumes that all hosts are on the same local Ethernet and that they can use ARP to learn their MAC addresses. If a Device receives an ARP request for a host that is not on the same network as the sender, the Device evaluates whether it has the best route to that host. If it does, it sends an ARP reply packet with its own Ethernet MAC address, and the host that sent the request sends the packet to the Device, which forwards it to the intended host. Proxy ARP treats all networks as if they are local, and performs ARP requests for every IP address.

## ICMP Router Discovery Protocol

Router discovery allows the Device to dynamically learn about routes to other networks using ICMP router discovery protocol (IRDP). IRDP allows hosts to locate routers. When operating as a client, the Device generates router discovery packets. When operating as a host, the Device receives router discovery packets. The Device can also listen to Routing Information Protocol (RIP) routing updates and use this information to infer locations of routers. The Device does not actually store the routing tables sent by routing devices; it merely keeps track of which systems are sending the data. The advantage of using IRDP is that it allows each router to specify both a priority and the time after which a device is assumed to be down if no further packets are received.

Each device discovered becomes a candidate for the default router, and a new highest-priority router is selected when a higher priority router is discovered, when the current default router is declared down, or when a TCP connection is about to time out because of excessive retransmissions.

## UDP Broadcast Packets and Protocols

User Datagram Protocol (UDP) is an IP host-to-host layer protocol, as is TCP. UDP provides a low-overhead, connectionless session between two end systems and does not provide for acknowledgment of received datagrams. Network hosts occasionally use UDP broadcasts to find address, configuration, and name information. If such a host is on a network segment that does not include a server, UDP broadcasts are normally

not forwarded. You can remedy this situation by configuring an interface on a router to forward certain classes of broadcasts to a helper address. You can use more than one helper address per interface.

You can specify a UDP destination port to control which UDP services are forwarded. You can specify multiple UDP protocols. You can also specify the Network Disk (ND) protocol, which is used by older diskless Sun workstations and the network security protocol SDNS.

By default, both UDP and ND forwarding are enabled if a helper address has been defined for an interface. The description for the **ip forward-protocol** interface configuration command in the *Cisco IOS IP Command Reference, Volume 1 of 3: Addressing and Services* lists the ports that are forwarded by default if you do not specify any UDP ports.

## Broadcast Packet Handling

After configuring an IP interface address, you can enable routing and configure one or more routing protocols, or you can configure the way the Device responds to network broadcasts. A broadcast is a data packet destined for all hosts on a physical network. The Device supports two kinds of broadcasting:

- A directed broadcast packet is sent to a specific network or series of networks. A directed broadcast address includes the network or subnet fields.
- A flooded broadcast packet is sent to every network.



---

**Note** You can also limit broadcast, unicast, and multicast traffic on Layer 2 interfaces by using the **storm-control** interface configuration command to set traffic suppression levels.

---

Routers provide some protection from broadcast storms by limiting their extent to the local cable. Bridges (including intelligent bridges), because they are Layer 2 devices, forward broadcasts to all network segments, thus propagating broadcast storms. The best solution to the broadcast storm problem is to use a single broadcast address scheme on a network. In most modern IP implementations, you can set the address to be used as the broadcast address. Many implementations, including the one in the Device, support several addressing schemes for forwarding broadcast messages.

## IP Broadcast Flooding

You can allow IP broadcasts to be flooded throughout your internetwork in a controlled fashion by using the database created by the bridging STP. Using this feature also prevents loops. To support this capability, bridging must be configured on each interface that is to participate in the flooding. If bridging is not configured on an interface, it still can receive broadcasts. However, the interface never forwards broadcasts it receives, and the router never uses that interface to send broadcasts received on a different interface.

Packets that are forwarded to a single network address using the IP helper-address mechanism can be flooded. Only one copy of the packet is sent on each network segment.

To be considered for flooding, packets must meet these criteria. (Note that these are the same conditions used to consider packet forwarding using IP helper addresses.)

- The packet must be a MAC-level broadcast.
- The packet must be an IP-level broadcast.

- The packet must be a TFTP, DNS, Time, NetBIOS, ND, or BOOTP packet, or a UDP specified by the **ip forward-protocol udp** global configuration command.
- The time-to-live (TTL) value of the packet must be at least two.

A flooded UDP datagram is given the destination address specified with the **ip broadcast-address** interface configuration command on the output interface. The destination address can be set to any address. Thus, the destination address might change as the datagram propagates through the network. The source address is never changed. The TTL value is decremented.

When a flooded UDP datagram is sent out an interface (and the destination address possibly changed), the datagram is handed to the normal IP output routines and is, therefore, subject to access lists, if they are present on the output interface.

In the Device, the majority of packets are forwarded in hardware; most packets do not go through the Device CPU. For those packets that do go to the CPU, you can speed up spanning tree-based UDP flooding by a factor of about four to five times by using turbo-flooding. This feature is supported over Ethernet interfaces configured for ARP encapsulation.

## How to Configure IP Routing

By default, IP routing is disabled on the Device, and you must enable it before routing can take place.

In the following procedures, the specified interface must be one of these Layer 3 interfaces:

- A routed port: a physical port configured as a Layer 3 port by using the **no switchport** interface configuration command.
- A switch virtual interface (SVI): a VLAN interface created by using the **interface vlan** *vlan\_id* global configuration command and by default a Layer 3 interface.
- An EtherChannel port channel in Layer 3 mode: a port-channel logical interface created by using the **interface port-channel** *port-channel-number* global configuration command and binding the Ethernet interface into the channel group.

All Layer 3 interfaces on which routing will occur must have IP addresses assigned to them.



---

**Note** A Layer 3 switch can have an IP address assigned to each routed port and SVI.

---

Configuring routing consists of several main procedures:

- To support VLAN interfaces, create and configure VLANs on the Device or switch stack, and assign VLAN membership to Layer 2 interfaces. For more information, see the "Configuring VLANs" chapter.
- Configure Layer 3 interfaces.
- Enable IP routing on the switch.
- Assign IP addresses to the Layer 3 interfaces.
- Enable selected routing protocols on the switch.
- Configure routing protocol parameters (optional).

# How to Configure IP Addressing

A required task for configuring IP routing is to assign IP addresses to Layer 3 network interfaces to enable the interfaces and allow communication with the hosts on those interfaces that use IP. The following sections describe how to configure various IP addressing features. Assigning IP addresses to the interface is required; the other procedures are optional.

- Default Addressing Configuration
- Assigning IP Addresses to Network Interfaces
- Configuring Address Resolution Methods
- Routing Assistance When IP Routing is Disabled
- Configuring Broadcast Packet Handling
- Monitoring and Maintaining IP Addressing

## Default IP Addressing Configuration

*Table 5: Default Addressing Configuration*

Feature	Default Setting
IP address	None defined.
ARP	No permanent entries in the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) cache. Encapsulation: Standard Ethernet-style ARP. Timeout: 14400 seconds (4 hours).
IP broadcast address	255.255.255.255 (all ones).
IP classless routing	Enabled.
IP default gateway	Disabled.
IP directed broadcast	Disabled (all IP directed broadcasts are dropped).
IP domain	Domain list: No domain names defined. Domain lookup: Enabled. Domain name: Enabled.
IP forward-protocol	If a helper address is defined or User Datagram Protocol (UDP) flooding is configured, UI is enabled on default ports. Any-local-broadcast: Disabled. Spanning Tree Protocol (STP): Disabled. Turbo-flood: Disabled.

Feature	Default Setting
IP helper address	Disabled.
IP host	Disabled.
IRDP	Disabled. Defaults when enabled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Broadcast IRDP advertisements.</li> <li>• Maximum interval between advertisements: 600 seconds.</li> <li>• Minimum interval between advertisements: 0.75 times max interval</li> <li>• Preference: 0.</li> </ul>
IP proxy ARP	Enabled.
IP routing	Disabled.
IP subnet-zero	Disabled.

## Assigning IP Addresses to Network Interfaces

An IP address identifies a location to which IP packets can be sent. Some IP addresses are reserved for special uses and cannot be used for host, subnet, or network addresses. RFC 1166, “Internet Numbers,” contains the official description of IP addresses.

An interface can have one primary IP address. A mask identifies the bits that denote the network number in an IP address. When you use the mask to subnet a network, the mask is referred to as a subnet mask. To receive an assigned network number, contact your Internet service provider.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>Example:</b>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1	
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>no switchport</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# no switchport	Removes the interface from Layer 2 configuration mode (if it is a physical interface).
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip address <i>ip-address subnet-mask</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.5.1 255.255.255.0	Configures the IP address and IP subnet mask.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>no shutdown</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# no shutdown	Enables the physical interface.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>show ip route</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip route	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show ip interface [<i>interface-id</i>]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show running-config	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Using Subnet Zero

Subnetting with a subnet address of zero is strongly discouraged because of the problems that can arise if a network and a subnet have the same addresses. For example, if network 131.108.0.0 is subnetted as 255.255.255.0, subnet zero would be written as 131.108.0.0, which is the same as the network address.

You can use the all ones subnet (131.108.255.0) and even though it is discouraged, you can enable the use of subnet zero if you need the entire subnet space for your IP address.

Use the **no ip subnet-zero** global configuration command to restore the default and disable the use of subnet zero.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip subnet-zero</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>ip subnet-zero</b>	Enables the use of subnet zero for interface addresses and routing updates.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show running-config</b>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.



## Disabling Classless Routing

To prevent the Device from forwarding packets destined for unrecognized subnets to the best supernet route possible, you can disable classless routing behavior.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>no ip classless</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)#no ip classless</pre>	Disables classless routing behavior.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring Address Resolution Methods

You can perform the following tasks to configure address resolution.

## Defining a Static ARP Cache

ARP and other address resolution protocols provide dynamic mapping between IP addresses and MAC addresses. Because most hosts support dynamic address resolution, you usually do not need to specify static ARP cache entries. If you must define a static ARP cache entry, you can do so globally, which installs a permanent entry in the ARP cache that the Device uses to translate IP addresses into MAC addresses. Optionally, you can also specify that the Device respond to ARP requests as if it were the owner of the specified IP address. If you do not want the ARP entry to be permanent, you can specify a timeout period for the ARP entry.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>arp ip-address hardware-address type</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip 10.1.5.1 c2f3.220a.12f4 arpa</pre>	Associates an IP address with a MAC (hardware) address in the ARP cache, and specifies encapsulation type as one of these: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>arpa</b>—ARP encapsulation for Ethernet interfaces</li> <li>• <b>sap</b>—HP's ARP type</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>arp ip-address hardware-address type [alias]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip 10.1.5.3 d7f3.220d.12f5 arpa alias</pre>	(Optional) Specifies that the switch respond to ARP requests as if it were the owner of the specified IP address.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</pre>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the interface to configure.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>arp timeout seconds</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# arp timeout 20000</pre>	(Optional) Sets the length of time an ARP cache entry will stay in the cache. The recommended value of ARP timeout is 4 hours which is also the default setting. However, if your network experiences regular updates to ARP cache entries, consider reducing the timeout. Be aware that decreasing the ARP timeout can result in increased network traffic. Setting the ARP timeout to 60 seconds or less is

	Command or Action	Purpose
		generally not recommended as it may cause network disruptions.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>show interfaces</b> <i>[interface-id]</i> <b>Example:</b> Device# show interfaces gigabitethernet 1/0/1	Verifies the type of ARP and the timeout value used on all interfaces or a specific interface.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show arp</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show arp	Views the contents of the ARP cache.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show ip arp</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip arp	Views the contents of the ARP cache.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Setting ARP Encapsulation

By default, Ethernet ARP encapsulation (represented by the **arpa** keyword) is enabled on an IP interface.

To disable an encapsulation type, use the **no arp arpa** interface configuration command.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface</b> gigabitethernet 1/0/2	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>arp arpa</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>arp arpa</b>	Specifies the ARP encapsulation method:
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show interfaces</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ] <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show interfaces</b>	Verifies ARP encapsulation configuration on all interfaces or the specified interface.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Enabling Proxy ARP

By default, the Device uses proxy ARP to help hosts learn MAC addresses of hosts on other networks or subnets.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip proxy-arp</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-if)# ip proxy-arp	Enables proxy ARP on the interface.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show ip interface</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ] <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ip interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2	Verifies the configuration on the interface or all interfaces.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Routing Assistance When IP Routing is Disabled

These mechanisms allow the Device to learn about routes to other networks when it does not have IP routing enabled:

- Proxy ARP
- Default Gateway
- ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP)

### Proxy ARP

Proxy ARP is enabled by default. To enable it after it has been disabled, see the “Enabling Proxy ARP” section. Proxy ARP works as long as other routers support it.

## Default Gateway

Another method for locating routes is to define a default router or default gateway. All non-local packets are sent to this router, which either routes them appropriately or sends an IP Control Message Protocol (ICMP) redirect message back, defining which local router the host should use. The Device caches the redirect messages and forwards each packet as efficiently as possible. A limitation of this method is that there is no means of detecting when the default router has gone down or is unavailable.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip default-gateway <i>ip-address</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>ip default gateway 10.1.5.1</b>	Sets up a default gateway (router).
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show ip redirects</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show ip redirects</b>	Displays the address of the default gateway router to verify the setting.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (IRDP)

The only required task for IRDP routing on an interface is to enable IRDP processing on that interface. When enabled, the default parameters apply.

You can optionally change any of these parameters. If you change the **maxadvertinterval** value, the **holdtime** and **minadvertinterval** values also change, so it is important to first change the **maxadvertinterval** value, before manually changing either the **holdtime** or **minadvertinterval** values.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</pre>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip irdp</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip irdp</pre>	Enables IRDP processing on the interface.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip irdp multicast</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip irdp multicast</pre>	(Optional) Sends IRDP advertisements to the multicast address (224.0.0.1) instead of IP broadcasts.  <b>Note</b> This command allows for compatibility with Sun Microsystems Solaris, which requires IRDP packets to be sent out as multicasts. Many implementations cannot receive these multicasts; ensure end-host ability before using this command.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>ip irdp holdtime <i>seconds</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip irdp holdtime 1000</pre>	(Optional) Sets the IRDP period for which advertisements are valid. The default is three times the <b>maxadvertinterval</b> value. It must be greater than <b>maxadvertinterval</b> and cannot be greater than 9000 seconds. If you change the <b>maxadvertinterval</b> value, this value also changes.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>ip irdp maxadvertinterval <i>seconds</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip irdp maxadvertinterval 650</pre>	(Optional) Sets the IRDP maximum interval between advertisements. The default is 600 seconds.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>ip irdp minadvertinterval</b> <i>seconds</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# ip irdp minadvertinterval 500	(Optional) Sets the IRDP minimum interval between advertisements. The default is 0.75 times the <b>maxadvertinterval</b> . If you change the <b>maxadvertinterval</b> , this value changes to the new default (0.75 of <b>maxadvertinterval</b> ).
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>ip irdp preference</b> <i>number</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# ip irdp preference 2	(Optional) Sets a device IRDP preference level. The allowed range is –231 to 231. The default is 0. A higher value increases the router preference level.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>ip irdp address</b> <i>address [number]</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# ip irdp address 10.1.10.10	(Optional) Specifies an IRDP address and preference to proxy-advertise.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>show ip irdp</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip irdp	Verifies settings by displaying IRDP values.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring Broadcast Packet Handling

Perform the tasks in these sections to enable these schemes:

- Enabling Directed Broadcast-to-Physical Broadcast Translation
- Forwarding UDP Broadcast Packets and Protocols
- Establishing an IP Broadcast Address
- Flooding IP Broadcasts

### Enabling Directed Broadcast-to-Physical Broadcast Translation

By default, IP directed broadcasts are dropped; they are not forwarded. Dropping IP-directed broadcasts makes routers less susceptible to denial-of-service attacks.



You can enable forwarding of IP-directed broadcasts on an interface where the broadcast becomes a physical (MAC-layer) broadcast. Only those protocols configured by using the **ip forward-protocol** global configuration command are forwarded.

You can specify an access list to control which broadcasts are forwarded. When an access list is specified, only those IP packets permitted by the access list are eligible to be translated from directed broadcasts to physical broadcasts. For more information on access lists, see the “Information about Network Security with ACLs” section in the Security Configuration Guide.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</pre>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the interface to configure.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip directed-broadcast [<i>access-list-number</i>]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip directed-broadcast 103</pre>	Enables directed broadcast-to-physical broadcast translation on the interface. You can include an access list to control which broadcasts are forwarded. When an access list, only IP packets permitted by the access list can be translated.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# exit</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>ip forward-protocol {udp [<i>port</i>]   nd   sdns}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip forward-protocol nd</pre>	Specifies which protocols and ports the router forwards when forwarding broadcast packets. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>udp</b>—Forward UPD datagrams. port: (Optional) Destination port that controls which UDP services are forwarded.</li> <li>• <b>nd</b>—Forward ND datagrams.</li> <li>• <b>sdns</b>—Forward SDNS datagrams</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>show ip interface</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip interface</pre>	Verifies the configuration on the interface or all interfaces
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Forwarding UDP Broadcast Packets and Protocols

If you do not specify any UDP ports when you configure the forwarding of UDP broadcasts, you are configuring the router to act as a BOOTP forwarding agent. BOOTP packets carry DHCP information.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</pre>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip helper-address</b> <i>address</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# ip helper address 10.1.10.1	Enables forwarding and specifies the destination address for forwarding UDP broadcast packets, including BOOTP.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>ip forward-protocol</b> {udp [ <i>port</i> ]   nd   sdns} <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# ip forward-protocol sdns	Specifies which protocols the router forwards when forwarding broadcast packets.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>show ip interface</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ] <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1	Verifies the configuration on the interface or all interfaces.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show running-config	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Establishing an IP Broadcast Address

The most popular IP broadcast address (and the default) is an address consisting of all ones (255.255.255.255). However, the Device can be configured to generate any form of IP broadcast address.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</pre>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the interface to configure.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip broadcast-address <i>ip-address</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip broadcast-address 128.1.255.255</pre>	Enters a broadcast address different from the default, for example 128.1.255.255.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show ip interface [<i>interface-id</i>]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip interface</pre>	Verifies the broadcast address on the interface or all interfaces.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Flooding IP Broadcasts

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip forward-protocol spanning-tree</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip forward-protocol spanning-tree</pre>	Uses the bridging spanning-tree database to flood UDP datagrams.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>ip forward-protocol turbo-flood</b> <b>Example:</b>	Uses the spanning-tree database to speed up flooding of UDP datagrams.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config)# ip forward-protocol turbo-flood</code>	
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device(config)# end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device# show running-config</code>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device# copy running-config startup-config</code>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Monitoring and Maintaining IP Addressing

When the contents of a particular cache, table, or database have become or are suspected to be invalid, you can remove all its contents by using the **clear** privileged EXEC commands. The Table lists the commands for clearing contents.

**Table 6: Commands to Clear Caches, Tables, and Databases**

<b>clear arp-cache</b>	Clears the IP ARP cache and the fast-switching cache.
<b>clear host</b> { <i>name</i>   *}	Removes one or all entries from the hostname and the address cache.
<b>clear ip route</b> { <i>network</i> [ <i>mask</i> ]   *}	Removes one or more routes from the IP routing table.

You can display specific statistics, such as the contents of IP routing tables, caches, and databases; the reachability of nodes; and the routing path that packets are taking through the network. The Table lists the privileged EXEC commands for displaying IP statistics.

**Table 7: Commands to Display Caches, Tables, and Databases**

<b>show arp</b>	Displays the entries in the ARP table.
<b>show hosts</b>	Displays the default domain name, style of lookup service, name server, and the cached list of hostnames and addresses.
<b>show ip aliases</b>	Displays IP addresses mapped to TCP ports (aliases).
<b>show ip arp</b>	Displays the IP ARP cache.

<b>show ip interface</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ]	Displays the IP status of interfaces.
<b>show ip irdp</b>	Displays IRDP values.
<b>show ip masks</b> <i>address</i>	Displays the masks used for network addresses and the number of each mask.
<b>show ip redirects</b>	Displays the address of a default gateway.
<b>show ip route</b> [ <i>address</i> [ <i>mask</i> ]]   [ <i>protocol</i> ]	Displays the current state of the routing table.
<b>show ip route summary</b>	Displays the current state of the routing table in summary form.

# How to Configure IP Unicast Routing

## Enabling IP Unicast Routing

By default, the Device is in Layer 2 switching mode and IP routing is disabled. To use the Layer 3 capabilities of the Device, you must enable IP routing.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip routing</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>ip routing</b>	Enables IP routing.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>show running-config</b>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Example of Enabling IP Routing

This example shows how to enable IP routing using RIP as the routing protocol :

```
Device# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Device(config)# ip routing

Device(config-router)# end
```

## What to Do Next

You can now set up parameters for the selected routing protocols as described in these sections:

- RIP
- OSPF,
- EIGRP
- BGP
- Unicast Reverse Path Forwarding
- Protocol-Independent Features (optional)

## Monitoring and Maintaining the IP Network

You can remove all contents of a particular cache, table, or database. You can also display specific statistics.

**Table 8: Commands to Clear IP Routes or Display Route Status**

Command	Purpose
<b>show ip route summary</b>	Displays the current state of the routing table in summary form



# Feature Information for IP Unicast Routing

*Table 9: Feature Information for IP Unicast Routing*

Feature Name	Release	Feature Information
IP Unicast Routing	Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a	This feature was introduced





## CHAPTER 4

# Configuring RIP

- [Information About RIP, on page 81](#)
- [How to Configure RIP, on page 82](#)
- [Configuration Example for Summary Addresses and Split Horizon, on page 88](#)

## Information About RIP

The Routing Information Protocol (RIP) is an interior gateway protocol (IGP) created for use in small, homogeneous networks. It is a distance-vector routing protocol that uses broadcast User Datagram Protocol (UDP) data packets to exchange routing information. The protocol is documented in RFC 1058. You can find detailed information about RIP in *IP Routing Fundamentals*, published by Cisco Press.



**Note** RIP is supported in the Network Essentials feature set.

Using RIP, the Device sends routing information updates (advertisements) every 30 seconds. If a router does not receive an update from another router for 180 seconds or more, it marks the routes served by that router as unusable. If there is still no update after 240 seconds, the router removes all routing table entries for the non-updating router.

RIP uses hop counts to rate the value of different routes. The hop count is the number of routers that can be traversed in a route. A directly connected network has a hop count of zero; a network with a hop count of 16 is unreachable. This small range (0 to 15) makes RIP unsuitable for large networks.

If the router has a default network path, RIP advertises a route that links the router to the pseudonetwork 0.0.0.0. The 0.0.0.0 network does not exist; it is treated by RIP as a network to implement the default routing feature. The Device advertises the default network if a default was learned by RIP or if the router has a gateway of last resort and RIP is configured with a default metric. RIP sends updates to the interfaces in specified networks. If an interface's network is not specified, it is not advertised in any RIP update.

## Summary Addresses and Split Horizon

Routers connected to broadcast-type IP networks and using distance-vector routing protocols normally use the split-horizon mechanism to reduce the possibility of routing loops. Split horizon blocks information about routes from being advertised by a router on any interface from which that information originated. This feature usually optimizes communication among multiple routers, especially when links are broken.

# How to Configure RIP

## Default RIP Configuration

*Table 10: Default RIP Configuration*

Feature	Default Setting
Auto summary	Enabled.
Default-information originate	Disabled.
Default metric	Built-in; automatic metric translations.
IP RIP authentication key-chain	No authentication. Authentication mode: clear text.
IP RIP triggered	Disabled
IP split horizon	Varies with media.
Neighbor	None defined.
Network	None specified.
Offset list	Disabled.
Output delay	0 milliseconds.
Timers basic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Update: 30 seconds.</li> <li>• Invalid: 180 seconds.</li> <li>• Hold-down: 180 seconds.</li> <li>• Flush: 240 seconds.</li> </ul>
Validate-update-source	Enabled.
Version	Receives RIP Version 1 and 2 packets; sends Version 1 packets.

## Configuring Basic RIP Parameters

To configure RIP, you enable RIP routing for a network and optionally configure other parameters. On the Device, RIP configuration commands are ignored until you configure the network number.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip routing</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip routing</pre>	Enables IP routing. (Required only if IP routing is disabled.)
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>router rip</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router rip</pre>	Enables a RIP routing process, and enter router configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>network <i>network number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# network 12.0.0.0</pre>	<p>Associates a network with a RIP routing process. You can specify multiple <b>network</b> commands. RIP routing updates are sent and received through interfaces only on these networks.</p> <p><b>Note</b> You must configure a network number for the RIP commands to take effect.</p>
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>neighbor <i>ip-address</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 10.2.5.1</pre>	(Optional) Defines a neighboring router with which to exchange routing information. This step allows routing updates from RIP (normally a broadcast protocol) to reach nonbroadcast networks.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>offset-list [<i>access-list number   name</i>] {<i>in</i>   <i>out</i>} <i>offset</i> [<i>type number</i>]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# offset-list 103 in 10</pre>	(Optional) Applies an offset list to routing metrics to increase incoming and outgoing metrics to routes learned through RIP. You can limit the offset list with an access list or an interface.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>timers basic <i>update invalid holddown flush</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# timers basic 45 360 400 300</pre>	<p>(Optional) Adjusts routing protocol timers. Valid ranges for all timers are 0 to 4294967295 seconds.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>update</i>—The time between sending routing updates. The default is 30 seconds.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>invalid</i>—The timer after which a route is declared invalid. The default is 180 seconds.</li> <li>• <i>holddown</i>—The time before a route is removed from the routing table. The default is 180 seconds.</li> <li>• <i>flush</i>—The amount of time for which routing updates are postponed. The default is 240 seconds.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>version {1   2}</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>version 2</b>	(Optional) Configures the switch to receive and send only RIP Version 1 or RIP Version 2 packets. By default, the switch receives Version 1 and 2 but sends only Version 1. You can also use the interface commands <b>ip rip {send   receive} version 1   2   1 2</b> to control what versions are used for sending and receiving on interfaces.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>no auto summary</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>no auto summary</b>	(Optional) Disables automatic summarization. By default, the switch summarizes subprefixes when crossing classful network boundaries. Disable summarization (RIP Version 2 only) to advertise subnet and host routing information to classful network boundaries.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>output-delay delay</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>output-delay 8</b>	(Optional) Adds interpacket delay for RIP updates sent. By default, packets in a multiple-packet RIP update have no delay added between packets. If you are sending packets to a lower-speed device, you can add an interpacket delay in the range of 8 to 50 milliseconds.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>show ip protocols</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show ip protocols</b>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring RIP Authentication

RIP Version 1 does not support authentication. If you are sending and receiving RIP Version 2 packets, you can enable RIP authentication on an interface. The key chain specifies the set of keys that can be used on the interface. If a key chain is not configured, no authentication is performed, not even the default.

The Device supports two modes of authentication on interfaces for which RIP authentication is enabled: plain text and MD5. The default is plain text.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</pre>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the interface to configure.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip rip authentication key-chain <i>name-of-chain</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip rip authentication key-chain trees</pre>	Enables RIP authentication.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip rip authentication mode {text   md5}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip rip authentication mode md5</pre>	Configures the interface to use plain text authentication (the default) or MD5 digest authentication.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# <code>copy running-config startup-config</code>	

## Configuring Summary Addresses and Split Horizon



**Note** In general, disabling split horizon is not recommended unless you are certain that your application requires it to properly advertise routes.

If you want to configure an interface running RIP to advertise a summarized local IP address pool on a network access server for dial-up clients, use the **ip summary-address rip** interface configuration command.



**Note** If split horizon is enabled, neither autosummary nor interface IP summary addresses are advertised.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <code>enable</code>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</code>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip address <i>ip-address subnet-mask</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <code>ip address 10.1.1.10 255.255.255.0</code>	Configures the IP address and IP subnet.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip summary-address rip ip address <i>ip-network mask</i></b> <b>Example:</b>	Configures the IP address to be summarized and the IP network mask.



	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# <b>ip summary-address rip ip address 10.1.1.30 255.255.255.0</b>	
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>no ip split horizon</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-if)# <b>no ip split horizon</b>	Disables split horizon on the interface.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>show ip interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>show ip interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring Split Horizon

Routers connected to broadcast-type IP networks and using distance-vector routing protocols normally use the split-horizon mechanism to reduce the possibility of routing loops. Split horizon blocks information about routes from being advertised by a router on any interface from which that information originated. This feature can optimize communication among multiple routers, especially when links are broken.



**Note** In general, we do not recommend disabling split horizon unless you are certain that your application requires it to properly advertise routes.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the interface to configure.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip address <i>ip-address subnet-mask</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip address 10.1.1.10 255.255.255.0</b>	Configures the IP address and IP subnet.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>no ip split-horizon</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>no ip split-horizon</b>	Disables split horizon on the interface.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show ip interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuration Example for Summary Addresses and Split Horizon

In this example, the major net is 10.0.0.0. The summary address 10.2.0.0 overrides the autosummary address of 10.0.0.0 so that 10.2.0.0 is advertised out interface Gigabit Ethernet port 2, and 10.0.0.0 is not advertised. In the example, if the interface is still in Layer 2 mode (the default), you must enter a **no switchport** interface configuration command before entering the **ip address** interface configuration command.



**Note** If split horizon is enabled, neither autosummary nor interface summary addresses (those configured with the **ip summary-address rip** router configuration command) are advertised.

```
Device(config)# router rip
Device(config-router)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/2
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.5.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# ip summary-address rip 10.2.0.0 255.255.0.0
Device(config-if)# no ip split-horizon
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# router rip
Device(config-router)# network 10.0.0.0
Device(config-router)# neighbor 2.2.2.2 peer-group mygroup
Device(config-router)# end
```





## CHAPTER 5

# Configuring OSPF

- [Information About OSPF, on page 91](#)
- [How to Configure OSPF, on page 94](#)
- [Monitoring OSPF, on page 104](#)
- [Configuration Examples for OSPF, on page 105](#)

## Information About OSPF

OSPF is an Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP) designed expressly for IP networks, supporting IP subnetting and tagging of externally derived routing information. OSPF also allows packet authentication and uses IP multicast when sending and receiving packets. The Cisco implementation supports RFC 1253, OSPF management information base (MIB).

The Cisco implementation conforms to the OSPF Version 2 specifications with these key features:

- Definition of stub areas is supported.
- Routes learned through any IP routing protocol can be redistributed into another IP routing protocol. At the intradomain level, this means that OSPF can import routes learned through EIGRP and RIP. OSPF routes can also be exported into RIP.
- Plain text and MD5 authentication among neighboring routers within an area is supported.
- Configurable routing interface parameters include interface output cost, retransmission interval, interface transmit delay, router priority, router dead and hello intervals, and authentication key.
- Virtual links are supported.
- Not-so-stubby-areas (NSSAs) per RFC 1587 are supported.

OSPF typically requires coordination among many internal routers, area border routers (ABRs) connected to multiple areas, and autonomous system boundary routers (ASBRs). The minimum configuration would use all default parameter values, no authentication, and interfaces assigned to areas. If you customize your environment, you must ensure coordinated configuration of all routers.

## OSPF Nonstop Forwarding

The Device or switch stack supports two levels of nonstop forwarding (NSF):

- [OSPF NSF Awareness, on page 92](#)

- [OSPF NSF Capability, on page 92](#)

## OSPF NSF Awareness

The Network Advantage license supports OSPF NSF Awareness for IPv4. When the neighboring router is NSF-capable, the Layer 3 Device continues to forward packets from the neighboring router during the interval between the primary Route Processor (RP) in a router crashing and the backup RP taking over, or while the primary RP is manually reloaded for a non-disruptive software upgrade.

This feature cannot be disabled.

## OSPF NSF Capability

The Network Advantage license supports the OSPFv2 NSF IETF format in addition to the OSPFv2 NSF Cisco format that is supported in earlier releases. For information about this feature, see : *NSF—OSPF (RFC 3623 OSPF Graceful Restart)*.

The Network Advantage license also supports OSPF NSF-capable routing for IPv4 for better convergence and lower traffic loss following a stack's active switch change.



**Note** OSPF NSF requires that all neighbor networking devices be NSF-aware. If an NSF-capable router discovers non-NSF aware neighbors on a network segment, it disables NSF capabilities for that segment. Other network segments where all devices are NSF-aware or NSF-capable continue to provide NSF capabilities.

Use the **nsf** OSPF routing configuration command to enable OSPF NSF routing. Use the **show ip ospf** privileged EXEC command to verify that it is enabled.

For more information, see *Cisco Nonstop Forwarding*:

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/ios/ha/configuration/guide/ha-nonstp\\_fwdg.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/ios/ha/configuration/guide/ha-nonstp_fwdg.html)

## OSPF Area Parameters

You can optionally configure several OSPF area parameters. These parameters include authentication for password-based protection against unauthorized access to an area, stub areas, and not-so-stubby-areas (NSSAs). Stub areas are areas into which information on external routes is not sent. Instead, the area border router (ABR) generates a default external route into the stub area for destinations outside the autonomous system (AS). An NSSA does not flood all LSAs from the core into the area, but can import AS external routes within the area by redistribution.

Route summarization is the consolidation of advertised addresses into a single summary route to be advertised by other areas. If network numbers are contiguous, you can use the **area range** router configuration command to configure the ABR to advertise a summary route that covers all networks in the range.

## Other OSPF Parameters

You can optionally configure other OSPF parameters in router configuration mode.

- **Route summarization:** When redistributing routes from other protocols. Each route is advertised individually in an external LSA. To help decrease the size of the OSPF link state database, you can use the **summary-address** router configuration command to advertise a single router for all the redistributed routes included in a specified network address and mask.

- **Virtual links:** In OSPF, all areas must be connected to a backbone area. You can establish a virtual link in case of a backbone-continuity break by configuring two Area Border Routers as endpoints of a virtual link. Configuration information includes the identity of the other virtual endpoint (the other ABR) and the nonbackbone link that the two routers have in common (the transit area). Virtual links cannot be configured through a stub area.
- **Default route:** When you specifically configure redistribution of routes into an OSPF routing domain, the route automatically becomes an autonomous system boundary router (ASBR). You can force the ASBR to generate a default route into the OSPF routing domain.
- **Domain Name Server (DNS) names** for use in all OSPF **show** privileged EXEC command displays makes it easier to identify a router than displaying it by router ID or neighbor ID.
- **Default Metrics:** OSPF calculates the OSPF metric for an interface according to the bandwidth of the interface. The metric is calculated as  $\text{ref-bw} / \text{bandwidth}$ , where *ref* is 10 by default, and bandwidth (*bw*) is specified by the **bandwidth** interface configuration command. For multiple links with high bandwidth, you can specify a larger number to differentiate the cost on those links.
- **Administrative distance** is a rating of the trustworthiness of a routing information source, an integer between 0 and 255, with a higher value meaning a lower trust rating. An administrative distance of 255 means the routing information source cannot be trusted at all and should be ignored. OSPF uses three different administrative distances: routes within an area (interarea), routes to another area (interarea), and routes from another routing domain learned through redistribution (external). You can change any of the distance values.
- **Passive interfaces:** Because interfaces between two devices on an Ethernet represent only one network segment, to prevent OSPF from sending hello packets for the sending interface, you must configure the sending device to be a passive interface. Both devices can identify each other through the hello packet for the receiving interface.
- **Route calculation timers:** You can configure the delay time between when OSPF receives a topology change and when it starts the shortest path first (SPF) calculation and the hold time between two SPF calculations.
- **Log neighbor changes:** You can configure the router to send a syslog message when an OSPF neighbor state changes, providing a high-level view of changes in the router.

## LSA Group Pacing

The OSPF LSA group pacing feature allows the router to group OSPF LSAs and pace the refreshing, check-summing, and aging functions for more efficient router use. This feature is enabled by default with a 4-minute default pacing interval, and you will not usually need to modify this parameter. The optimum group pacing interval is inversely proportional to the number of LSAs the router is refreshing, check-summing, and aging. For example, if you have approximately 10,000 LSAs in the database, decreasing the pacing interval would benefit you. If you have a very small database (40 to 100 LSAs), increasing the pacing interval to 10 to 20 minutes might benefit you slightly.

## Loopback Interfaces

OSPF uses the highest IP address configured on the interfaces as its router ID. If this interface is down or removed, the OSPF process must recalculate a new router ID and resend all its routing information out its interfaces. If a loopback interface is configured with an IP address, OSPF uses this IP address as its router

ID, even if other interfaces have higher IP addresses. Because loopback interfaces never fail, this provides greater stability. OSPF automatically prefers a loopback interface over other interfaces, and it chooses the highest IP address among all loopback interfaces.

# How to Configure OSPF

## Default OSPF Configuration

**Table 11: Default OSPF Configuration**

Feature	Default Setting
Interface parameters	Cost: Retransmit interval: 5 seconds. Transmit delay: 1 second. Priority: 1. Hello interval: 10 seconds. Dead interval: 4 times the hello interval. No authentication. No password specified. MD5 authentication disabled.
Area	Authentication type: 0 (no authentication). Default cost: 1. Range: Disabled. Stub: No stub area defined. NSSA: No NSSA area defined.
Auto cost	100 Mb/s.
Default-information originate	Disabled. When enabled, the default metric setting is 10, and the external route type is Type 2.
Default metric	Built-in, automatic metric translation, as appropriate for each routing protocol.
Distance OSPF	dist1 (all routes within an area): 110. dist2 (all routes from one area to another): 110. dist3 (routes from other routing domains): 110.
OSPF database filter	Disabled. All outgoing link-state advertisements (LSAs) are flooded to the interface.
IP OSPF name lookup	Disabled.
Log adjacency changes	Enabled.
Neighbor	None specified.



Feature	Default Setting
Neighbor database filter	Disabled. All outgoing LSAs are flooded to the neighbor.
Network area	Disabled.
Nonstop Forwarding (NSF) awareness	Enabled. Allows Layer 3 switches to continue forwarding packets from a neighbor NSF-capable router during hardware or software changes.
Router ID	No OSPF routing process defined.
Summary address	Disabled.
Timers LSA group pacing	240 seconds.
Timers shortest path first (spf)	spf delay: 50 milliseconds; spf-holdtime: 200 milliseconds.
Virtual link	No area ID or router ID defined. Hello interval: 10 seconds. Retransmit interval: 5 seconds. Transmit delay: 1 second. Dead interval: 40 seconds. Authentication key: no key predefined. Message-digest key (MD5): no key predefined.

## Configuring Basic OSPF Parameters

To enable OSPF, create an OSPF routing process, specify the range of IP addresses to associate with the routing process, and assign area IDs to be associated with that range. For switches running the Network Essentials image, you can configure either the Cisco OSPFv2 NSF format or the IETF OSPFv2 NSF format.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router ospf process-id</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>router ospf 15</b>	Enables OSPF routing, and enter router configuration mode. The process ID is an internally used identification parameter that is locally assigned and can be any positive integer. Each OSPF routing process has a unique value.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<b>Note</b> OSPF for Routed Access supports only one OSPFv2 and one OSPFv3 instance with a maximum number of 1000 dynamically learned routes.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>nsf cisco [enforce global]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>nsf cisco enforce global</b>	(Optional) Enables Cisco NSF operations for OSPF. The <b>enforce global</b> keyword cancels NSF restart when non-NSF-aware neighboring networking devices are detected.  <b>Note</b> Enter the command in Step 3 or Step 4, and go to Step 5.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>nsf ietf [restart-interval seconds]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>nsf ietf restart-interval 60</b>	(Optional) Enables IETF NSF operations for OSPF. The <b>restart-interval</b> keyword specifies the length of the graceful restart interval, in seconds. The range is from 1 to 1800. The default is 120.  <b>Note</b> Enter the command in Step 3 or Step 4, and go to Step 5.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>network address wildcard-mask area area-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>network 10.1.1.1 255.240.0.0 area 20</b>	Define an interface on which OSPF runs and the area ID for that interface. You can use the wildcard-mask to use a single command to define one or more multiple interfaces to be associated with a specific OSPF area. The area ID can be a decimal value or an IP address.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip protocols</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show ip protocols</b>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring OSPF Interfaces

You can use the **ip ospf** interface configuration commands to modify interface-specific OSPF parameters. You are not required to modify any of these parameters, but some interface parameters (hello interval, dead

interval, and authentication key) must be consistent across all routers in an attached network. If you modify these parameters, be sure all routers in the network have compatible values.



**Note** The **ip ospf** interface configuration commands are all optional.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip ospf cost</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip ospf 8</b>	(Optional) Explicitly specifies the cost of sending a packet on the interface.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip ospf retransmit-interval seconds</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip ospf transmit-interval 10</b>	(Optional) Specifies the number of seconds between link state advertisement transmissions. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds. The default is 5 seconds.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip ospf transmit-delay seconds</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip ospf transmit-delay 2</b>	(Optional) Sets the estimated number of seconds to wait before sending a link state update packet. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds. The default is 1 second.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>ip ospf priority number</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip ospf priority 5</b>	(Optional) Sets priority to help find the OSPF designated router for a network. The range is from 0 to 255. The default is 1.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>ip ospf hello-interval seconds</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip ospf hello-interval 12</b>	(Optional) Sets the number of seconds between hello packets sent on an OSPF interface. The value must be the same for all nodes on a network. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds. The default is 10 seconds.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>ip ospf dead-interval seconds</b> <b>Example:</b>	(Optional) Sets the number of seconds after the last device hello packet was seen before its neighbors declare the OSPF router to be down. The value must be the same for

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# ip ospf dead-interval 8	all nodes on a network. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds. The default is 4 times the hello interval.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>ip ospf authentication-key key</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-if)# ip ospf authentication-key password	(Optional) Assign a password to be used by neighboring OSPF routers. The password can be any string of keyboard-entered characters up to 8 bytes in length. All neighboring routers on the same network must have the same password to exchange OSPF information.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>ip ospf message-digest-key keyid md5 key</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-if)# ip ospf message-digest-key 16 md5 yourlpass	(Optional) Enables MDS authentication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>keyid</i>—An identifier from 1 to 255.</li> <li>• <i>key</i>—An alphanumeric password of up to 16 bytes.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>ip ospf database-filter all out</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-if)# ip ospf database-filter all out	(Optional) Block flooding of OSPF LSA packets to the interface. By default, OSPF floods new LSAs over all interfaces in the same area, except the interface on which the LSA arrives.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>show ip ospf interface [interface-name]</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ip ospf interface	Displays OSPF-related interface information.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>show ip ospf neighbor detail</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ip ospf neighbor detail	Displays NSF awareness status of neighbor switch. The output matches one of these examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Options is 0x52</i> <i>LLS Options is 0x1 (LR)</i> When both of these lines appear, the neighbor switch is NSF aware.</li> <li>• <i>Options is 0x42</i>—This means the neighbor switch is not NSF aware.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 15</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

# Configuring OSPF Area Parameters

## Before you begin



**Note** The OSPF **area** router configuration commands are all optional.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router ospf process-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>router ospf 109</b>	Enables OSPF routing, and enter router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>area area-id authentication</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>area 1 authentication</b>	(Optional) Allow password-based protection against unauthorized access to the identified area. The identifier can be either a decimal value or an IP address.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>area area-id authentication message-digest</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>area 1 authentication message-digest</b>	(Optional) Enables MD5 authentication on the area.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>area area-id stub [no-summary]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>area 1 stub</b>	(Optional) Define an area as a stub area. The <b>no-summary</b> keyword prevents an ABR from sending summary link advertisements into the stub area.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>area area-id nssa [no-redistribution] [default-information-originate] [no-summary]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>area 1 nssa default-information-originate</b>	(Optional) Defines an area as a not-so-stubby-area. Every router within the same area must agree that the area is NSSA. Select one of these keywords: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>no-redistribution</b>—Select when the router is an NSSA ABR and you want the <b>redistribute</b> command to import routes into normal areas, but not into the NSSA.</li> <li>• <b>default-information-originate</b>—Select on an ABR to allow importing type 7 LSAs into the NSSA.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>no-redistribution</b>—Select to not send summary LSAs into the NSSA.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>range</b> <i>address mask</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>area</b> 1 <b>range</b> 255.240.0.0	(Optional) Specifies an address range for which a single route is advertised. Use this command only with area border routers.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show ip ospf</b>	Displays information about the OSPF routing process in general or for a specific process ID to verify configuration.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> [ <i>area-id</i> ]] <b>database</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show ip ospf database</b>	Displays lists of information related to the OSPF database for a specific router.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring Other OSPF Parameters

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router ospf</b> <i>process-id</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>router ospf</b> 10	Enables OSPF routing, and enter router configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>summary-address</b> <i>address mask</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# summary-address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0</pre>	(Optional) Specifies an address and IP subnet mask for redistributed routes so that only one summary route is advertised.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>virtual-link</b> <i>router-id</i> [ <b>hello-interval</b> <i>seconds</i> ] [ <b>retransmit-interval</b> <i>seconds</i> ] [ <b>trans</b> [ <b>authentication-key</b> <i>key</i> ]   <b>message-digest-key</b> <i>keyid md5 key</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# area 2 virtual-link 192.168.255.1 hello-interval 5</pre>	(Optional) Establishes a virtual link and set its parameters.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>default-information originate</b> [ <b>always</b> ] [ <b>metric</b> <i>metric-value</i> ] [ <b>metric-type</b> <i>type-value</i> ] [ <b>route-map</b> <i>map-name</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# default-information originate metric 100 metric-type 1</pre>	(Optional) Forces the ASBR to generate a default route into the OSPF routing domain. Parameters are all optional.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>ip ospf name-lookup</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip ospf name-lookup</pre>	(Optional) Configures DNS name lookup. The default is disabled.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>ip auto-cost reference-bandwidth</b> <i>ref-bw</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip auto-cost reference-bandwidth 5</pre>	(Optional) Specifies an address range for which a single route will be advertised. Use this command only with area border routers.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>distance ospf</b> {[ <b>inter-area</b> <i>dist1</i> ] [ <b>inter-area</b> <i>dist2</i> ] [ <b>external</b> <i>dist3</i> ]} <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# distance ospf inter-area 150</pre>	(Optional) Changes the OSPF distance values. The default distance for each type of route is 110. The range is 1 to 255.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>passive-interface</b> <i>type number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# passive-interface gigabitethernet 1/0/6</pre>	(Optional) Suppresses the sending of hello packets through the specified interface.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>timers throttle spf</b> <i>spf-delay</i> <i>spf-holdtime</i> <i>spf-wait</i> <b>Example:</b>	(Optional) Configures route calculation timers.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config)# timers throttle spf 200 100 100</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>spf-delay</i>—Delay between receiving a change to SPF calculation. The range is from 1 to 600000 in milliseconds.</li> <li>• <i>spf-holdtime</i>—Delay between first and second SPF calculation. The range is from 1 to 600000 in milliseconds.</li> <li>• <i>spf-wait</i>—Maximum wait time in milliseconds for SPF calculations. The range is from 1 to 600000 in milliseconds.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>ospf log-adj-changes</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ospf log-adj-changes</pre>	(Optional) Sends syslog message when a neighbor state changes.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>show ip ospf [process-id [area-id]] database</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip ospf database</pre>	Displays lists of information related to the OSPF database for a specific router.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Changing LSA Group Pacing

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router ospf process-id</b> <b>Example:</b>	Enables OSPF routing, and enter router configuration mode.



	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# router ospf 25	
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>timers lsa-group-pacing <i>seconds</i></b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# timers lsa-group-pacing 15	Changes the group pacing of LSAs.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# show running-config	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring a Loopback Interface

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>interface loopback 0</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# interface loopback 0	Creates a loopback interface, and enter interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip address address mask</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.5 255.255.240.0	Assign an IP address to this interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show ip interface</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip interface</pre>	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Monitoring OSPF

You can display specific statistics such as the contents of IP routing tables, caches, and databases.

**Table 12: Show IP OSPF Statistics Commands**

<b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id]	Displays general information about OSPF processes.
<b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] <b>database</b> [router] [link-state-id] <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] <b>database</b> [router] [self-originate] <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] <b>database</b> [router] [adv-router [ip-address]] <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] <b>database</b> [network] [link-state-id] <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] <b>database</b> [summary] [link-state-id] <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] <b>database</b> [asbr-summary] [link-state-id] <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] <b>database</b> [external] [link-state-id] <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id area-id] <b>database</b> [database-summary]	Displays lists of information about OSPF databases.
<b>show ip ospf border-routes</b>	Displays the internal OSPF border route entries.
<b>show ip ospf interface</b> [interface-name]	Displays OSPF-related information for the interface.
<b>show ip ospf neighbor</b> [interface-name] [neighbor-id] <b>detail</b>	Displays OSPF neighbor information.
<b>show ip ospf virtual-links</b>	Displays OSPF-related information for virtual links.

# Configuration Examples for OSPF

## Example: Configuring Basic OSPF Parameters

This example shows how to configure an OSPF routing process and assign it a process number of 109:

```
Device(config)# router ospf 109
Device(config-router)# network 131.108.0.0 255.255.255.0 area 24
```





## CHAPTER 6

# Configuring EIGRP

- [Information About EIGRP, on page 107](#)
- [How to Configure EIGRP, on page 110](#)
- [Monitoring and Maintaining EIGRP, on page 117](#)

## Information About EIGRP

Enhanced IGRP (EIGRP) is a Cisco proprietary enhanced version of the IGRP. EIGRP uses the same distance vector algorithm and distance information as IGRP; however, the convergence properties and the operating efficiency of EIGRP are significantly improved.

The convergence technology employs an algorithm referred to as the Diffusing Update Algorithm (DUAL), which guarantees loop-free operation at every instant throughout a route computation and allows all devices involved in a topology change to synchronize at the same time. Routers that are not affected by topology changes are not involved in recomputations.

IP EIGRP provides increased network width. With RIP, the largest possible width of your network is 15 hops. Because the EIGRP metric is large enough to support thousands of hops, the only barrier to expanding the network is the transport-layer hop counter. EIGRP increments the transport control field only when an IP packet has traversed 15 routers and the next hop to the destination was learned through EIGRP. When a RIP route is used as the next hop to the destination, the transport control field is incremented as usual.

## EIGRP Features

EIGRP offers these features:

- Fast convergence.
- Incremental updates when the state of a destination changes, instead of sending the entire contents of the routing table, minimizing the bandwidth required for EIGRP packets.
- Less CPU usage because full update packets need not be processed each time they are received.
- Protocol-independent neighbor discovery mechanism to learn about neighboring routers.
- Variable-length subnet masks (VLSMs).
- Arbitrary route summarization.
- EIGRP scales to large networks.

## EIGRP Components

EIGRP has these four basic components:

- Neighbor discovery and recovery is the process that routers use to dynamically learn of other routers on their directly attached networks. Routers must also discover when their neighbors become unreachable or inoperative. Neighbor discovery and recovery is achieved with low overhead by periodically sending small hello packets. As long as hello packets are received, the Cisco IOS software can learn that a neighbor is alive and functioning. When this status is determined, the neighboring routers can exchange routing information.
- The reliable transport protocol is responsible for guaranteed, ordered delivery of EIGRP packets to all neighbors. It supports intermixed transmission of multicast and unicast packets. Some EIGRP packets must be sent reliably, and others need not be. For efficiency, reliability is provided only when necessary. For example, on a multiaccess network that has multicast capabilities (such as Ethernet), it is not necessary to send hellos reliably to all neighbors individually. Therefore, EIGRP sends a single multicast hello with an indication in the packet informing the receivers that the packet need not be acknowledged. Other types of packets (such as updates) require acknowledgment, which is shown in the packet. The reliable transport has a provision to send multicast packets quickly when there are unacknowledged packets pending. Doing so helps ensure that convergence time remains low in the presence of varying speed links.
- The DUAL finite state machine embodies the decision process for all route computations. It tracks all routes advertised by all neighbors. DUAL uses the distance information (known as a metric) to select efficient, loop-free paths. DUAL selects routes to be inserted into a routing table based on feasible successors. A successor is a neighboring router used for packet forwarding that has a least-cost path to a destination that is guaranteed not to be part of a routing loop. When there are no feasible successors, but there are neighbors advertising the destination, a recomputation must occur. This is the process whereby a new successor is determined. The amount of time it takes to recompute the route affects the convergence time. Recomputation is processor-intensive; it is advantageous to avoid recomputation if it is not necessary. When a topology change occurs, DUAL tests for feasible successors. If there are feasible successors, it uses any it finds to avoid unnecessary recomputation.
- The protocol-dependent modules are responsible for network layer protocol-specific tasks. An example is the IP EIGRP module, which is responsible for sending and receiving EIGRP packets that are encapsulated in IP. It is also responsible for parsing EIGRP packets and informing DUAL of the new information received. EIGRP asks DUAL to make routing decisions, but the results are stored in the IP routing table. EIGRP is also responsible for redistributing routes learned by other IP routing protocols.



---

**Note** To enable EIGRP, the Device or active switch must be running the Network Advantage license.

---

## EIGRP Nonstop Forwarding

The Device supports two levels of EIGRP nonstop forwarding:

- EIGRP NSF Awareness
- EIGRP NSF Capability

## EIGRP NSF Awareness

The Network Advantage license supports EIGRP NSF Awareness for IPv4. When the neighboring router is NSF-capable, the Layer 3 Device continues to forward packets from the neighboring router during the interval between the primary Route Processor (RP) in a router failing and the backup RP taking over, or while the primary RP is manually reloaded for a nondisruptive software upgrade.

This feature cannot be disabled. For more information on this feature, see the “EIGRP Nonstop Forwarding (NSF) Awareness” section of the *Cisco IOS IP Routing Protocols Configuration Guide, Release 12.4*.

## EIGRP NSF Capability

The Network Advantage license supports EIGRP Cisco NSF routing to speed up convergence and to eliminate traffic loss after a stack's active switch changeover.

The Network Advantage license also supports EIGRP NSF-capable routing for IPv4 for better convergence and lower traffic loss following an active switch changeover. When an EIGRP NSF-capable active switch restarts or a new active switch starts up and NSF restarts, the Device has no neighbors, and the topology table is empty. The Device must bring up the interfaces, reacquire neighbors, and rebuild the topology and routing tables without interrupting the traffic directed toward the Device stack. EIGRP peer routers maintain the routes learned from the new active switch and continue forwarding traffic through the NSF restart process.

To prevent an adjacency reset by the neighbors, the new active switch uses a new Restart (RS) bit in the EIGRP packet header to show the restart. When the neighbor receives this, it synchronizes the stack in its peer list and maintains the adjacency with the stack. The neighbor then sends its topology table to the active switch with the RS bit set to show that it is NSF-aware and is aiding the new active switch.

If at least one of the stack peer neighbors is NSF-aware, the active switch receives updates and rebuilds its database. Each NSF-aware neighbor sends an end of table (EOT) marker in the last update packet to mark the end of the table content. The active switch recognizes the convergence when it receives the EOT marker, and it then begins sending updates. When the active switch has received all EOT markers from its neighbors or when the NSF converge timer expires, EIGRP notifies the routing information database (RIB) of convergence and floods its topology table to all NSF-aware peers.

## EIGRP Stub Routing

The EIGRP stub routing feature reduces resource utilization by moving routed traffic closer to the end user.



**Note** The EIGRP stub routing capability advertises connected or summary routes from the routing tables to other device in the network. The device uses EIGRP stub routing at the access layer to eliminate the need for other types of routing advertisements. On a device running the Network Essentials license, if you try to configure multi-VRF-CE and EIGRP stub routing at the same time, the configuration is not allowed. IPv6 EIGRP stub routing is not supported with the Network Essentials license.

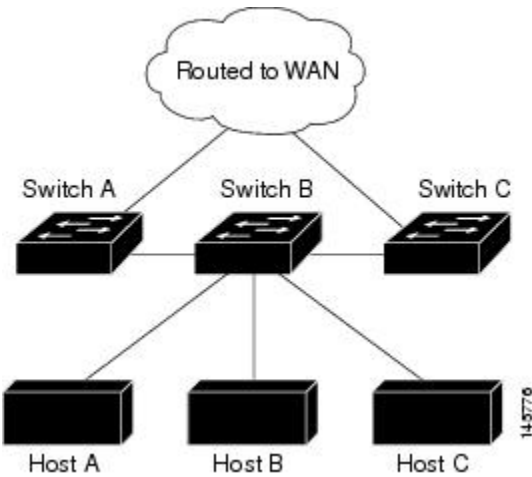
In a network using EIGRP stub routing, the only allowable route for IP traffic to the user is through a device that is configured with EIGRP stub routing. The device sends the routed traffic to interfaces that are configured as user interfaces or are connected to other devices.

When using EIGRP stub routing, you need to configure the distribution and remote routers to use EIGRP and to configure only the device as a stub. Only specified routes are propagated from the device. The device responds to all queries for summaries, connected routes, and routing updates.

Any neighbor that receives a packet informing it of the stub status does not query the stub router for any routes, and a router that has a stub peer does not query that peer. The stub router depends on the distribution router to send the proper updates to all peers.

In the figure given below, device B is configured as an EIGRP stub router. Devices A and C are connected to the rest of the WAN. Device B advertises connected, static, redistribution, and summary routes to Device A and C. Device B does not advertise any routes learned from Device A (and the reverse).

Figure 5: EIGRP Stub Router Configuration



For more information about EIGRP stub routing, see “Configuring EIGRP Stub Routing” section of the *Cisco IOS IP Configuration Guide, Volume 2 of 3: Routing Protocols*.

# How to Configure EIGRP

To create an EIGRP routing process, you must enable EIGRP and associate networks. EIGRP sends updates to the interfaces in the specified networks. If you do not specify an interface network, it is not advertised in any EIGRP update.



**Note** If you have routers on your network that are configured for IGRP, and you want to change to EIGRP, you must designate transition routers that have both IGRP and EIGRP configured. In these cases, perform Steps 1 through 3 in the next section and also see the “Configuring Split Horizon” section. You must use the same AS number for routes to be automatically redistributed.

## Default EIGRP Configuration

Table 13: Default EIGRP Configuration

Feature	Default Setting
Auto summary	Disabled.



Feature	Default Setting
Default-information	Exterior routes are accepted and default information is passed between processes when doing redistribution.
Default metric	Only connected routes and interface static routes can be redistributed with default metric. The metric includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bandwidth: 0 or greater kb/s.</li> <li>• Delay (tens of microseconds): 0 or any positive number that is greater than 39.1 nanoseconds.</li> <li>• Reliability: any number between 0 and 255 (255 means 100 percent reliability).</li> <li>• Loading: effective bandwidth as a number between 0 and 255 (255 means 100 percent loading).</li> <li>• MTU: maximum transmission unit size of the route in bytes. 0 or any positive integer.</li> </ul>
Distance	Internal distance: 90. External distance: 170.
EIGRP log-neighbor changes	Disabled. No adjacency changes logged.
IP authentication key-chain	No authentication provided.
IP authentication mode	No authentication provided.
IP bandwidth-percent	50 percent.
IP hello interval	For low-speed nonbroadcast multiaccess (NBMA) networks: 60 seconds. For all other networks: 5 seconds.
IP hold-time	For low-speed NBMA networks: 180 seconds; all other networks: 10 seconds.
IP split-horizon	Enabled.
IP summary address	No summary aggregate addresses are predefined.
Metric weights	tos: 0; k1 and k3: 1; k2, k4, and k5: 0
Network	None specified.
Nonstop Forwarding (NSF) Awareness	Enabled for IPv4 on switches running the Network Advantage license. Layer 3 switches to continue forwarding packets from a neighboring router during hardware or software changes.
NSF capability	Disabled.  <b>Note</b> The Device supports EIGRP NSF-capable routing for IPv4.
Offset-list	Disabled.

Feature	Default Setting
Router EIGRP	Disabled.
Set metric	No metric set in the route map.
Traffic-share	Distributed proportionately to the ratios of the metrics.
Variance	1 (equal-cost load-balancing).

## Configuring Basic EIGRP Parameters

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router eigrp</b> autonomous-system <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>router eigrp 10</b>	Enables an EIGRP routing process, and enter router configuration mode. The AS number identifies the routes to other EIGRP routers and is used to tag routing information.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>nsf</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>nsf</b>	(Optional) Enables EIGRP NSF. Enter this command on the active switch and on all of its peers.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>network</b> network-number <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>network 192.168.0.0</b>	Associate networks with an EIGRP routing process. EIGRP sends updates to the interfaces in the specified networks.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>eigrp log-neighbor-changes</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>eigrp log-neighbor-changes</b>	(Optional) Enables logging of EIGRP neighbor changes to monitor routing system stability.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>metric weights</b> <i>tos k1 k2 k3 k4 k5</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>metric weights 0 2 0 2 0 0</b>	(Optional) Adjust the EIGRP metric. Although the defaults have been carefully set to provide excellent operation in most networks, you can adjust them.  <b>Caution</b> Setting metrics is complex and is not recommended without guidance from an experienced network designer.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>offset-list</b> [ <i>access-list number   name</i> ] { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> } <i>offset</i> [ <i>type number</i> ] <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>offset-list 21 out 10</b>	(Optional) Applies an offset list to routing metrics to increase incoming and outgoing metrics to routes learned through EIGRP. You can limit the offset list with an access list or an interface.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>auto-summary</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>auto-summary</b>	(Optional) Enables automatic summarization of subnet routes into network-level routes.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>ip summary-address eigrp</b> <i>autonomous-system-number address mask</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip summary-address eigrp 1 192.168.0.0 255.255.0.0</b>	(Optional) Configures a summary aggregate.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>show ip protocols</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show ip protocols</b>	Verifies your entries. For NSF awareness, the output shows: *** IP Routing is NSF aware *** EIGRP NSF enabled
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring EIGRP Interfaces

Other optional EIGRP parameters can be configured on an interface basis.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip bandwidth-percent eigrp percent</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip bandwidth-percent eigrp 60</b>	(Optional) Configures the percentage of bandwidth that can be used by EIGRP on an interface. The default is 50 percent.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip summary-address eigrp autonomous-system-number address mask</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip summary-address eigrp 109 192.161.0.0 255.255.0.0</b>	(Optional) Configures a summary aggregate address for a specified interface (not usually necessary if auto-summary is enabled).
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip hello-interval eigrp autonomous-system-number seconds</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip hello-interval eigrp 109 10</b>	(Optional) Change the hello time interval for an EIGRP routing process. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds. The default is 60 seconds for low-speed NBMA networks and 5 seconds for all other networks.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>ip hold-time eigrp autonomous-system-number seconds</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip hold-time eigrp 109 40</b>	(Optional) Change the hold time interval for an EIGRP routing process. The range is 1 to 65535 seconds. The default is 180 seconds for low-speed NBMA networks and 15 seconds for all other networks.  <b>Caution</b> Do not adjust the hold time without consulting Cisco technical support.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>no ip split-horizon eigrp autonomous-system-number</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>no ip split-horizon eigrp 109</b>	(Optional) Disables split horizon to allow route information to be advertised by a router out any interface from which that information originated.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# <b>end</b>	
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show ip eigrp interface</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip eigrp interface	Displays which interfaces EIGRP is active on and information about EIGRP relating to those interfaces.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring EIGRP Route Authentication

EIGRP route authentication provides MD5 authentication of routing updates from the EIGRP routing protocol to prevent the introduction of unauthorized or false routing messages from unapproved sources.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip authentication mode eigrp autonomous-system md5</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# ip authentication mode eigrp 104 md5	Enables MD5 authentication in IP EIGRP packets.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip authentication key-chain eigrp autonomous-system key-chain</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# ip authentication key-chain eigrp 105 chain1	Enables authentication of IP EIGRP packets.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# exit</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>key chain</b> <i>name-of-chain</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# key chain chain1</pre>	Identify a key chain and enter key-chain configuration mode. Match the name configured in Step 4.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>key number</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-keychain)# key 1</pre>	In key-chain configuration mode, identify the key number.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>key-string</b> <i>text</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-keychain-key)# key-string key1</pre>	In key-chain key configuration mode, identify the key string.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>accept-lifetime</b> <i>start-time</i> { <b>infinite</b>   <i>end-time</i>   <b>duration</b> <i>seconds</i> } <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-keychain-key)# accept-lifetime 13:30:00 Jan 25 2011 duration 7200</pre>	(Optional) Specifies the time period during which the key can be received.  The <i>start-time</i> and <i>end-time</i> syntax can be either <i>hh:mm:ss Month date year</i> or <i>hh:mm:ss date Month year</i> . The default is forever with the default <i>start-time</i> and the earliest acceptable date as January 1, 1993. The default <i>end-time</i> and <b>duration</b> is <b>infinite</b> .
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>send-lifetime</b> <i>start-time</i> { <b>infinite</b>   <i>end-time</i>   <b>duration</b> <i>seconds</i> } <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-keychain-key)# send-lifetime 14:00:00 Jan 25 2011 duration 3600</pre>	(Optional) Specifies the time period during which the key can be sent.  The <i>start-time</i> and <i>end-time</i> syntax can be either <i>hh:mm:ss Month date year</i> or <i>hh:mm:ss date Month year</i> . The default is forever with the default <i>start-time</i> and the earliest acceptable date as January 1, 1993. The default <i>end-time</i> and <b>duration</b> is <b>infinite</b> .
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>show key chain</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show key chain</pre>	Displays authentication key information.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Monitoring and Maintaining EIGRP

You can delete neighbors from the neighbor table. You can also display various EIGRP routing statistics. The table given below lists the privileged EXEC commands for deleting neighbors and displaying statistics. For explanations of fields in the resulting display, see the *Cisco IOS IP Command Reference, Volume 2 of 3: Routing Protocols, Release 12.4*.

**Table 14: IP EIGRP Clear and Show Commands**

<b>clear ip eigrp neighbors</b> [ <i>if-address</i>   <i>interface</i> ]	Deletes neighbors from the neighbor table.
<b>show ip eigrp interface</b> [ <i>interface</i> ] [ <i>as number</i> ]	Displays information about interfaces participating in EIGRP.
<b>show ip eigrp neighbors</b> [ <i>type-number</i> ]	Displays EIGRP discovered neighbors.
<b>show ip eigrp topology</b> [ <i>autonomous-system-number</i> ]   [[ <i>ip-address</i> ] <i>mask</i> ]	Displays the EIGRP topology table.
<b>show ip eigrp traffic</b> [ <i>autonomous-system-number</i> ]	Displays the number of packets sent and received by the EIGRP process.







## CHAPTER 7

# Configuring BGP

- [Restrictions for BGP, on page 119](#)
- [Information About BGP, on page 119](#)
- [How to Configure BGP, on page 126](#)
- [Monitoring and Maintaining BGP, on page 147](#)

## Restrictions for BGP

The BGP hold time must always be configured higher than the Graceful Restart hold time on a device, even with Graceful Restart disabled. A peer device with an unsupported hold time can establish a session with a device through an open message, but once Graceful Restart is enabled the session will flap.

## Information About BGP

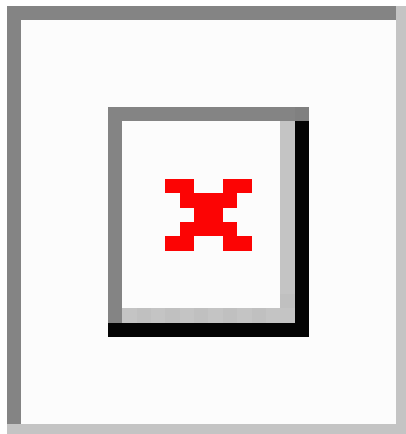
The Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) is an exterior gateway protocol used to set up an interdomain routing system that guarantees the loop-free exchange of routing information between autonomous systems. Autonomous systems are made up of routers that operate under the same administration and that run Interior Gateway Protocols (IGPs), such as RIP or OSPF, within their boundaries and that interconnect by using an Exterior Gateway Protocol (EGP). BGP Version 4 is the standard EGP for interdomain routing in the Internet. The protocol is defined in RFCs 1163, 1267, and 1771. You can find detailed information about BGP in *Internet Routing Architectures*, published by Cisco Press, and in the “Configuring BGP” chapter in the *Cisco IP and IP Routing Configuration Guide*.

For details about BGP commands and keywords, see the “IP Routing Protocols” part of the *Cisco IOS IP Command Reference, Volume 2 of 3: Routing Protocols*.

## BGP Network Topology

Routers that belong to the same autonomous system (AS) and that exchange BGP updates run internal BGP (IBGP), and routers that belong to different autonomous systems and that exchange BGP updates run external BGP (EBGP). Most configuration commands are the same for configuring EBGP and IBGP. The difference is that the routing updates are exchanged either between autonomous systems (EBGP) or within an AS (IBGP). The figure given below shows a network that is running both EBGP and IBGP.

**Figure 6: EBGP, IBGP, and Multiple Autonomous Systems**



Before exchanging information with an external AS, BGP ensures that networks within the AS can be reached by defining internal BGP peering among routers within the AS and by redistributing BGP routing information to IGP that run within the AS, such as IGRP and OSPF.

Routers that run a BGP routing process are often referred to as BGP speakers. BGP uses the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) as its transport protocol (specifically port 179). Two BGP speakers that have a TCP connection to each other for exchanging routing information are known as peers or neighbors. In the above figure, Routers A and B are BGP peers, as are Routers B and C and Routers C and D. The routing information is a series of AS numbers that describe the full path to the destination network. BGP uses this information to construct a loop-free map of autonomous systems.

The network has these characteristics:

- Routers A and B are running EBGP, and Routers B and C are running IBGP. Note that the EBGP peers are directly connected and that the IBGP peers are not. As long as there is an IGP running that allows the two neighbors to reach one another, IBGP peers do not have to be directly connected.
- All BGP speakers within an AS must establish a peer relationship with each other. That is, the BGP speakers within an AS must be fully meshed logically. BGP4 provides two techniques that reduce the requirement for a logical full mesh: confederations and route reflectors.
- AS 200 is a transit AS for AS 100 and AS 300—that is, AS 200 is used to transfer packets between AS 100 and AS 300.

BGP peers initially exchange their full BGP routing tables and then send only incremental updates. BGP peers also exchange keepalive messages (to ensure that the connection is up) and notification messages (in response to errors or special conditions).

In BGP, each route consists of a network number, a list of autonomous systems that information has passed through (the autonomous system path), and a list of other path attributes. The primary function of a BGP system is to exchange network reachability information, including information about the list of AS paths, with other BGP systems. This information can be used to determine AS connectivity, to prune routing loops, and to enforce AS-level policy decisions.

A router or Device running Cisco IOS does not select or use an IBGP route unless it has a route available to the next-hop router and it has received synchronization from an IGP (unless IGP synchronization is disabled). When multiple routes are available, BGP bases its path selection on attribute values. See the “Configuring BGP Decision Attributes” section for information about BGP attributes.

BGP Version 4 supports classless interdomain routing (CIDR) so you can reduce the size of your routing tables by creating aggregate routes, resulting in supernets. CIDR eliminates the concept of network classes within BGP and supports the advertising of IP prefixes.

## Nonstop Forwarding Awareness

The BGP NSF Awareness feature is supported for IPv4 in the Network Advantage license.. To enable this feature with BGP routing, you need to enable Graceful Restart. When the neighboring router is NSF-capable, and this feature is enabled, the Layer 3 Device continues to forward packets from the neighboring router during the interval between the primary Route Processor (RP) in a router failing and the backup RP taking over, or while the primary RP is manually reloaded for a nondisruptive software upgrade.

For more information, see the “BGP Nonstop Forwarding (NSF) Awareness” section of the *Cisco IOS IP Routing Protocols Configuration Guide, Release 12.4*.

## Information About BGP Routing

To enable BGP routing, you establish a BGP routing process and define the local network. Because BGP must completely recognize the relationships with its neighbors, you must also specify a BGP neighbor.

BGP supports two kinds of neighbors: internal and external. Internal neighbors are in the same AS; external neighbors are in different autonomous systems. External neighbors are usually adjacent to each other and share a subnet, but internal neighbors can be anywhere in the same AS.

The switch supports the use of private AS numbers, usually assigned by service providers and given to systems whose routes are not advertised to external neighbors. The private AS numbers are from 64512 to 65535. You can configure external neighbors to remove private AS numbers from the AS path by using the **neighbor remove-private-as** router configuration command. Then when an update is passed to an external neighbor, if the AS path includes private AS numbers, these numbers are dropped.

If your AS will be passing traffic through it from another AS to a third AS, it is important to be consistent about the routes it advertises. If BGP advertised a route before all routers in the network had learned about the route through the IGP, the AS might receive traffic that some routers could not yet route. To prevent this from happening, BGP must wait until the IGP has propagated information across the AS so that BGP is synchronized with the IGP. Synchronization is enabled by default. If your AS does not pass traffic from one AS to another AS, or if all routers in your autonomous systems are running BGP, you can disable synchronization, which allows your network to carry fewer routes in the IGP and allows BGP to converge more quickly.

## Routing Policy Changes

Routing policies for a peer include all the configurations that might affect inbound or outbound routing table updates. When you have defined two routers as BGP neighbors, they form a BGP connection and exchange routing information. If you later change a BGP filter, weight, distance, version, or timer, or make a similar configuration change, you must reset the BGP sessions so that the configuration changes take effect.

There are two types of reset, hard reset and soft reset. Cisco IOS Releases 12.1 and later support a soft reset without any prior configuration. To use a soft reset without preconfiguration, both BGP peers must support the soft route refresh capability, which is advertised in the OPEN message sent when the peers establish a TCP session. A soft reset allows the dynamic exchange of route refresh requests and routing information between BGP routers and the subsequent re-advertisement of the respective outbound routing table.

- When soft reset generates inbound updates from a neighbor, it is called dynamic inbound soft reset.
- When soft reset sends a set of updates to a neighbor, it is called outbound soft reset.

A soft inbound reset causes the new inbound policy to take effect. A soft outbound reset causes the new local outbound policy to take effect without resetting the BGP session. As a new set of updates is sent during outbound policy reset, a new inbound policy can also take effect.

The table given below lists the advantages and disadvantages hard reset and soft reset.

**Table 15: Advantages and Disadvantages of Hard and Soft Resets**

Type of Reset	Advantages	Disadvantages
Hard reset	No memory overhead	The prefixes in the BGP, IP, and FIB tables provided by the neighbor are lost. Not recommended.
Outbound soft reset	No configuration, no storing of routing table updates	Does not reset inbound routing table updates
Dynamic inbound soft reset	Does not clear the BGP session and cache Does not require storing of routing table updates and has no memory overhead	Both BGP routers must support the soft reset capability (in Cisco IOS Release 12.1 and later)

## BGP Decision Attributes

When a BGP speaker receives updates from multiple autonomous systems that describe different paths to the same destination, it must choose the single best path for reaching that destination. When chosen, the selected path is entered into the BGP routing table and propagated to its neighbors. The decision is based on the value of attributes that the update contains and other BGP-configurable factors.

When a BGP peer learns two EBGP paths for a prefix from a neighboring AS, it chooses the best path and inserts that path in the IP routing table. If BGP multipath support is enabled and the EBGP paths are learned from the same neighboring autonomous systems, instead of a single best path, multiple paths are installed in the IP routing table. Then, during packet switching, per-packet or per-destination load-balancing is performed among the multiple paths. The **maximum-paths** router configuration command controls the number of paths allowed.

These factors summarize the order in which BGP evaluates the attributes for choosing the best path:

1. If the path specifies a next hop that is inaccessible, drop the update. The BGP next-hop attribute, automatically determined by the software, is the IP address of the next hop that is going to be used to reach a destination. For EBGP, this is usually the IP address of the neighbor specified by the **neighbor remote-as router** configuration command. You can disable next-hop processing by using route maps or the **neighbor next-hop-self** router configuration command.
2. Prefer the path with the largest weight (a Cisco proprietary parameter). The weight attribute is local to the router and not propagated in routing updates. By default, the weight attribute is 32768 for paths that the router originates and zero for other paths. Routes with the largest weight are preferred. You can use access lists, route maps, or the **neighbor weight** router configuration command to set weights.
3. Prefer the route with the highest local preference. Local preference is part of the routing update and exchanged among routers in the same AS. The default value of the local preference attribute is 100.

You can set local preference by using the **bgp default local-preference** router configuration command or by using a route map.

4. Prefer the route that was originated by BGP running on the local router.
5. Prefer the route with the shortest AS path.
6. Prefer the route with the lowest origin type. An interior route or IGP is lower than a route learned by EGP, and an EGP-learned route is lower than one of unknown origin or learned in another way.
7. Prefer the route with the lowest multi-exit discriminator (MED) metric attribute if the neighboring AS is the same for all routes considered. You can configure the MED by using route maps or by using the **default-metric** router configuration command. When an update is sent to an IBGP peer, the MED is included.
8. Prefer the external (EBGP) path over the internal (IBGP) path.
9. Prefer the route that can be reached through the closest IGP neighbor (the lowest IGP metric). This means that the router will prefer the shortest internal path within the AS to reach the destination (the shortest path to the BGP next-hop).
10. If the following conditions are all true, insert the route for this path into the IP routing table:
  - Both the best route and this route are external.
  - Both the best route and this route are from the same neighboring autonomous system.
  - Maximum-paths is enabled.
11. If multipath is not enabled, prefer the route with the lowest IP address value for the BGP router ID. The router ID is usually the highest IP address on the router or the loopback (virtual) address, but might be implementation-specific.

## Route Maps

Within BGP, route maps can be used to control and to modify routing information and to define the conditions by which routes are redistributed between routing domains. See the “Using Route Maps to Redistribute Routing Information” section for more information about route maps. Each route map has a name that identifies the route map (*map tag*) and an optional sequence number.

## BGP Filtering

You can filter BGP advertisements by using AS-path filters, such as the **as-path access-list** global configuration command and the **neighbor filter-list** router configuration command. You can also use access lists with the **neighbor distribute-list** router configuration command. Distribute-list filters are applied to network numbers. See the “Controlling Advertising and Processing in Routing Updates” section for information about the **distribute-list** command.

You can use route maps on a per-neighbor basis to filter updates and to modify various attributes. A route map can be applied to either inbound or outbound updates. Only the routes that pass the route map are sent or accepted in updates. On both inbound and outbound updates, matching is supported based on AS path, community, and network numbers. Autonomous system path matching requires the **match as-path access-list** route-map command, community based matching requires the **match community-list** route-map command, and network-based matching requires the **ip access-list** global configuration command.

## Prefix List for BGP Filtering

You can use prefix lists as an alternative to access lists in many BGP route filtering commands, including the **neighbor distribute-list** router configuration command. The advantages of using prefix lists include performance improvements in loading and lookup of large lists, incremental update support, easier CLI configuration, and greater flexibility.

Filtering by a prefix list involves matching the prefixes of routes with those listed in the prefix list, as when matching access lists. When there is a match, the route is used. Whether a prefix is permitted or denied is based upon these rules:

- An empty prefix list permits all prefixes.
- An implicit deny is assumed if a given prefix does not match any entries in a prefix list.
- When multiple entries of a prefix list match a given prefix, the sequence number of a prefix list entry identifies the entry with the lowest sequence number.

By default, sequence numbers are generated automatically and incremented in units of five. If you disable the automatic generation of sequence numbers, you must specify the sequence number for each entry. You can specify sequence values in any increment. If you specify increments of one, you cannot insert additional entries into the list; if you choose very large increments, you might run out of values.

## BGP Community Filtering

One way that BGP controls the distribution of routing information based on the value of the COMMUNITIES attribute. The attribute is a way to group destinations into communities and to apply routing decisions based on the communities. This method simplifies configuration of a BGP speaker to control distribution of routing information.

A community is a group of destinations that share some common attribute. Each destination can belong to multiple communities. AS administrators can define to which communities a destination belongs. By default, all destinations belong to the general Internet community. The community is identified by the COMMUNITIES attribute, an optional, transitive, global attribute in the numerical range from 1 to 4294967200. These are some predefined, well-known communities:

- **internet**—Advertise this route to the Internet community. All routers belong to it.
- **no-export**—Do not advertise this route to EBGp peers.
- **no-advertise**—Do not advertise this route to any peer (internal or external).
- **local-as**—Do not advertise this route to peers outside the local autonomous system.

Based on the community, you can control which routing information to accept, prefer, or distribute to other neighbors. A BGP speaker can set, append, or modify the community of a route when learning, advertising, or redistributing routes. When routes are aggregated, the resulting aggregate has a COMMUNITIES attribute that contains all communities from all the initial routes.

You can use community lists to create groups of communities to use in a match clause of a route map. As with an access list, a series of community lists can be created. Statements are checked until a match is found. As soon as one statement is satisfied, the test is concluded.

To set the COMMUNITIES attribute and match clauses based on communities, see the **match community-list** and **set community** route-map configuration commands in the “Using Route Maps to Redistribute Routing Information” section.

## BGP Neighbors and Peer Groups

Often many BGP neighbors are configured with the same update policies (that is, the same outbound route maps, distribute lists, filter lists, update source, and so on). Neighbors with the same update policies can be grouped into peer groups to simplify configuration and to make updating more efficient. When you have configured many peers, we recommend this approach.

To configure a BGP peer group, you create the peer group, assign options to the peer group, and add neighbors as peer group members. You configure the peer group by using the **neighbor** router configuration commands. By default, peer group members inherit all the configuration options of the peer group, including the remote-as (if configured), version, update-source, out-route-map, out-filter-list, out-dist-list, minimum-advertisement-interval, and next-hop-self. All peer group members also inherit changes made to the peer group. Members can also be configured to override the options that do not affect outbound updates.

## Aggregate Routes

Classless interdomain routing (CIDR) enables you to create aggregate routes (or supernets) to minimize the size of routing tables. You can configure aggregate routes in BGP either by redistributing an aggregate route into BGP or by creating an aggregate entry in the BGP routing table. An aggregate address is added to the BGP table when there is at least one more specific entry in the BGP table.

## Routing Domain Confederations

One way to reduce the IBGP mesh is to divide an autonomous system into multiple subautonomous systems and to group them into a single confederation that appears as a single autonomous system. Each autonomous system is fully meshed within itself and has a few connections to other autonomous systems in the same confederation. Even though the peers in different autonomous systems have EBGp sessions, they exchange routing information as if they were IBGP peers. Specifically, the next hop, MED, and local preference information is preserved. You can then use a single IGP for all of the autonomous systems.

## BGP Route Reflectors

BGP requires that all of the IBGP speakers be fully meshed. When a router receives a route from an external neighbor, it must advertise it to all internal neighbors. To prevent a routing information loop, all IBGP speakers must be connected. The internal neighbors do not send routes learned from internal neighbors to other internal neighbors.

With route reflectors, all IBGP speakers need not be fully meshed because another method is used to pass learned routes to neighbors. When you configure an internal BGP peer to be a route reflector, it is responsible for passing IBGP learned routes to a set of IBGP neighbors. The internal peers of the route reflector are divided into two groups: client peers and nonclient peers (all the other routers in the autonomous system). A route reflector reflects routes between these two groups. The route reflector and its client peers form a cluster. The nonclient peers must be fully meshed with each other, but the client peers need not be fully meshed. The clients in the cluster do not communicate with IBGP speakers outside their cluster.

When the route reflector receives an advertised route, it takes one of these actions, depending on the neighbor:

- A route from an external BGP speaker is advertised to all clients and nonclient peers.
- A route from a nonclient peer is advertised to all clients.
- A route from a client is advertised to all clients and nonclient peers. Hence, the clients need not be fully meshed.

Usually a cluster of clients have a single route reflector, and the cluster is identified by the route reflector router ID. To increase redundancy and to avoid a single point of failure, a cluster might have more than one route reflector. In this case, all route reflectors in the cluster must be configured with the same 4-byte cluster ID so that a route reflector can recognize updates from route reflectors in the same cluster. All the route reflectors serving a cluster should be fully meshed and should have identical sets of client and nonclient peers.

## Route Dampening

Route flap dampening is a BGP feature designed to minimize the propagation of flapping routes across an internetwork. A route is considered to be flapping when it is repeatedly available, then unavailable, then available, then unavailable, and so on. When route dampening is enabled, a numeric penalty value is assigned to a route when it flaps. When a route's accumulated penalties reach a configurable limit, BGP suppresses advertisements of the route, even if the route is running. The reuse limit is a configurable value that is compared with the penalty. If the penalty is less than the reuse limit, a suppressed route that is up is advertised again.

Dampening is not applied to routes that are learned by IBGP. This policy prevents the IBGP peers from having a higher penalty for routes external to the AS.

## More BGP Information

For detailed descriptions of BGP configuration, see the “Configuring BGP” chapter in the “IP Routing Protocols” part of the *Cisco IOS IP Configuration Guide, Release 12.4*. For details about specific commands, see the *Cisco IOS IP Command Reference, Volume 2 of 3: Routing Protocols, Release 12.4*.

# How to Configure BGP

## Default BGP Configuration

The table given below shows the basic default BGP configuration. For the defaults for all characteristics, see the specific commands in the *Cisco IOS IP Command Reference, Volume 2 of 3: Routing Protocols, Release 12.4*.

**Table 16: Default BGP Configuration**

Feature	Default Setting
Aggregate address	Disabled: None defined.
AS path access list	None defined.
Auto summary	Disabled.



Feature	Default Setting
Best path	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The router considers <i>as-path</i> in choosing a route and does not compare scores from external BGP peers.</li> <li>Compare router ID: Disabled.</li> </ul>
BGP community list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number: None defined. When you permit a value for the community number, the default is an implicit deny for everything else that has not been permitted.</li> <li>Format: Cisco default format (32-bit number).</li> </ul>
BGP confederation identifier/peers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identifier: None configured.</li> <li>Peers: None identified.</li> </ul>
BGP Fast external fallover	Enabled.
BGP local preference	100. The range is 0 to 4294967295 with the higher value preferred.
BGP network	None specified; no backdoor route advertised.
BGP route dampening	Disabled by default. When enabled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Half-life is 15 minutes.</li> <li>Re-use is 750 (10-second increments).</li> <li>Suppress is 2000 (10-second increments).</li> <li>Max-suppress-time is 4 times half-life; 60 minutes.</li> </ul>
BGP router ID	The IP address of a loopback interface if one is configured or the highest IP address for a physical interface on the router.
Default information originate (protocol or network redistribution)	Disabled.
Default metric	Built-in, automatic metric translations.
Distance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>External route administrative distance: 20 (acceptable values are from 1 to 255).</li> <li>Internal route administrative distance: 200 (acceptable values are from 1 to 255).</li> <li>Local route administrative distance: 200 (acceptable values are from 1 to 255).</li> </ul>
Distribute list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In (filter networks received in updates): Disabled.</li> <li>Out (suppress networks from being advertised in updates): Disabled.</li> </ul>
Internal route redistribution	Disabled.
IP prefix list	None defined.

Feature	Default Setting
Multi exit discriminator (MED)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Always compare: Disabled. Does not compare MEDs for paths from neighbors in different autonomous systems.</li> <li>• Best path compare: Disabled.</li> <li>• MED missing as worst path: Disabled.</li> <li>• Deterministic MED comparison is disabled.</li> </ul>
Neighbor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Advertisement interval: 30 seconds for external peers; 5 seconds for internal peers.</li> <li>• Change logging: Enabled.</li> <li>• Conditional advertisement: Disabled.</li> <li>• Default originate: No default route is sent to the neighbor.</li> <li>• Description: None.</li> <li>• Distribute list: None defined.</li> <li>• External BGP multihop: Only directly connected neighbors are allowed.</li> <li>• Filter list: None used.</li> <li>• Maximum number of prefixes received: No limit.</li> <li>• Next hop (router as next hop for BGP neighbor): Disabled.</li> <li>• Password: Disabled.</li> <li>• Peer group: None defined; no members assigned.</li> <li>• Prefix list: None specified.</li> <li>• Remote AS (add entry to neighbor BGP table): No peers defined.</li> <li>• Private AS number removal: Disabled.</li> <li>• Route maps: None applied to a peer.</li> <li>• Send community attributes: None sent to neighbors.</li> <li>• Shutdown or soft reconfiguration: Not enabled.</li> <li>• Timers: keepalive: 60 seconds; holdtime: 180 seconds.</li> <li>• Update source: Best local address.</li> <li>• Version: BGP Version 4.</li> <li>• Weight: Routes learned through BGP peer: 0; routes sourced by the local router: 32768.</li> </ul>
NSF <sup>1</sup> Awareness	Disabled <sup>2</sup> . If enabled, allows Layer 3 switches to continue forwarding packets from a neighboring NSF-capable router during hardware or software changes.
Route reflector	None configured.

Feature	Default Setting
Synchronization (BGP and IGP)	Disabled.
Table map update	Disabled.
Timers	Keepalive: 60 seconds; holdtime: 180 seconds.

<sup>1</sup> Nonstop Forwarding

<sup>2</sup> NSF Awareness can be enabled for IPv4 on switches with the Network Advantage license by enabling Graceful Restart.

## Enabling BGP Routing

### Before you begin



**Note** To enable BGP, the switch or active switch must be running the Network Advantage license.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ip routing</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>ip routing</b>	Enables IP routing.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>autonomous-system</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>router bgp</b> 45000	Enables a BGP routing process, assign it an AS number, and enter router configuration mode. The AS number can be from 1 to 65535, with 64512 to 65535 designated as private autonomous numbers.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>network</b> <i>network-number</i> [ <b>mask</b> <i>network-mask</i> ] [ <b>route-map</b> <i>route-map-name</i> ] <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>network</b> 10.108.0.0	Configures a network as local to this AS, and enter it in the BGP table.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>remote-as</b> <i>number</i> <b>Example:</b>	Adds an entry to the BGP neighbor table specifying that the neighbor identified by the IP address belongs to the specified AS.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 10.108.1.2 remote-as 65200</pre>	<p>For EBGp, neighbors are usually directly connected, and the IP address is the address of the interface at the other end of the connection.</p> <p>For IBGP, the IP address can be the address of any of the router interfaces.</p>
<b>Step 6</b>	<p><b>neighbor {ip-address   peer-group-name}</b>  <b>remove-private-as</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 172.16.2.33 remove-private-as</pre>	(Optional) Removes private AS numbers from the AS-path in outbound routing updates.
<b>Step 7</b>	<p><b>synchronization</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router)# synchronization</pre>	(Optional) Enables synchronization between BGP and an IGP.
<b>Step 8</b>	<p><b>auto-summary</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router)# auto-summary</pre>	(Optional) Enables automatic network summarization. When a subnet is redistributed from an IGP into BGP, only the network route is inserted into the BGP table.
<b>Step 9</b>	<p><b>bgp graceful-restart</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router)# bgp graceful-start</pre>	(Optional) Enables NSF awareness on switch. By default, NSF awareness is disabled.
<b>Step 10</b>	<p><b>end</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router)#end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 11</b>	<p><b>show ip bgp network network-number</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device# show ip bgp network 10.108.0.0</pre>	Verifies the configuration.
<b>Step 12</b>	<p><b>show ip bgp neighbor</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device# show ip bgp neighbor</pre>	<p>Verifies that NSF awareness (Graceful Restart) is enabled on the neighbor.</p> <p>If NSF awareness is enabled on the switch and the neighbor, this message appears:</p> <p><i>Graceful Restart Capability: advertised and received</i></p> <p>If NSF awareness is enabled on the switch, but not on the neighbor, this message appears:</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<i>Graceful Restart Capability: advertised</i>
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Managing Routing Policy Changes

To learn if a BGP peer supports the route refresh capability and to reset the BGP session:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show ip bgp neighbors</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip bgp neighbors</pre>	Displays whether a neighbor supports the route refresh capability. When supported, this message appears for the router: <i>Received route refresh capability from peer.</i>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>clear ip bgp {*   address   peer-group-name}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# clear ip bgp *</pre>	Resets the routing table on the specified connection. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter an asterisk (*) to specify that all connections be reset.</li> <li>• Enter an IP address to specify the connection to be reset.</li> <li>• Enter a peer group name to reset the peer group.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>clear ip bgp {*   address   peer-group-name} soft out</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# clear ip bgp * soft out</pre>	(Optional) Performs an outbound soft reset to reset the inbound routing table on the specified connection. Use this command if route refresh is supported. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter an asterisk (*) to specify that all connections be reset.</li> <li>• Enter an IP address to specify the connection to be reset.</li> <li>• Enter a peer group name to reset the peer group.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>show ip bgp</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip bgp</pre>	Verifies the reset by checking information about the routing table and about BGP neighbors.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show ip bgp neighbors</b> <b>Example:</b>	Verifies the reset by checking information about the routing table and about BGP neighbors.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show ip bgp neighbors	

## Configuring BGP Decision Attributes

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>autonomous-system</i> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# router bgp 4500	Enables a BGP routing process, assign it an AS number, and enter router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>bgp best-path as-path ignore</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# bgp bestpath as-path ignore	(Optional) Configures the router to ignore AS path length in selecting a route.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>next-hop-self</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# neighbor 10.108.1.1 next-hop-self	(Optional) Disables next-hop processing on BGP updates to a neighbor by entering a specific IP address to be used instead of the next-hop address.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>weight</b> <i>weight</i> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# neighbor 172.16.12.1 weight 50	(Optional) Assign a weight to a neighbor connection. Acceptable values are from 0 to 65535; the largest weight is the preferred route. Routes learned through another BGP peer have a default weight of 0; routes sourced by the local router have a default weight of 32768.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>default-metric</b> <i>number</i> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# default-metric 300	(Optional) Sets a MED metric to set preferred paths to external neighbors. All routes without a MED will also be set to this value. The range is 1 to 4294967295. The lowest value is the most desirable.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>bgp bestpath med missing-as-worst</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# bgp bestpath med missing-as-worst	(Optional) Configures the switch to consider a missing MED as having a value of infinity, making the path without a MED value the least desirable path.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>bgp always-compare med</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bgp always-compare-med</pre>	(Optional) Configures the switch to compare MEDs for paths from neighbors in different autonomous systems. By default, MED comparison is only done among paths in the same AS.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>bgp bestpath med confed</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bgp bestpath med confed</pre>	(Optional) Configures the switch to consider the MED in choosing a path from among those advertised by different subautonomous systems within a confederation.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>bgp deterministic med</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bgp deterministic med</pre>	(Optional) Configures the switch to consider the MED variable when choosing among routes advertised by different peers in the same AS.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>bgp default local-preference <i>value</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bgp default local-preference 200</pre>	(Optional) Change the default local preference value. The range is 0 to 4294967295; the default value is 100. The highest local preference value is preferred.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>maximum-paths <i>number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# maximum-paths 8</pre>	(Optional) Configures the number of paths to be added to the IP routing table. The default is to only enter the best path in the routing table. The range is from 1 to 16. Having multiple paths allows load-balancing among the paths. (Although the switch software allows a maximum of 32 equal-cost routes, the switch hardware will never use more than 16 paths per route.)
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>show ip bgp</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip bgp</pre>	Verifies the reset by checking information about the routing table and about BGP neighbors.
<b>Step 15</b>	<b>show ip bgp neighbors</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip bgp neighbors</pre>	Verifies the reset by checking information about the routing table and about BGP neighbors.
<b>Step 16</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# <code>copy running-config startup-config</code>	

## Configuring BGP Filtering with Route Maps

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>route-map map-tag [permit   deny] [sequence-number]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>route-map set-peer-address permit 10</code>	Creates a route map, and enter route-map configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>set ip next-hop ip-address [...ip-address] [peer-address]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>set ip next-hop 10.1.1.3</code>	(Optional) Sets a route map to disable next-hop processing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In an inbound route map, set the next hop of matching routes to be the neighbor peering address, overriding third-party next hops.</li> <li>• In an outbound route map of a BGP peer, set the next hop to the peering address of the local router, disabling the next-hop calculation.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show route-map [map-name]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>show route-map</code>	Displays all route maps configured or only the one specified to verify configuration.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>copy running-config startup-config</code>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.



## Configuring BGP Filtering by Neighbor

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>autonomous-system</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>router bgp</b> 109	Enables a BGP routing process, assign it an AS number, and enter router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group name</i> } <b>distribute-list</b> { <i>access-list-number</i>   <i>name</i> } { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> } <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> 172.16.4.1 <b>distribute-list</b> 39 <b>in</b>	(Optional) Filters BGP routing updates to or from neighbors as specified in an access list. <b>Note</b> You can also use the <b>neighbor prefix-list</b> router configuration command to filter updates, but you cannot use both commands to configure the same BGP peer.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group name</i> } <b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> } <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> 172.16.70.24 <b>route-map</b> internal-map <b>in</b>	(Optional) Applies a route map to filter an incoming or outgoing route.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show ip bgp neighbors</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show ip bgp neighbors</b>	Verifies the configuration.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring BGP Filtering by Access Lists and Neighbors

Another method of filtering is to specify an access list filter on both incoming and outbound updates, based on the BGP autonomous system paths. Each filter is an access list based on regular expressions. (See the “Regular Expressions” appendix in the *Cisco IOS Dial Technologies Command Reference, Release 12.4* for more information on forming regular expressions.) To use this method, define an autonomous system path access list, and apply it to updates to and from particular neighbors.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ip as-path access-list</b> <i>access-list-number</i> { <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> } <i>as-regular-expressions</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# ip as-path access-list 1 deny _65535_	Defines a BGP-related access list.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>autonomous-system</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router bgp 110	Enters BGP router configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group name</i> } <b>filter-list</b> { <i>access-list-number</i>   <i>name</i> } { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b>   <b>weight weight</b> } <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# neighbor 172.16.1.1 filter-list 1 out	Establishes a BGP filter based on an access list.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show ip bgp neighbors</b> [ <i>paths regular-expression</i> ] <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip bgp neighbors	Verifies the configuration.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# <code>copy running-config startup-config</code>	

## Configuring Prefix Lists for BGP Filtering

You do not need to specify a sequence number when removing a configuration entry. **Show** commands include the sequence numbers in their output.

Before using a prefix list in a command, you must set up the prefix list.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ip prefix-list list-name [seq seq-value] deny   permit network/len [ge ge-value] [le le-value]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>ip prefix-list BLUE permit 172.16.1.0/24</code>	Creates a prefix list with an optional sequence number to <b>deny</b> or <b>permit</b> access for matching conditions. You must enter at least one <b>permit</b> or <b>deny</b> clause. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>network/len</i> is the network number and length (in bits) of the network mask.</li> <li>(Optional) <b>ge</b> and <b>le</b> values specify the range of the prefix length to be matched. The specified <i>ge-value</i> and <i>le-value</i> must satisfy this condition: <math>len &lt; ge\text{-}value &lt; le\text{-}value &lt; 32</math></li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip prefix-list list-name seq seq-value deny   permit network/len [ge ge-value] [le le-value]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>ip prefix-list BLUE seq 10 permit 172.24.1.0/24</code>	(Optional) Adds an entry to a prefix list, and assign a sequence number to the entry.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show ip prefix list [detail   summary] name [network/len] [seq seq-num] [longer] [first-match]</b> <b>Example:</b>	Verifies the configuration by displaying information about a prefix list or prefix list entries.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show ip prefix list summary test	
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring BGP Community Filtering

By default, no COMMUNITIES attribute is sent to a neighbor. You can specify that the COMMUNITIES attribute be sent to the neighbor at an IP address by using the **neighbor send-community** router configuration command.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **ip community-list** *community-list-number* {**permit** | **deny**} *community-number*
3. **router bgp** *autonomous-system*
4. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *peer-group name*} **send-community**
5. **set comm-list** *list-num* **delete**
6. **exit**
7. **ip bgp-community new-format**
8. **end**
9. **show ip bgp community**
10. **copy running-config startup-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ip community-list</b> <i>community-list-number</i> { <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> } <i>community-number</i>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>ip community-list 1 permit 50000:10</b>	Creates a community list, and assigns it a number. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <i>community-list-number</i> is an integer from 1 to 99 that identifies one or more permit or deny groups of communities.</li> <li>• The <i>community-number</i> is the number configured by a <b>set community</b> route-map configuration command.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>autonomous-system</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router bgp 108	Enters BGP router configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group name</i> } <b>send-community</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# neighbor 172.16.70.23 send-community	Specifies that the COMMUNITIES attribute be sent to the neighbor at this IP address.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>set comm-list</b> <i>list-num</i> <b>delete</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# set comm-list 500 delete	(Optional) Removes communities from the community attribute of an inbound or outbound update that match a standard or extended community list specified by a route map.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# end	Returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>ip bgp-community new-format</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# ip bgp-community new format	(Optional) Displays and parses BGP communities in the format AA:NN.  A BGP community is displayed in a two-part format 2 bytes long. The Cisco default community format is in the format NNAA. In the most recent RFC for BGP, a community takes the form AA:NN, where the first part is the AS number and the second part is a 2-byte number.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show ip bgp community</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip bgp community	Verifies the configuration.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring BGP Neighbors and Peer Groups

To assign configuration options to an individual neighbor, specify any of these router configuration commands by using the neighbor IP address. To assign the options to a peer group, specify any of the commands by using the peer group name. You can disable a BGP peer or peer group without removing all the configuration information by using the **neighbor shutdown** router configuration command.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>autonomous-system</i>	Enters BGP router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>neighbor</b> <i>peer-group-name</i> <b>peer-group</b>	Creates a BGP peer group.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor</b> <i>ip-address</i> <b>peer-group</b> <i>peer-group-name</i>	Makes a BGP neighbor a member of the peer group.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>remote-as</b> <i>number</i>	Specifies a BGP neighbor. If a peer group is not configured with a <b>remote-as</b> <i>number</i> , use this command to create peer groups containing EBGP neighbors. The range is 1 to 65535.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>description</b> <i>text</i>	(Optional) Associates a description with a neighbor.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>default-originate</b> [ <b>route-map</b> <i>map-name</i> ]	(Optional) Allows a BGP speaker (the local router) to send the default route 0.0.0.0 to a neighbor for use as a default route.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>send-community</b>	(Optional) Specifies that the COMMUNITIES attribute be sent to the neighbor at this IP address.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>update-source</b> <i>interface</i>	(Optional) Allows internal BGP sessions to use any operational interface for TCP connections.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>ebgp-multihop</b>	(Optional) Allows BGP sessions, even when the neighbor is not on a directly connected segment. The multihop session is not established if the only route to the multihop peer's address is the default route (0.0.0.0).
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>local-as</b> <i>number</i>	(Optional) Specifies an AS number to use as the local AS. The range is 1 to 65535.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>advertisement-interval</b> <i>seconds</i>	(Optional) Sets the minimum interval between sending BGP routing updates.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>maximum-prefix</b> <i>maximum</i> [ <i>threshold</i> ]	(Optional) Controls how many prefixes can be received from a neighbor. The range is 1 to 4294967295. The

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<i>threshold</i> (optional) is the percentage of maximum at which a warning message is generated. The default is 75 percent.
Step 14	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>next-hop-self</b>	(Optional) Disables next-hop processing on the BGP updates to a neighbor.
Step 15	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>password</b> <i>string</i>	(Optional) Sets MD5 authentication on a TCP connection to a BGP peer. The same password must be configured on both BGP peers, or the connection between them is not made.
Step 16	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>route-map</b> <i>map-name</i> { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> }	(Optional) Applies a route map to incoming or outgoing routes.
Step 17	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>send-community</b>	(Optional) Specifies that the COMMUNITIES attribute be sent to the neighbor at this IP address.
Step 18	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>timers</b> <i>keepalive</i> <i>holdtime</i>	(Optional) Sets timers for the neighbor or peer group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <i>keepalive</i> interval is the time within which keepalive messages are sent to peers. The range is 1 to 4294967295 seconds; the default is 60.</li> <li>The <i>holdtime</i> is the interval after which a peer is declared inactive after not receiving a keepalive message from it. The range is 1 to 4294967295 seconds; the default is 180.</li> </ul>
Step 19	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>weight</b> <i>weight</i>	(Optional) Specifies a weight for all routes from a neighbor.
Step 20	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>distribute-list</b> { <i>access-list-number</i>   <i>name</i> } { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> }	(Optional) Filter BGP routing updates to or from neighbors, as specified in an access list.
Step 21	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>filter-list</b> <i>access-list-number</i> { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b>   <b>weight</b> <i>weight</i> }	(Optional) Establish a BGP filter.
Step 22	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>version</b> <i>value</i>	(Optional) Specifies the BGP version to use when communicating with a neighbor.
Step 23	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>soft-reconfiguration inbound</b>	(Optional) Configures the software to start storing received updates.
Step 24	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 25	<b>show ip bgp neighbors</b>	Verifies the configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 26</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring Aggregate Addresses in a Routing Table

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router bgp <i>autonomous-system</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 106</pre>	Enters BGP router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>aggregate-address <i>address mask</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# aggregate-address 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0</pre>	Creates an aggregate entry in the BGP routing table. The aggregate route is advertised as coming from the AS, and the atomic aggregate attribute is set to indicate that information might be missing.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>aggregate-address <i>address mask as-set</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# aggregate-address 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 as-set</pre>	(Optional) Generates AS set path information. This command creates an aggregate entry following the same rules as the previous command, but the advertised path will be an AS_SET consisting of all elements contained in all paths. Do not use this keyword when aggregating many paths because this route must be continually withdrawn and updated.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>aggregate-address <i>address-mask summary-only</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# aggregate-address 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 summary-only</pre>	(Optional) Advertises summary addresses only.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>aggregate-address <i>address mask suppress-map map-name</i></b> <b>Example:</b>	(Optional) Suppresses selected, more specific routes.



	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-router)# aggregate-address 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 suppress-map map1	
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>aggregate-address address mask advertise-map map-name</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# aggregate-address 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 advertise-map map2	(Optional) Generates an aggregate based on conditions specified by the route map.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>aggregate-address address mask attribute-map map-name</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# aggregate-address 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 attribute-map map3	(Optional) Generates an aggregate with attributes specified in the route map.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show ip bgp neighbors [advertised-routes]</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ip bgp neighbors	Verifies the configuration.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring Routing Domain Confederations

You must specify a confederation identifier that acts as the autonomous system number for the group of autonomous systems.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>autonomous-system</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router bgp 100	Enters BGP router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>bgp confederation identifier</b> <i>autonomous-system</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# bgp confederation identifier 50007	Configures a BGP confederation identifier.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>bgp confederation peers</b> <i>autonomous-system</i> [ <i>autonomous-system ...</i> ] <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# bgp confederation peers 51000 51001 51002	Specifies the autonomous systems that belong to the confederation and that will be treated as special EBGp peers.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show ip bgp neighbor</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip bgp neighbor	Verifies the configuration.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip bgp network</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip bgp network	Verifies the configuration.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring BGP Route Reflectors

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router bgp <i>autonomous-system</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>router bgp 101</b>	Enters BGP router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>neighbor {<i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i>}</b> <b>route-reflector-client</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>neighbor 172.16.70.24</b> <b>route-reflector-client</b>	Configures the local router as a BGP route reflector and the specified neighbor as a client.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>bgp cluster-id <i>cluster-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>bgp cluster-id 10.0.1.2</b>	(Optional) Configures the cluster ID if the cluster has more than one route reflector.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>no bgp client-to-client reflection</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <b>no bgp client-to-client reflection</b>	(Optional) Disables client-to-client route reflection. By default, the routes from a route reflector client are reflected to other clients. However, if the clients are fully meshed, the route reflector does not need to reflect routes to clients.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip bgp</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show ip bgp</b>	Verifies the configuration. Displays the originator ID and the cluster-list attributes.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# <code>copy running-config startup-config</code>	

## Configuring Route Dampening

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router bgp <i>autonomous-system</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>router bgp 100</code>	Enters BGP router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>bgp dampening</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <code>bgp dampening</code>	Enables BGP route dampening.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>bgp dampening <i>half-life reuse suppress max-suppress</i> [route-map <i>map</i>]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# <code>bgp dampening 30 1500 10000 120</code>	(Optional) Changes the default values of route dampening factors.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show ip bgp flap-statistics [ {<i>regex</i> <i>regex</i>}   {<i>filter-list</i> <i>list</i>}   {<i>address mask</i> [<i>longer-prefix</i>]} ]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>show ip bgp flap-statistics</code>	(Optional) Monitors the flaps of all paths that are flapping. The statistics are deleted when the route is not suppressed and is stable.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip bgp dampened-paths</b> <b>Example:</b>	(Optional) Displays the dampened routes, including the time remaining before they are suppressed.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show ip bgp dampened-paths	
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>clear ip bgp flap-statistics</b> [{ <b>regexp</b> <i>regexp</i> }   { <b>filter-list</b> <i>list</i> }   { <b>address mask</b> [ <b>longer-prefix</b> ]}] <b>Example:</b> Device# clear ip bgp flap-statistics	(Optional) Clears BGP flap statistics to make it less likely that a route will be dampened.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>clear ip bgp dampening</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# clear ip bgp dampening	(Optional) Clears route dampening information, and unsuppress the suppressed routes.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Monitoring and Maintaining BGP

You can remove all contents of a particular cache, table, or database. This might be necessary when the contents of the particular structure have become or are suspected to be invalid.

You can display specific statistics, such as the contents of BGP routing tables, caches, and databases. You can use the information to get resource utilization and solve network problems. You can also display information about node reachability and discover the routing path your device's packets are taking through the network.

The table given below lists the privileged EXEC commands for clearing and displaying BGP. For explanations of the display fields, see the *Cisco IOS IP Command Reference, Volume 2 of 3: Routing Protocols, Release 12.4*.

**Table 17: IP BGP Clear and Show Commands**

<b>clear ip bgp</b> <i>address</i>	Resets a particular BGP connection.
<b>clear ip bgp</b> *	Resets all BGP connections.
<b>clear ip bgp peer-group</b> <i>tag</i>	Removes all members of a BGP peer group.
<b>show ip bgp</b> <i>prefix</i>	Displays peer groups and peers not in peer groups to which the prefix has been advertised. Also displays prefix attributes such as next hop and the local prefix.
<b>show ip bgp cidr-only</b>	Displays all BGP routes that contain subnet and supernetwork masks.
<b>show ip bgp community</b> [ <i>community-number</i> ] [ <b>exact</b> ]	Displays routes that belong to the specified communities.

<b>show ip bgp community-list</b> <i>community-list-number</i> [exact-match]	Displays routes that are permitted by the community list.
<b>show ip bgp filter-list</b> <i>access-list-number</i>	Displays routes that are matched by the specified AS path a
<b>show ip bgp inconsistent-as</b>	Displays the routes with inconsistent originating autonomous
<b>show ip bgp regexp</b> <i>regular-expression</i>	Displays the routes that have an AS path that matches the s regular expression entered on the command line.
<b>show ip bgp</b>	Displays the contents of the BGP routing table.
<b>show ip bgp neighbors</b> [ <i>address</i> ]	Displays detailed information on the BGP and TCP connec individual neighbors.
<b>show ip bgp neighbors</b> [ <i>address</i> ] [ <b>advertised-routes</b>   <b>dampened-routes</b>   <b>flap-statistics</b>   <b>paths</b> <i>regular-expression</i>   <b>received-routes</b>   <b>routes</b> ]	Displays routes learned from a particular BGP neighbor.
<b>show ip bgp paths</b>	Displays all BGP paths in the database.
<b>show ip bgp peer-group</b> [ <i>tag</i> ] [ <b>summary</b> ]	Displays information about BGP peer groups.
<b>show ip bgp summary</b>	Displays the status of all BGP connections.

The **bgp log-neighbor changes** command is enabled by default. It allows to log messages that are generated when a BGP neighbor resets, comes up, or goes down.



## CHAPTER 8

# Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6

- [Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6, on page 149](#)

## Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6

This module describes how to configure multiprotocol Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) for IPv6. BGP is an Exterior Gateway Protocol (EGP) used mainly to connect separate routing domains that contain independent routing policies (autonomous systems). Connecting to a service provider for access to the Internet is a common use for BGP. BGP can also be used within an autonomous system and this variation is referred to as internal BGP (iBGP). Multiprotocol BGP is an enhanced BGP that carries routing information for multiple network layer protocol address families, for example, IPv6 address family and for IP multicast routes. All BGP commands and routing policy capabilities can be used with multiprotocol BGP.

## Information About Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6

### Multiprotocol BGP Extensions for IPv6

Multiprotocol BGP is the supported Exterior Gateway Protocol (EGP) for IPv6. Multiprotocol BGP extensions for IPv6 supports many of the same features and functionality as IPv4 BGP. IPv6 enhancements to multiprotocol BGP include support for an IPv6 address family and Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI) and next hop (the next device in the path to the destination) attributes that use IPv6 addresses.

### IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Peering Using a Link-Local Address

The IPv6 multiprotocol BGP can be configured between two IPv6 devices (peers) using link-local addresses. For this function to work, you must identify the interface for the neighbor by using the **neighbor update-source** command, and you must configure a route map to set an IPv6 global next hop.

### Multiprotocol BGP for the IPv6 Multicast Address Family

The multiprotocol BGP for the IPv6 multicast address family feature provides multicast BGP extensions for IPv6 and supports the same features and functionality as IPv4 BGP. IPv6 enhancements to multicast BGP include support for an IPv6 multicast address family and network layer reachability information (NLRI) and next hop (the next router in the path to the destination) attributes that use IPv6 addresses.

Multicast BGP is an enhanced BGP that allows the deployment of interdomain IPv6 multicast. Multiprotocol BGP carries routing information for multiple network layer protocol address families; for example, IPv6

address family and for IPv6 multicast routes. The IPv6 multicast address family contains routes used for RPF lookup by the IPv6 PIM protocol, and multicast BGP IPv6 provides for interdomain transport of the same. Users must use multiprotocol BGP for IPv6 multicast when using IPv6 multicast with BGP because the unicast BGP learned routes will not be used for IPv6 multicast.

Multicast BGP functionality is provided through a separate address family context. A subsequent address family identifier (SAFI) provides information about the type of the network layer reachability information that is carried in the attribute. Multiprotocol BGP unicast uses SAFI 1 messages, and multiprotocol BGP multicast uses SAFI 2 messages. SAFI 1 messages indicate that the routes are usable only for IP unicast, not IP multicast. Because of this functionality, BGP routes in the IPv6 unicast RIB must be ignored in the IPv6 multicast RPF lookup.

A separate BGP routing table is maintained to configure incongruent policies and topologies (for example, IPv6 unicast and multicast) by using IPv6 multicast RPF lookup. Multicast RPF lookup is very similar to the IP unicast route lookup.

No MRIB is associated with the IPv6 multicast BGP table. However, IPv6 multicast BGP operates on the unicast IPv6 RIB when needed. Multicast BGP does not insert or update routes into the IPv6 unicast RIB.

### Nonstop Forwarding and Graceful Restart for MP-BGP IPv6 Address Family

The graceful restart capability is supported for IPv6 BGP unicast, multicast, and VPNv6 address families, enabling Cisco nonstop forwarding (NSF) functionality for BGP IPv6. The BGP graceful restart capability allows the BGP routing table to be recovered from peers without keeping the TCP state.

NSF continues forwarding packets while routing protocols converge, therefore avoiding a route flap on switchover. Forwarding is maintained by synchronizing the FIB between the active and standby RP. On switchover, forwarding is maintained using the FIB. The RIB is not kept synchronized; therefore, the RIB is empty on switchover. The RIB is repopulated by the routing protocols and subsequently informs FIB about RIB convergence by using the NSF\_RIB\_CONVERGED registry call. The FIB tables are updated from the RIB, removing any stale entries. The RIB starts a failsafe timer during RP switchover, in case the routing protocols fail to notify the RIB of convergence.

The Cisco BGP address family identifier (AFI) model is designed to be modular and scalable, and to support multiple AFI and subsequent address family identifier (SAFI) configurations.

## How to Implement Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6

### Configuring an IPv6 BGP Routing Process and BGP Router ID

Perform this task to configure an IPv6 BGP routing process and an optional BGP router ID for a BGP-speaking device.

BGP uses a router ID to identify BGP-speaking peers. The BGP router ID is 32-bit value that is often represented by an IPv4 address. By default, the router ID is set to the IPv4 address of a loopback interface on the device. If no loopback interface is configured on the device, then the software chooses the highest IPv4 address configured to a physical interface on the device to represent the BGP router ID.

When configuring BGP on a device that is enabled only for IPv6 (that is, the device does not have an IPv4 address), you must manually configure the BGP router ID for the device. The BGP router ID, which is represented as a 32-bit value using an IPv4 address syntax, must be unique to the BGP peers of the device.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable



2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp** *as-number*
4. **no bgp default ipv4-unicast**
5. **bgp router-id** *ip-address*
6. **end**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>as-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 65000</pre>	Configures a BGP routing process, and enters router configuration mode for the specified routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>no bgp default ipv4-unicast</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# no bgp default ipv4-unicast</pre>	Disables the IPv4 unicast address family for the BGP routing process specified in the previous step.  <b>Note</b> Routing information for the IPv4 unicast address family is advertised by default for each BGP routing session configured with the <b>neighbor remote-as</b> command unless you configure the <b>no bgp default ipv4-unicast</b> command before configuring the <b>neighbor remote-as</b> command.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>bgp router-id</b> <i>ip-address</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bgp router-id 192.168.99.70</pre>	(Optional) Configures a fixed 32-bit router ID as the identifier of the local device running BGP.  <b>Note</b> Configuring a router ID using the <b>bgp router-id</b> command resets all active BGP peering sessions.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# end</pre>	Exits router configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Between Two Peers

By default, neighbors that are defined using the **neighbor remote-as** command in router configuration mode exchange only IPv4 unicast address prefixes. To exchange other address prefix types, such as IPv6 prefixes, neighbors must also be activated using the **neighbor activate** command in address family configuration mode for the other prefix types, as shown for IPv6 prefixes.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp** *as-number*
4. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *ipv6-address* [%] | *peer-group-name*} **remote-as** *autonomous-system-number* [**alternate-as** *autonomous-system-number* ...]
5. **address-family ipv6** [**unicast** | **multicast**]
6. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *peer-group-name* | *ipv6-address* %} **activate**
7. **end**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>as-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 65000</pre>	Enters router configuration mode for the specified routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> [%]   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>remote-as</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i> [ <b>alternate-as</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i> ...] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:CC00::1 remote-as 64600</pre>	Adds the IPv6 address of the neighbor in the specified autonomous system to the IPv6 multiprotocol BGP neighbor table of the local device.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>address-family ipv6</b> [ <b>unicast</b>   <b>multicast</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6</pre>	Specifies the IPv6 address family and enters address family configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>unicast</b> keyword specifies the IPv6 unicast address family. By default, the device is placed in configuration mode for the IPv6 unicast address family if a keyword</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>is not specified with the <b>address-family ipv6</b> command.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>multicast</b> keyword specifies IPv6 multicast address prefixes.</li> </ul>
Step 6	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> %} <b>activate</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:CC00::1 activate</pre>	Enables the neighbor to exchange prefixes for the IPv6 address family with the local device.
Step 7	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device(config-router-af)# end</pre>	Exits address family configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Between Two Peers Using Link-Local Addresses

By default, neighbors that are defined using the **neighbor remote-as** command in router configuration mode exchange only IPv4 unicast address prefixes. To exchange other address prefix types, such as IPv6 prefixes, neighbors must also be activated using the **neighbor activate** command in address family configuration mode for the other prefix types, as shown for IPv6 prefixes.

By default, route maps that are applied in router configuration mode using the **neighbor route-map** command are applied to only IPv4 unicast address prefixes. Route maps for other address families must be applied in address family configuration mode using the **neighbor route-map** command, as shown for the IPv6 address family. The route maps are applied either as the inbound or outbound routing policy for neighbors under the specified address family. Configuring separate route maps under each address family type simplifies managing complicated or different policies for each address family.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp** *autonomous-system-number*
4. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *ipv6-address* | *peer-group-name*} **remote-as** *as-number*
5. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *ipv6-address* | *peer-group-name*} **update-source** *interface-type interface-number*
6. **address-family ipv6** [*vrf vrf-name*] [**unicast** | **multicast** | **vpn6**]
7. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *peer-group-name* | *ipv6-address*} **activate**
8. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *peer-group-name* | *ipv6-address*} **route-map** *map-name* {**in** | **out**}
9. **exit**
10. **exit**
11. **route-map** *map-tag* [**permit** | **deny**] [*sequence-number*]
12. **match ipv6 address** {**prefix-list** *prefix-list-name* | *access-list-name*}
13. **set ipv6 next-hop** *ipv6-address* [*link-local-address*] [**peer-address**]
14. **end**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp <i>autonomous-system-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 65000</pre>	Enters router configuration mode for the specified routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor {<i>ip-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i>} remote-as <i>as-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0000:0000:0000:0000:0111 remote-as 64600</pre>	Adds the link-local IPv6 address of the neighbor in the specified remote autonomous system to the IPv6 multiprotocol BGP neighbor table of the local router. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <i>ipv6-address</i> argument in the <b>neighbor remote-as</b> command must be a link-local IPv6 address in the form documented in RFC 2373 where the address is specified in hexadecimal using 16-bit values between colons.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>neighbor {<i>ip-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i>} update-source <i>interface-type interface-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0000:0000:0000:0000:0111 update-source gigabitethernet 0/0/0</pre>	Specifies the link-local address over which the peering is to occur. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If there are multiple connections to the neighbor and you do not specify the neighbor interface by using the <i>interface-type</i> and <i>interface-number</i> arguments in the <b>neighbor update-source</b> command, a TCP connection cannot be established with the neighbor using link-local addresses.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>address-family ipv6 [<i>vrf vrf-name</i>] [<i>unicast</i>   <i>multicast</i>]   vpnv6</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6</pre>	Specifies the IPv6 address family, and enters address family configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>unicast</b> keyword specifies the IPv6 unicast address family. By default, the router is placed in configuration mode for the IPv6 unicast address family if the <b>unicast</b> keyword is not specified with the <b>address-family ipv6</b> command.</li> <li>• The <b>multicast</b> keyword specifies IPv6 multicast address prefixes.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> } <b>activate</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0000:0000:0000:0000:0111 activate</pre>	Enables the neighbor to exchange prefixes for the IPv6 address family with the local router using the specified link-local addresses.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> } <b>route-map</b> <i>map-name</i> { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> }  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0000:0000:0000:0000:0111 route-map nh6 out</pre>	Applies a route map to incoming or outgoing routes.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device(config-router-af)# exit</pre>	Exits address family configuration mode, and returns to router configuration mode.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device(config-router)# exit</pre>	Exits router configuration mode, and returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> [ <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> ] [ <i>sequence-number</i> ]  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device(config)# route-map nh6 permit 10</pre>	Defines a route map and enters route-map configuration mode.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>match ipv6 address</b> { <b>prefix-list</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i>   <i>access-list-name</i> }  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device(config-route-map)# match ipv6 address prefix-list list1</pre>	Distributes any routes that have a destination IPv6 network number address permitted by a prefix list, or performs policy routing on packets.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>set ipv6 next-hop</b> <i>ipv6-address</i> [ <i>link-local-address</i> ] <b>[peer-address]</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device(config-route-map)# set ipv6 next-hop 2001:DB8::1</pre>	<p>Overrides the next hop advertised to the peer for IPv6 packets that pass a match clause of a route map for policy routing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <i>ipv6-address</i> argument specifies the IPv6 global address of the next hop. It need not be an adjacent router.</li> <li>• The <i>link-local-address</i> argument specifies the IPv6 link-local address of the next hop. It must be an adjacent router.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<b>Note</b> The route map sets the IPv6 next-hop addresses (global and link-local) in BGP updates. If the route map is not configured, the next-hop address in the BGP updates defaults to the unspecified IPv6 address (::), which is rejected by the peer. If you specify only the global IPv6 next-hop address (the <i>ipv6-address</i> argument) with the <b>set ipv6 next-hop</b> command after specifying the neighbor interface (the <i>interface-type</i> argument) with the <b>neighbor update-source</b> command in Step 5, the link-local address of the interface specified with the <i>interface-type</i> argument is included as the next-hop in the BGP updates. Therefore, only one route map that sets the global IPv6 next-hop address in BGP updates is required for multiple BGP peers that use link-local addresses.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# end</pre>	Exits route-map configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

### Troubleshooting Tips

If peering is not established by this task, it may be because of a missing route map **set ipv6 next-hop** command. Use the **debug bgp ipv6 update** command to display debugging information on the updates to help determine the state of the peering.

## Configuring an IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Peer Group

- By default, neighbors that are defined using the **neighbor remote-as** command in router configuration mode exchange only IPv4 unicast address prefixes. To exchange other address prefix types, such as IPv6 prefixes, neighbors must also be activated using the **neighbor activate** command in address family configuration mode for the other prefix types, as shown for IPv6 prefixes.
- By default, peer groups that are defined in router configuration mode using the **neighbor peer-group** command exchange only IPv4 unicast address prefixes. To exchange other address prefix types, such as IPv6 prefixes, you must activate peer groups using the **neighbor activate** command in address family configuration mode for the other prefix types, as shown for IPv6 prefixes.
- Members of a peer group automatically inherit the address prefix configuration of the peer group.
- IPv4 active neighbors cannot exist in the same peer group as active IPv6 neighbors. Create separate peer groups for IPv4 peers and IPv6 peers.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**

2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp** *as-number*
4. **neighbor** *peer-group-name* **peer-group**
5. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *ipv6-address*[%] | *peer-group-name*} **remote-as** *autonomous-system-number* [**alternate-as** *autonomous-system-number* ...]
6. **address-family ipv6** [**vrf** *vrf-name*] [**unicast** | **multicast** | **vpnv6**]
7. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *peer-group-name* | *ipv6-address* %} **activate**
8. **neighbor** *ip-address* | *ipv6-address*} **send-label**
9. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *ipv6-address*} **peer-group** *peer-group-name*
10. **end**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>as-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 65000</pre>	Enters router configuration mode for the specified BGP routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor</b> <i>peer-group-name</i> <b>peer-group</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor group1 peer-group</pre>	Creates a multiprotocol BGP peer group.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> [%]   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>remote-as</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i> [ <b>alternate-as</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i> ...] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:CC00::1 remote-as 64600</pre>	Adds the IPv6 address of the neighbor in the specified autonomous system to the IPv6 multiprotocol BGP neighbor table of the local router.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>address-family ipv6</b> [ <b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ] [ <b>unicast</b>   <b>multicast</b>   <b>vpnv6</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6 unicast</pre>	Specifies the IPv6 address family, and enters address family configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>unicast</b> keyword specifies the IPv6 unicast address family. By default, the device is placed in configuration mode for the IPv6 unicast address</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>family if the <b>unicast</b> keyword is not specified with the <b>address-family ipv6</b> command.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>multicast</b> keyword specifies IPv6 multicast address prefixes.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 7</b>	<p><b>neighbor</b> {<i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> %} <b>activate</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:CC00::1 activate</pre>	<p>Enables the neighbor to exchange prefixes for the specified family type with the neighbor and the local router.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To avoid extra configuration steps for each neighbor, use the <b>neighbor activate</b> command with the <i>peer-group-name</i> argument as an alternative in this step.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 8</b>	<p><b>neighbor</b> <i>ip-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> } <b>send-label</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 192.168.99.70 send-label</pre>	<p>Advertises the capability of the device to send MPLS labels with BGP routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In IPv6 address family configuration mode, this command enables binding and advertisement of aggregate labels when advertising IPv6 prefixes in BGP.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 9</b>	<p><b>neighbor</b> {<i>ip-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> } <b>peer-group</b> <i>peer-group-name</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:CC00::1 peer-group group1</pre>	<p>Assigns the IPv6 address of a BGP neighbor to a peer group.</p>
<b>Step 10</b>	<p><b>end</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# end</pre>	<p>Exits address family configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</p>

## Configuring a Route Map for IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Prefixes

- By default, neighbors that are defined using the **neighbor remote-as** command in router configuration mode exchange only IPv4 unicast address prefixes. To exchange other address prefix types, such as IPv6 prefixes, neighbors must also be activated using the **neighbor activate** command in address family configuration mode for the other prefix types, as shown for IPv6 prefixes.
- By default, route maps that are applied in router configuration mode using the **neighbor route-map** command are applied to only IPv4 unicast address prefixes. Route maps for other address families must be applied in address family configuration mode using the **neighbor route-map** command, as shown for the IPv6 address family. The route maps are applied either as the inbound or outbound routing policy for neighbors under the specified address family. Configuring separate route maps under each address family type simplifies managing complicated or different policies for each address family.



## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp** *as-number*
4. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *ipv6-address*[%] | *peer-group-name*} **remote-as** *autonomous-system-number* [*alternate-as autonomous-system-number ...*]
5. **address-family ipv6** [*vrf vrf-name*] [**unicast** | **multicast** | **vpn6**]
6. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *peer-group-name* | *ipv6-address %*} **activate**
7. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *peer-group-name* | *ipv6-address [%]*} **route-map** *map-name* {**in** | **out**}
8. **exit**
9. **exit**
10. **route-map** *map-tag* [**permit** | **deny**] [*sequence-number*]
11. **match ipv6 address** {**prefix-list** *prefix-list-name* | *access-list-name*}
12. **end**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>as-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 65000</pre>	Enters router configuration mode for the specified routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> [%]   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>remote-as</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i> [ <i>alternate-as autonomous-system-number ...</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:cc00::1 remote-as 64600</pre>	Adds the link-local IPv6 address of the neighbor in the specified remote autonomous system to the IPv6 multiprotocol BGP neighbor table of the local device.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>address-family ipv6</b> [ <i>vrf vrf-name</i> ] [ <b>unicast</b>   <b>multicast</b>   <b>vpn6</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6</pre>	Specifies the IPv6 address family, and enters address family configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>unicast</b> keyword specifies the IPv6 unicast address family. By default, the device is placed in configuration mode for the IPv6 unicast address</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>family if the <b>unicast</b> keyword is not specified with the <b>address-family ipv6</b> command.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>multicast</b> keyword specifies IPv6 multicast address prefixes.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> %} <b>activate</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:cc00::1 activate</pre>	Enables the neighbor to exchange prefixes for the IPv6 address family with the local device using the specified link-local addresses.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> [%]} <b>route-map</b> <i>map-name</i> { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> } <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:cc00::1 route-map rtp in</pre>	<p>Applies a route map to incoming or outgoing routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changes to the route map will not take effect for existing peers until the peering is reset or a soft reset is performed. Using the <b>clear bgp ipv6</b> command with the <b>soft</b> and <b>in</b> keywords will perform a soft reset.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# exit</pre>	Exits address family configuration mode, and returns to router configuration mode.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# exit</pre>	Exits router configuration mode, and returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> [ <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> ] [ <i>sequence-number</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# route-map rtp permit 10</pre>	<p>Defines a route map and enters route-map configuration mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow this step with a <b>match</b> command.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>match ipv6 address</b> { <i>prefix-list</i> <i>prefix-list-name</i>   <i>access-list-name</i> } <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# match ipv6 address prefix-list list1</pre>	Distributes any routes that have a destination IPv6 network number address permitted by a prefix list, or performs policy routing on packets.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# end</pre>	Exits route-map configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Redistributing Prefixes into IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP

Redistribution is the process of redistributing, or injecting, prefixes from one routing protocol into another routing protocol. This task explains how to inject prefixes from a routing protocol into IPv6 multiprotocol BGP. Specifically, prefixes that are redistributed into IPv6 multiprotocol BGP using the **redistribute** router configuration command are injected into the IPv6 unicast database.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp** *as-number*
4. **address-family ipv6** [*vrf vrf-name*] [**unicast** | **multicast** | **vpn6**]
5. **redistribute bgp** [*process-id*] [**metric** *metric-value*] [**route-map** *map-name*]
6. **end**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>as-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 65000</pre>	Enters router configuration mode for the specified BGP routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>address-family ipv6</b> [ <i>vrf vrf-name</i> ] [ <b>unicast</b>   <b>multicast</b>   <b>vpn6</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6</pre>	Specifies the IPv6 address family, and enters address family configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>unicast</b> keyword specifies the IPv6 unicast address family. By default, the device is placed in configuration mode for the IPv6 unicast address family if a keyword is not specified with the <b>address-family ipv6</b> command.</li> <li>• The <b>multicast</b> keyword specifies IPv6 multicast address prefixes.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>redistribute bgp</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <b>metric</b> <i>metric-value</i> ] [ <b>route-map</b> <i>map-name</i> ] <b>Example:</b>	Redistributes IPv6 routes from one routing domain into another routing domain.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-router-af)# redistribute bgp 64500 metric 5	
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af)# end	Exits address family configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Advertising Routes into IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP

By default, networks that are defined in router configuration mode using the **network** command are injected into the IPv4 unicast database. To inject a network into another database, such as the IPv6 BGP database, you must define the network using the **network** command in address family configuration mode for the other database, as shown for the IPv6 BGP database.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp** *as-number*
4. **address-family ipv6** [**vrf** *vrf-name*] [**unicast** | **multicast** | **vpnv6**]
5. **network** {*network-number* [**mask** *network-mask*] | *nsap-prefix*} [**route-map** *map-tag*]
6. **exit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>as-number</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router bgp 65000	Enters router configuration mode for the specified BGP routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>address-family ipv6</b> [ <b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ] [ <b>unicast</b>   <b>multicast</b>   <b>vpnv6</b> ] <b>Example:</b>	Specifies the IPv6 address family, and enters address family configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>unicast</b> keyword specifies the IPv6 unicast address family. By default, the device is placed in configuration</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6 unicast</pre>	<p>mode for the IPv6 unicast address family if a keyword is not specified with the <b>address-family ipv6</b> command.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>multicast</b> keyword specifies IPv6 multicast address prefixes.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<p><b>network</b> {<i>network-number</i> [<b>mask</b> <i>network-mask</i>]   <i>nsap-prefix</i>} [<b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i>]</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# network 2001:DB8::/24</pre>	<p>Advertises (injects) the specified prefix into the IPv6 BGP database (the routes must first be found in the IPv6 unicast routing table).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The prefix is injected into the database for the address family specified in the previous step.</li> <li>Routes are tagged from the specified prefix as “local origin.”</li> <li>The <i>ipv6-prefix</i> argument in the <b>network</b> command must be in the form documented in RFC 2373 where the address is specified in hexadecimal using 16-bit values between colons.</li> <li>The <i>prefix-length</i> argument is a decimal value that indicates how many of the high-order contiguous bits of the address comprise the prefix (the network portion of the address). A slash mark must precede the decimal value.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	<p><b>exit</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# exit</pre>	<p>Exits address family configuration mode, and returns the device to router configuration mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Repeat this step to exit router configuration mode and return the device to global configuration mode.</li> </ul>

## Advertising IPv4 Routes Between IPv6 BGP Peers

If an IPv6 network is connecting two separate IPv4 networks, IPv6 can be used to advertise the IPv4 routes. Configure the peering using the IPv6 addresses within the IPv4 address family. Set the next hop with a static route or with an inbound route map because the advertised next hop will usually be unreachable. Advertising IPv6 routes between two IPv4 peers is also possible using the same model.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp** *as-number*
4. **neighbor** *peer-group-name* **peer-group**
5. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *ipv6-address*[%] | *peer-group-name*} **remote-as** *autonomous-system-number* [**alternate-as** *autonomous-system-number* ...]
6. **address-family ipv4** [**mdt** | **multicast** | **tunnel** | **unicast** [**vrf** *vrf-name*] | **vrf** *vrf-name*]

7. **neighbor** *ipv6-address* **peer-group** *peer-group-name*
8. **neighbor** {*ip-address* | *peer-group-name* | *ipv6-address* [%]} **route-map** *map-name* {**in** | **out**}
9. **exit**
10. **exit**
11. **route-map** *map-tag* [**permit** | **deny**] [*sequence-number*]
12. **set ip next-hop** *ip-address* [... *ip-address*] [**peer-address**]
13. **end**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>as-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 65000</pre>	Enters router configuration mode for the specified routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor</b> <i>peer-group-name</i> <b>peer-group</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 6peers peer-group</pre>	Creates a multiprotocol BGP peer group.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> [%]   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>remote-as</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i> [ <b>alternate-as</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i> ...] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 6peers remote-as 65002</pre>	Adds the IPv6 address of the neighbor in the specified autonomous system to the IPv6 multiprotocol BGP neighbor table of the local device.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>address-family</b> <b>ipv4</b> [ <b>mdt</b>   <b>multicast</b>   <b>tunnel</b>   <b>unicast</b> [ <b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ]   <b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv4</pre>	Enters address family configuration mode to configure a routing session using standard IPv4 address prefixes.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>neighbor</b> <i>ipv6-address</i> <b>peer-group</b> <i>peer-group-name</i> <b>Example:</b>	Assigns the IPv6 address of a BGP neighbor to a peer group.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:1234::2 peer-group 6peers	
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>neighbor</b> {ip-address   peer-group-name   ipv6-address [%]} <b>route-map</b> map-name {in   out} <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 6peers route-map rmap out	Applies a route map to incoming or outgoing routes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changes to the route map will not take effect for existing peers until the peering is reset or a soft reset is performed. Using the <b>clear bgp ipv6</b> command with the <b>soft</b> and <b>in</b> keywords will perform a soft reset.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af)# exit	Exits address family configuration mode, and returns the device to router configuration mode.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# exit	Exits router configuration mode, and returns the device to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>route-map</b> map-tag [permit   deny] [sequence-number] <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# route-map rmap permit 10	Defines a route map and enters route-map configuration mode.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>set ip next-hop</b> ip-address [... ip-address] [peer-address] <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# set ip next-hop 10.21.8.10	Overrides the next hop advertised to the peer for IPv4 packets.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af)# end	Exits address family configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Assigning BGP Administrative Distance for Multicast BGP Routes

Perform this task to specify an administrative distance for multicast BGP routes to be used in RPF lookups for comparison with unicast routes.



### Caution

Changing the administrative distance of BGP internal routes is not recommended. One problem that can occur is the accumulation of routing table inconsistencies, which can break routing.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp** *as-number*
4. **address-family ipv6** [*vrf vrf-name*] [**unicast** | **multicast** | **vpn6**]
5. **distance bgp** *external-distance internal-distance local-distance*
6. **end**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>as-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 65000</pre>	Enters router configuration mode for the specified routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>address-family ipv6</b> [ <i>vrf vrf-name</i> ] [ <b>unicast</b>   <b>multicast</b>   <b>vpn6</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6</pre>	Specifies the IPv6 address family, and enters address family configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>unicast</b> keyword specifies the IPv6 unicast address family. By default, the router is placed in configuration mode for the IPv6 unicast address family if the <b>unicast</b> keyword is not specified with the <b>address-family ipv6</b> command.</li> <li>• The <b>multicast</b> keyword specifies IPv6 multicast address prefixes.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>distance bgp</b> <i>external-distance internal-distance local-distance</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# distance bgp 10 50 100</pre>	Configures the administrative distance for BGP routes.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# end</pre>	Exits address family configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.



## Generating IPv6 Multicast BGP Updates

Perform this task to generate IPv6 multicast BGP updates that correspond to unicast IPv6 updates received from a peer.

The MBGP translate-update feature generally is used in an MBGP-capable router that peers with a customer site that has only a BGP-capable router; the customer site has not or cannot upgrade its router to an MBGP-capable image. Because the customer site cannot originate MBGP advertisements, the router with which it peers will translate the BGP prefixes into MBGP prefixes, which are used for multicast-source Reverse Path Forwarding (RPF) lookup.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp *as-number***
4. **address-family ipv6 [*vrf vrf-name*] [unicast | multicast | vpnv6]**
5. **neighbor *ipv6-address* translate-update ipv6 multicast [*unicast* | *multicast*]**
6. **end**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
Step 2	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	<b>router bgp <i>as-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 65000</pre>	Enters router configuration mode for the specified routing process.
Step 4	<b>address-family ipv6 [<i>vrf vrf-name</i>] [unicast   multicast   vpnv6]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6</pre>	Specifies the IPv6 address family, and enters address family configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>unicast</b> keyword specifies the IPv6 unicast address family. By default, the router is placed in configuration mode for the IPv6 unicast address family if the <b>unicast</b> keyword is not specified with the <b>address-family ipv6</b> command.</li> <li>• The <b>multicast</b> keyword specifies IPv6 multicast address prefixes.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>neighbor <i>ipv6-address</i> translate-update ipv6 multicast</b> <b>[unicast]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8::2 translate-update ipv6 multicast</pre>	Generates multiprotocol IPv6 BGP updates that correspond to unicast IPv6 updates received from a peer.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# end</pre>	Exits address family configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring the IPv6 BGP Graceful Restart Capability

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. router bgp *as-number*
4. bgp graceful-restart [*restart-time seconds* | *stalepath-time seconds*] [*all*]
5. end

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp <i>as-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 65000</pre>	Enters router configuration mode for the specified routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>bgp graceful-restart [<i>restart-time seconds</i>   <i>stalepath-time seconds</i>] [<i>all</i>]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bgp graceful-restart</pre>	Enables the BGP graceful restart capability.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device(config-router)# end</pre>	Exits router configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Resetting IPv6 BGP Sessions

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **clear bgp ipv6 {unicast | multicast} {\* | autonomous-system-number | ip-address | ipv6-address | peer-group peer-group-name} [soft] [in | out]**
3. **clear bgp ipv6 {unicast | multicast} external [soft] [in | out]**
4. **clear bgp ipv6 {unicast | multicast} peer-group name**
5. **clear bgp ipv6 {unicast | multicast} dampening [ipv6-prefix/prefix-length]**
6. **clear bgp ipv6 {unicast | multicast} flap-statistics [ipv6-prefix/prefix-length | regexp regexp | filter-list list]**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>clear bgp ipv6 {unicast   multicast} {*   autonomous-system-number   ip-address   ipv6-address   peer-group peer-group-name} [soft] [in   out]</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device# clear bgp ipv6 unicast peer-group marketing soft out</pre>	Resets IPv6 BGP sessions.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>clear bgp ipv6 {unicast   multicast} external [soft] [in   out]</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device# clear bgp ipv6 unicast external soft in</pre>	Clears external IPv6 BGP peers.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>clear bgp ipv6 {unicast   multicast} peer-group name</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device# clear bgp ipv6 unicast peer-group marketing</pre>	Clears all members of an IPv6 BGP peer group.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>clear bgp ipv6 {unicast   multicast} dampening</b> <i>[ipv6-prefix/prefix-length]</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# clear bgp ipv6 unicast dampening 2001:DB8::/64</pre>	Clears IPv6 BGP route dampening information and unsuppresses the suppressed routes.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>clear bgp ipv6 {unicast   multicast} flap-statistics</b> <i>[ipv6-prefix/prefix-length   regexp regexp   filter-list list]</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# clear bgp ipv6 unicast flap-statistics filter-list 3</pre>	Clears IPv6 BGP flap statistics.

## Verifying the IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Configuration

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. show bgp ipv6 unicast | multicast *[ipv6-prefix/prefix-length] [longer-prefixes] [labels]*
3. show bgp ipv6 {unicast | multicast} summary
4. show bgp ipv6 {unicast | multicast} dampening dampened-paths
5. debug bgp ipv6 {unicast | multicast} dampening *[prefix-list prefix-list-name]*
6. debug bgp ipv6 unicast | multicast updates *[ipv6-address] [prefix-list prefix-list-name] [in| out]*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>show bgp ipv6 unicast   multicast</b> <i>[ipv6-prefix/prefix-length] [longer-prefixes] [labels]</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; show bgp ipv6 unicast</pre>	(Optional) Displays entries in the IPv6 BGP routing table.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>show bgp ipv6 {unicast   multicast} summary</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; show bgp ipv6 unicast summary</pre>	(Optional) Displays the status of all IPv6 BGP connections.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>show bgp ipv6 {unicast   multicast} dampening dampened-paths</b>	(Optional) Displays IPv6 BGP dampened routes.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device&gt; show bgp ipv6 unicast dampening dampened-paths</pre>	
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>debug bgp ipv6 {unicast   multicast} dampening[<i>prefix-list prefix-list-name</i>]</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device# debug bgp ipv6 unicast dampening</pre>	(Optional) Displays debugging messages for IPv6 BGP dampening packets. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If no prefix list is specified, debugging messages for all IPv6 BGP dampening packets are displayed.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>debug bgp ipv6 unicast   multicast} updates[<i>ipv6-address</i>] [<i>prefix-list prefix-list-name</i>] [<i>in</i>   <i>out</i>]</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>Device# debug bgp ipv6 unicast updates</pre>	(Optional) Displays debugging messages for IPv6 BGP update packets. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If an <i>ipv6-address</i> argument is specified, debugging messages for IPv6 BGP updates to the specified neighbor are displayed.</li> <li>• Use the <b>in</b> keyword to display debugging messages for inbound updates only.</li> <li>• Use the <b>out</b> keyword to display debugging messages for outbound updates only.</li> </ul>

## Configuration Examples for Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6

### Example: Configuring a BGP Process, BGP Router ID, and IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Peer

The following example enables IPv6 globally, configures a BGP process, and establishes a BGP router ID. Also, the IPv6 multiprotocol BGP peer 2001:DB8:0:CC00::1 is configured and activated.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ipv6 unicast-routing
Device(config)# router bgp 65000
Device(config-router)# no bgp default ipv4-unicast
Device(config-router)# bgp router-id 192.168.99.70
Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:CC00::1 remote-as 64600
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6 unicast
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:CC00::1 activate
Device(config-router-af)# end
```

### Example: Configuring an IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Peer Using a Link-Local Address

The following example configures the IPv6 multiprotocol BGP peer FE80::XXXX:BFF:FE0E:A471 over Gigabit Ethernet interface 0/0/0 and sets the route map named nh6 to include the IPv6 next-hop global address of Gigabit Ethernet interface 0/0/0 in BGP updates. The IPv6 next-hop link-local address can be set by the nh6 route map (not shown in the following example) or from the interface specified by the **neighbor update-source** command (as shown in the following example).

```
Device> enable
```

## Example Configuring an IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Peer Group

```

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# router bgp 65000
Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0000:0000:0000:0000:0111 remote-as 64600
Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0000:0000:0000:0000:0111 update-source
gigabitethernet 0/0/0
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0000:0000:0000:0000:0111 activate
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0000:0000:0000:0000:0111 route-map nh6 out
Device(config-router-af)# exit
Device(config-router)# exit
Device(config)# route-map nh6 permit 10
Device(config-route-map)# match ipv6 address prefix-list list1
Device(config-route-map)# set ipv6 next-hop 2001:DB8:5y6::1
Device(config-route-map)# exit
Device(config)# ipv6 prefix-list list1 permit 2001:DB8:2Fy2::/48 le 128
Device(config)# ipv6 prefix-list list1 deny ::/0
Device(config)# end

```



**Note** If you specify only the global IPv6 next-hop address (the *ipv6-address* argument) with the **set ipv6 next-hop** command after specifying the neighbor interface (the *interface-type* argument) with the **neighbor update-source** command, the link-local address of the interface specified with the *interface-type* argument is included as the next hop in the BGP updates. Therefore, only one route map that sets the global IPv6 next-hop address in BGP updates is required for multiple BGP peers that use link-local addresses.

## Example Configuring an IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Peer Group

The following example configures the IPv6 multiprotocol BGP peer group named group1:

```

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# router bgp 65000
Device(config-router)# no bgp default ipv4-unicast
Device(config-router)# neighbor group1 peer-group
Device(config-router)# neighbor group1 remote-as 100
Device(config-router)# neighbor group1 update-source Loopback0
Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8::1 peer-group group1
Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:2:2 peer-group group1
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6 multicast
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8::1 activate
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:2:2 activate
Device(config-router-af)# exit-address-family
Device(config-router)# end

```

## Example: Configuring a Route Map for IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP Prefixes

The following example configures the route map named rtp to permit IPv6 unicast routes from network 2001:DB8::/24 if they match the prefix list named list1:

```

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# router bgp 64900
Device(config-router)# no bgp default ipv4-unicast
Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:CC00::1 remote-as 64700
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6 unicast
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:CC00::1 activate

```

```
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 2001:DB8:0:CC00::1 route-map rtp in
Device(config-router-af)# exit
Device(config)# ipv6 prefix-list cisco seq 10 permit 2001:DB8::/24
Device(config)# route-map rtp permit 10
Device(config-route-map)# match ipv6 address prefix-list list1
Device(config-route-map)# end
```

## Example Redistributing Prefixes into IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP

The following example redistributes BGP routes into the IPv6 multicast database of the local router:

```
router bgp 64900
 no bgp default ipv4-unicast
 address-family ipv6 multicast
 redistribute BGP
```

## Example: Advertising Routes into IPv6 Multiprotocol BGP

The following example injects the IPv6 network 2001:DB8::/24 into the IPv6 unicast database of the local device. (BGP checks that a route for the network exists in the IPv6 unicast database of the local device before advertising the network.)

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# router bgp 65000
Device(config-router)# no bgp default ipv4-unicast
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6 unicast
Device(config-router-af)# network 2001:DB8::/24
Device(config-router-af)# end
```

## Example: Advertising IPv4 Routes Between IPv6 Peers

The following example advertises IPv4 routes between IPv6 peers when the IPv6 network is connecting two separate IPv4 networks. Peering is configured using IPv6 addresses in the IPv4 address family configuration mode. The inbound route map named rmap sets the next hop because the advertised next hop is likely to be unreachable.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# router bgp 65000
Device(config-router)# neighbor 6peers peer-group
Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:1234::2 remote-as 65002
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv4
Device(config-router)# neighbor 6peers activate
Device(config-router)# neighbor 6peers soft-reconfiguration inbound
Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:1234::2 peer-group 6peers
Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:DB8:1234::2 route-map rmap in
Device(config-router)# exit
Device(config)# route-map rmap permit 10
Device(config-route-map)# set ip next-hop 10.21.8.10
Device(config-route-map)# end
```

## Additional References for Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6

### Standards and RFCs

RFCs	Title
RFC 2545	<i>Use of BGP-4 Multiprotocol Extensions for IPv6 Inter-Domain Routing</i>
RFC 2858	<i>Multiprotocol Extensions for BGP-4</i>
RFC 4007	<i>IPv6 Scoped Address Architecture</i>
RFC 4364	BGP MPLS/IP Virtual Private Networks (VPNs)
RFC 4382	MPLS/BGP Layer 3 Virtual Private Network (VPN) Management Information Base
RFC 4659	BGP-MPLS IP Virtual Private Network (VPN) Extension for IPv6 VPN
RFC 4724	<i>Graceful Restart Mechanism for BGP</i>

## Feature Information for Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use the Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 18: Feature Information for Implementing Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
Multiprotocol BGP for IPv6	Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a	Multiprotocol BGP extensions for IPv6 supports the same features and functionality as IPv4 BGP.





## CHAPTER 9

# Configuring IS-IS Routing

- [Information About IS-IS Routing, on page 175](#)
- [How to Configure IS-IS, on page 177](#)
- [Monitoring and Maintaining IS-IS, on page 185](#)
- [Feature Information for IS-IS, on page 186](#)

## Information About IS-IS Routing

Integrated Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS) is an ISO dynamic routing protocol (described in ISO 105890). To enable IS-IS you should create an IS-IS routing process and assign it to a specific interface, rather than to a network. You can specify more than one IS-IS routing process per Layer 3 device by using the multiarea IS-IS configuration syntax. You should then configure the parameters for each instance of the IS-IS routing process.

Small IS-IS networks are built as a single area that includes all the devices in the network. As the network grows larger, the network reorganizes itself into a backbone area made up of all the connected set of Level 2 devices still connected to their local areas. Within a local area, devices know how to reach all system IDs. Between areas, devices know how to reach the backbone, and the backbone devices know how to reach other areas.

Devices establish Level 1 adjacencies to perform routing within a local area (station routing). Devices establish Level 2 adjacencies to perform routing between Level 1 areas (area routing).

A single Cisco device can participate in routing in up to 29 areas and can perform Level 2 routing in the backbone. In general, each routing process corresponds to an area. By default, the first instance of the routing process that is configured performs both Level 1 and Level 2 routing. You can configure additional device instances, which are automatically treated as Level 1 areas. You must configure the parameters for each instance of the IS-IS routing process individually.

For IS-IS multiarea routing, you can configure only one process to perform Level 2 routing, although you can define up to 29 Level 1 areas for each Cisco unit. If Level 2 routing is configured on any process, all additional processes are automatically configured as Level 1. You can configure this process to perform Level 1 routing at the same time. If Level 2 routing is not desired for a device instance, remove the Level 2 capability using the **is-type** command in global configuration mode. Use the **is-type** command also to configure a different device instance as a Level 2 device.

## Nonstop Forwarding Awareness

The integrated IS-IS Nonstop Forwarding (NSF) Awareness feature is supported for IPv4G. The feature allows customer premises equipment (CPE) devices that are NSF-aware to help NSF-capable devices perform nonstop forwarding of packets. The local device is not necessarily performing NSF, but its NSF awareness capability allows the integrity and accuracy of the routing database and the link-state database on the neighboring NSF-capable device to be maintained during the switchover process.

The integrated IS-IS Nonstop Forwarding (NSF) Awareness feature is automatically enabled and requires no configuration.

## IS-IS Global Parameters

The following are the optional IS-IS global parameters that you can configure:

- You can force a default route into an IS-IS routing domain by configuring a default route that is controlled by a route map. You can also specify the other filtering options that are configurable under a route map.
- You can configure the device to ignore IS-IS link-state packets (LSPs) that are received with internal checksum errors, or to purge corrupted LSPs, and cause the initiator of the LSP to regenerate it.
- You can assign passwords to areas and domains.
- You can create aggregate addresses that are represented in the routing table by a summary address (based on route summarization). Routes learned from other routing protocols can also be summarized. The metric used to advertise the summary is the smallest metric of all the specific routes.
- You can set an overload bit.
- You can configure the LSP refresh interval and the maximum time that an LSP can remain in the device database without a refresh.
- You can set the throttling timers for LSP generation, shortest path first computation, and partial route computation.
- You can configure the device to generate a log message when an IS-IS adjacency changes state (Up or Down).
- If a link in the network has a maximum transmission unit (MTU) size of less than 1500 bytes, you can lower the LSP MTU so that routing still occurs.
- You can use the **partition avoidance** command to prevent an area from becoming partitioned when full connectivity is lost among a Level 1-2 border device, adjacent Level 1 devices, and end hosts.

## IS-IS Interface Parameters

You can optionally configure certain interface-specific IS-IS parameters independently from other attached devices. However, if you change default value, such as multipliers and time intervals, it makes sense to also change them on multiple devices and interfaces. Most of the interface parameters can be configured for level 1, level 2, or both.

The following are the interface-level parameters that you can configure:

- The default metric on the interface that is used as a value for the IS-IS metric and assigned when quality of service (QoS) routing is not performed.

- The hello interval (length of time between hello packets sent on the interface) or the default hello packet multiplier used on the interface to determine the hold time sent in IS-IS hello packets. The hold time determines how long a neighbor waits for another hello packet before declaring the neighbor down. This determines how quickly a failed link or neighbor is detected so that routes can be recalculated. Change the hello multiplier in circumstances where hello packets are lost frequently and IS-IS adjacencies are failing unnecessarily. You can raise the hello multiplier and lower the hello interval correspondingly to make the hello protocol more reliable, without increasing the time required to detect a link failure.
- Other time intervals:
  - Complete sequence number PDU (CSNP) interval—CSNPs are sent by the designated device to maintain database synchronization.
  - Retransmission interval—This is the time between retransmission of IS-IS LSPs for point-to-point links.
  - IS-IS LSP retransmission throttle interval—This is the maximum rate (number of milliseconds between packets) at which IS-IS LSPs are resent on point-to-point links. This interval is different from the retransmission interval, which is the time between successive retransmissions of the same LSP.
- Designated device-election priority, which allows you to reduce the number of adjacencies required on a multiaccess network, which in turn reduces the amount of routing protocol traffic and the size of the topology database.
- The interface circuit type, which is the type of adjacency required for neighbors on the specified interface.
- Password authentication for the interface.

## How to Configure IS-IS

The following sections provide information on how to enable IS-IS on an interface, how to configure IS-IS global parameters, and how to configure IS-IS interface parameters.

### Default IS-IS Configuration

**Table 19: Default IS-IS Configuration**

Feature	Default Setting
Ignore link-state PDU (LSP) errors	Enabled.
IS-IS type	Conventional IS-IS—The router acts as both a Level 1 (station) and a router.  Multiarea IS-IS—The first instance of the IS-IS routing process is a router. Remaining instances are Level 1 routers.
Default-information originate	Disabled.
Log IS-IS adjacency state changes.	Disabled.

Feature	Default Setting
LSP generation throttling timers	Maximum interval between two consecutive occurrences—5000 milliseconds. Initial LSP generation delay—50 milliseconds. Hold time between the first and second LSP generation—200 milliseconds.
LSP maximum lifetime (without a refresh)	1200 seconds (20 minutes) before the LSP packet is deleted.
LSP refresh interval	Every 900 seconds (15 minutes).
Maximum LSP packet size	1497 bytes.
NSF Awareness	Enabled. Allows Layer 3 devices to continue forwarding packets from a nonstop forwarding-capable router during hardware or software changes.
Partial route computation (PRC) throttling timers	Maximum PRC wait interval—5000 milliseconds. Initial PRC calculation delay after a topology change—50 milliseconds. Hold time between the first and second PRC calculation—200 milliseconds.
Partition avoidance	Disabled.
Password	No area or domain password is defined, and authentication is disabled.
Set-overload-bit	Disabled. When enabled, if no arguments are entered, the overload bit is set immediately and remains set until you enter the <b>no set-overload-bit</b> command.
Shortest path first (SPF) throttling timers	Maximum interval between consecutive SFPS—5000 milliseconds. Initial SPF calculation after a topology change—200 milliseconds. Hold time between the first and second SPF calculation—50 milliseconds.
Summary-address	Disabled.

## Enabling IS-IS Routing

To enable IS-IS, you specify a name and network entity title (NET) for each routing process. You then enable IS-IS routing on the interface and specify the area for each instance of the routing process.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router isis</b> [ <i>area tag</i> ]  <b>Example:</b>	Enables the IS-IS routing for the specified routing process and enters IS-IS routing configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config)# router isis tag1</pre>	<p>(Optional) Use the <i>area tag</i> argument to identify the area to which the IS-IS router is assigned. You must enter a value if you are configuring multiple IS-IS areas.</p> <p>The first IS-IS instance configured is Level 1-2 by default. Later instances are automatically Level 1. You can change the level of routing by using the <b>is-type</b> global configuration command.</p>
<b>Step 3</b>	<p><b>net</b> network-entity-title</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router)# net 47.0004.004d.0001.0001.0c11.1111.00</pre>	Configures the NETs for the routing process. If you are configuring multiarea IS-IS, specify a NET for each routing process. You can specify a name for a NET and for an address.
<b>Step 4</b>	<p><b>is-type</b> {level-1   level-1-2   level-2-only}</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router)# is-type level-2-only</pre>	<p>(Optional) Configures the router to act as a Level 1 (station) router, a Level 2 (area) router for multi-area routing, or both (the default):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>level-1</b>—Acts as a station router only.</li> <li>• <b>level-1-2</b>—Acts as both a station router and an area router.</li> <li>• <b>level 2</b>—Acts as an area router only.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<p><b>exit</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router)# end</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<p><b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</pre>	Specifies an interface to route IS-IS, and enters interface configuration mode. If the interface is not already configured as a Layer 3 interface, enter the <b>no switchport</b> command to configure the interface into Layer 3 mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<p><b>ip router isis</b> [<i>area tag</i>]</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip router isis tag1</pre>	Configures an IS-IS routing process on the interface and attaches an area designator to the routing process.
<b>Step 8</b>	<p><b>ip address</b> <i>ip-address-mask</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.5 255.255.255.0</pre>	Defines the IP address for the interface. An IP address is required on all the interfaces in an area enabled for IS-IS if any one interface is configured for IS-IS routing.
<b>Step 9</b>	<p><b>end</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# <b>end</b>	
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show isis [area tag] database detail</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# show isis database detail	Verifies your entries.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring IS-IS Global Parameters

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router isis</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# router isis	Specifies the IS-IS routing protocol and enters router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>default-information originate [route-map map-name]</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# default-information originate route-map map1	(Optional) Forces a default route into the IS-IS routing domain. If you enter <b>route-map map-name</b> , the routing process generates the default route if the route map is satisfied.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ignore-lsp-errors</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# ignore-lsp-errors	(Optional) Configures the router to ignore LSPs with internal checksum errors, instead of purging the LSPs. This command is enabled by default (corrupted LSPs are dropped). To purge the corrupted LSPs, enter the <b>no ignore-lsp-errors</b> router configuration command.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>area-password password</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# area-password 1password	(Optional) Configures the area authentication password that is inserted in Level 1 (station router level) LSPs.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>domain-password</b> <i>password</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# domain-password 2password</pre>	(Optional) Configures the routing domain authentication password that is inserted in Level 2 (area router level) LSPs.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>summary-address</b> <i>address mask</i> [ <b>level-1</b>   <b>level-1-2</b>   <b>level-2</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# summary-address 10.1.0.0 255.255.0.0 level-2</pre>	(Optional) Creates a summary of addresses for a given level.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>set-overload-bit</b> [ <b>on-startup</b> { <i>seconds</i>   <b>wait-for-bgp</b> }] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# set-overload-bit on-startup wait-for-bgp</pre>	<p>(Optional) Sets an overload bit to allow other routers to ignore the router in their shortest path first (SPF) calculations if the router is having problems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (Optional) <b>on-startup</b>—Sets the overload bit only on startup. If <b>on-startup</b> is not specified, the overload bit is set immediately and remains set until you enter the <b>no set-overload-bit</b> command. If <b>on-startup</b> is specified, you must either enter number of seconds or enter <b>wait-for-bgp</b>.</li> <li>• <i>seconds</i>—When the <b>on-startup</b> keyword is configured, it causes the overload bit to be set when the system is started and remains set for the specified number of seconds. The range is from 5 to 86400 seconds.</li> <li>• <b>wait-for-bgp</b>—When the <b>on-startup</b> keyword is configured, it causes the overload bit to be set when the system is started and remains set until BGP has converged. If BGP does not signal the IS-IS that it is converged, the IS-IS will turn off the overload bit after 10 minutes.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>lsp-refresh-interval</b> <i>seconds</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# lsp-refresh-interval 1080</pre>	(Optional) Sets an LSP refresh interval, in seconds. The range is from 1 to 65535 seconds. The default is to send LSP refreshes every 900 seconds (15 minutes).
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>max-lsp-lifetime</b> <i>seconds</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# max-lsp-lifetime 1000</pre>	(Optional) Sets the maximum time that LSP packets remain in the router database without being refreshed. The range is from 1 to 65535 seconds. The default is 1200 seconds (20 minutes). After the specified time interval, the LSP packet is deleted.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>lsp-gen-interval</b> [ <b>level-1</b>   <b>level-2</b> ] <i>lsp-max-wait</i> [ <i>lsp-initial-wait</i> <i>lsp-second-wait</i> ] <b>Example:</b>	<p>(Optional) Sets the IS-IS LSP generation throttling timers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>lsp-max-wait</i>—Maximum interval (in milliseconds) between two consecutive occurrences of an LSP being</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-router)# lsp-gen-interval level-2 2 50 100</pre>	<p>generated. The range is from 1 to 120; the default is 5000.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>lsp-initial-wait</i>—Initial LSP generation delay (in milliseconds). The range is from 1 to 10000; the default is 50.</li> <li>• <i>lsp-second-wait</i>—Hold time between the first and second LSP generation (in milliseconds). The range is from 1 to 10000; the default is 200.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 12</b>	<p><b>spf-interval</b> [level-1   level-2] <i>spf-max-wait</i> [<i>spf-initial-wait</i> <i>spf-second-wait</i>]</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router)# spf-interval level-2 5 10 20</pre>	<p>(Optional) Sets IS-IS SPF throttling timers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>spf-max-wait</i>—Maximum interval between consecutive SFPs (in milliseconds). The range is from 1 to 120; the default is 5000.</li> <li>• <i>spf-initial-wait</i>—Initial SFP calculation after a topology change (in milliseconds). The range is from 1 to 10000; the default is 50.</li> <li>• <i>spf-second-wait</i>—Hold time between the first and second SFP calculation (in milliseconds). The range is from 1 to 10000; the default is 200.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 13</b>	<p><b>prc-interval</b> <i>prc-max-wait</i> [<i>prc-initial-wait</i> <i>prc-second-wait</i>]</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router)# prc-interval 5 10 20</pre>	<p>(Optional) Sets IS-IS PRC throttling timers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>prc-max-wait</i>—Maximum interval (in milliseconds) between two consecutive PRC calculations. The range is from 1 to 120; the default is 5000.</li> <li>• <i>prc-initial-wait</i>—Initial PRC calculation delay (in milliseconds) after a topology change. The range is from 1 to 10,000; the default is 50.</li> <li>• <i>prc-second-wait</i>—Hold time between the first and second PRC calculation (in milliseconds). The range is 1 to 10,000; the default is 200.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 14</b>	<p><b>log-adjacency-changes</b> [all]</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router)# log-adjacency-changes all</pre>	<p>(Optional) Sets the router to log IS-IS adjacency state changes. Enter <b>all</b> to include all changes generated by events that are not related to the IS-IS hellos, including End System-to-Intermediate System PDUs and link state packets (LSPs).</p>
<b>Step 15</b>	<p><b>lsp-mtu</b> <i>size</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>Device(config-router)# lsp mtu 1560</pre>	<p>(Optional) Specifies the maximum LSP packet size, in bytes. The range is from 128 to 4352; the default is 1497 bytes.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If a link in the network has a reduced MTU size, you must change the LSP MTU size on all the devices in the network.</p>



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 16</b>	<b>partition avoidance</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# partition avoidance</pre>	(Optional) Causes an IS-IS Level 1-2 border router to stop advertising the Level 1 area prefix into the Level 2 backbone when full connectivity is lost among the border router, all adjacent level 1 routers, and end hosts.
<b>Step 17</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 18</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring IS-IS Interface Parameters

To configure IS-IS interface-specific parameters, perform this procedure:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</pre>	Specifies the interface to be configured and enter interface configuration mode. If the interface is not already configured as a Layer 3 interface, enter the <b>no switchport</b> command to configure the interface in Layer 3 mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>isis metric <i>default-metric</i> [level-1   level-2]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# isis metric 15</pre>	(Optional) Configures the metric (or cost) for the specified interface. The range is from 0 to 63; the default is 10. If no level is entered, the default is to apply to both Level 1 and Level 2 routers.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>isis hello-interval {seconds   minimal} [level-1   level-2]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# isis hello-interval minimal</pre>	(Optional) Specifies the length of time between the hello packets sent by the switch. By default, a value that is three times the hello interval <i>seconds</i> is advertised as the <i>holdtime</i> in the hello packets sent. With smaller hello intervals, topological changes are detected faster, but there is more routing traffic. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>minimal</b>—Causes the system to compute the hello interval based on the hello multiplier so that the resulting hold time is 1 second.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>seconds</i>—Range is from 1 to 65535; the default is 10 seconds.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>isis hello-multiplier</b> <i>multiplier</i> [level-1   level-2] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# isis hello-multiplier 5</pre>	(Optional) Specifies the number of IS-IS hello packets a neighbor must miss before the device should declare the adjacency as down. The range is from 3 to 1000; the default is 3  <b>Note</b> Using a smaller hello multiplier causes fast convergence, but might result in routing instability.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>isis csnp-interval</b> <i>seconds</i> [level-1   level-2] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# isis csnp-interval 15</pre>	(Optional) Configures the IS-IS complete sequence number PDU (CSNP) interval for the interface. The range is from 0 to 65535; the default is 10 seconds.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>isis retransmit-interval</b> <i>seconds</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# isis retransmit-interval 7</pre>	(Optional) Configures the number of seconds between the retransmission of IS-IS LSPs for point-to-point links. Specify an integer that is greater than the expected round-trip delay between any two routers on the network. The range is from 0 to 65535; the default is 5 seconds.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>isis retransmit-throttle-interval</b> <i>milliseconds</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# isis retransmit-throttle-interval 4000</pre>	(Optional) Configures the IS-IS LSP retransmission throttle interval, which is the maximum rate (number of milliseconds between packets) at which IS-IS LSPs will be resent on point-to-point links. The range is from 0 to 65535. The default is determined by the <b>isis lsp-interval</b> command.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>isis priority</b> <i>value</i> [level-1   level-2] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# isis priority 50</pre>	(Optional) Configures the priority to use for the designated device. The range is from 0 to 127; the default is 64.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>isis circuit-type</b> {level-1   level-1-2   level-2-only} <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# isis circuit-type level-1-2</pre>	(Optional) Configures the type of adjacency required for neighbors on the specified interface (specify the interface circuit type). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>level-1</b>—Level 1 adjacency is established if there is at least one area address that is common to both this node and its neighbors.</li> <li><b>level-1-2</b>—Level 1 and Level 2 adjacency is established if the neighbor is also configured as both Level 1 and Level 2, and there is at least one area in common. If there is no area in common, a Level 2 adjacency is established. This is the default option.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>level 2</b>—Level 2 adjacency is established. If the neighbor router is a Level 1 router, no adjacency is established.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>isis password</b> <i>password</i> [ <b>level-1</b>   <b>level-2</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# isis password secret</pre>	(Optional) Configures the authentication password for an interface. By default, authentication is disabled. Specifying Level 1 or Level 2 enables the password only for Level 1 or Level 2 routing, respectively. If you do not specify a level, the default is Level 1 and Level 2.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Monitoring and Maintaining IS-IS

You can display specific IS-IS statistics, such as the contents of routing tables, caches, and databases. You can also display information about specific interfaces, filters, or neighbors.

The following table lists the privileged EXEC commands for clearing and displaying IS-IS routing.

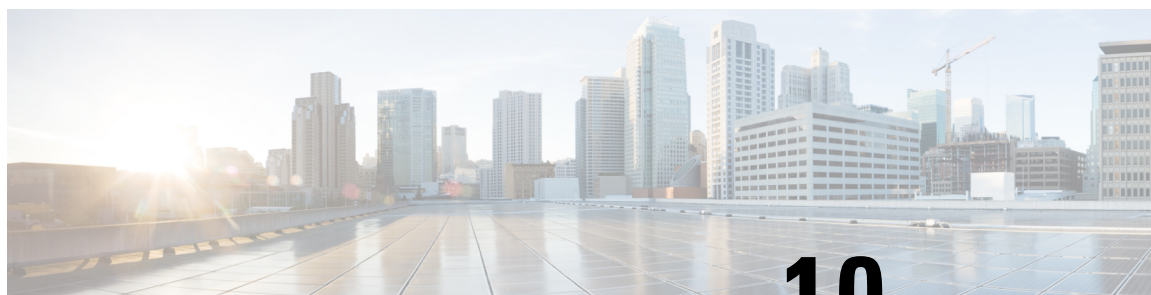
**Table 20: IS-IS show Commands**

Command
<b>show ip route isis</b>
<b>show isis database</b>
<b>show isis routes</b>
<b>show isis spf-log</b>
<b>show isis topology</b>
<b>show route-map</b>
<b>trace clns</b> <i>destination</i>

## Feature Information for IS-IS

*Table 21: Feature Information for IS-IS*

Feature Name	Release	Feature Information
Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS)	Cisco IOS XE Everest 16.5.1a	This feature was introduced.
	Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1	IS-IS now supports Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA) authentication—SHA-1, SHA-256, SHA-384, and SHA-512.



## CHAPTER 10

# Configuring Multi-VRF CE

- [Information About Multi-VRF CE, on page 187](#)
- [How to Configure Multi-VRF CE, on page 190](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Multi-VRF CE, on page 205](#)
- [Feature Information for Multi-VRF CE, on page 209](#)

## Information About Multi-VRF CE

Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) provide a secure way for customers to share bandwidth over an ISP backbone network. A VPN is a collection of sites sharing a common routing table. A customer site is connected to the service-provider network by one or more interfaces, and the service provider associates each interface with a VPN routing table, called a VPN routing/forwarding (VRF) table.

The switch supports multiple VPN routing/forwarding (multi-VRF) instances in customer edge (CE) devices (multi-VRF CE) when the it is running the Network Advantage license. Multi-VRF CE allows a service provider to support two or more VPNs with overlapping IP addresses.



---

**Note** The switch does not use Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) to support VPNs.

---

## Understanding Multi-VRF CE

Multi-VRF CE is a feature that allows a service provider to support two or more VPNs, where IP addresses can be overlapped among the VPNs. Multi-VRF CE uses input interfaces to distinguish routes for different VPNs and forms virtual packet-forwarding tables by associating one or more Layer 3 interfaces with each VRF. Interfaces in a VRF can be either physical, such as Ethernet ports, or logical, such as VLAN SVIs, but an interface cannot belong to more than one VRF at any time.



---

**Note** Multi-VRF CE interfaces must be Layer 3 interfaces.

---

Multi-VRF CE includes these devices:

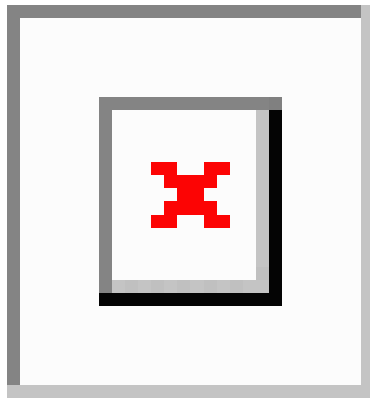
- Customer edge (CE) devices provide customers access to the service-provider network over a data link to one or more provider edge routers. The CE device advertises the site's local routes to the router and learns the remote VPN routes from it. A switch can be a CE.
- Provider edge (PE) routers exchange routing information with CE devices by using static routing or a routing protocol such as BGP, RIPv2, OSPF, or EIGRP. The PE is only required to maintain VPN routes for those VPNs to which it is directly attached, eliminating the need for the PE to maintain all of the service-provider VPN routes. Each PE router maintains a VRF for each of its directly connected sites. Multiple interfaces on a PE router can be associated with a single VRF if all of these sites participate in the same VPN. Each VPN is mapped to a specified VRF. After learning local VPN routes from CEs, a PE router exchanges VPN routing information with other PE routers by using internal BGP (IBPG).
- Provider routers or core routers are any routers in the service provider network that do not attach to CE devices.

With multi-VRF CE, multiple customers can share one CE, and only one physical link is used between the CE and the PE. The shared CE maintains separate VRF tables for each customer and switches or routes packets for each customer based on its own routing table. Multi-VRF CE extends limited PE functionality to a CE device, giving it the ability to maintain separate VRF tables to extend the privacy and security of a VPN to the branch office.

## Network Topology

The figure shows a configuration using switches as multiple virtual CEs. This scenario is suited for customers who have low bandwidth requirements for their VPN service, for example, small companies. In this case, multi-VRF CE support is required in the switches. Because multi-VRF CE is a Layer 3 feature, each interface in a VRF must be a Layer 3 interface.

**Figure 7: Switches Acting as Multiple Virtual CEs**



When the CE switch receives a command to add a Layer 3 interface to a VRF, it sets up the appropriate mapping between the VLAN ID and the policy label (PL) in multi-VRF-CE-related data structures and adds the VLAN ID and PL to the VLAN database.

When multi-VRF CE is configured, the Layer 3 forwarding table is conceptually partitioned into two sections:

- The multi-VRF CE routing section contains the routes from different VPNs.
- The global routing section contains routes to non-VPN networks, such as the Internet.

VLAN IDs from different VRFs are mapped into different policy labels, which are used to distinguish the VRFs during processing. For each new VPN route learned, the Layer 3 setup function retrieves the policy label by using the VLAN ID of the ingress port and inserts the policy label and new route to the multi-VRF CE routing section. If the packet is received from a routed port, the port internal VLAN ID number is used; if the packet is received from an SVI, the VLAN number is used.

## Packet-Forwarding Process

This is the packet-forwarding process in a multi-VRF-CE-enabled network:

- When the switch receives a packet from a VPN, the switch looks up the routing table based on the input policy label number. When a route is found, the switch forwards the packet to the PE.
- When the ingress PE receives a packet from the CE, it performs a VRF lookup. When a route is found, the router adds a corresponding MPLS label to the packet and sends it to the MPLS network.
- When an egress PE receives a packet from the network, it strips the label and uses the label to identify the correct VPN routing table. Then it performs the normal route lookup. When a route is found, it forwards the packet to the correct adjacency.
- When a CE receives a packet from an egress PE, it uses the input policy label to look up the correct VPN routing table. If a route is found, it forwards the packet within the VPN.

## Network Components

To configure VRF, you create a VRF table and specify the Layer 3 interface associated with the VRF. Then configure the routing protocols in the VPN and between the CE and the PE. BGP is the preferred routing protocol used to distribute VPN routing information across the provider's backbone. The multi-VRF CE network has three major components:

- VPN route target communities—lists of all other members of a VPN community. You need to configure VPN route targets for each VPN community member.
- Multiprotocol BGP peering of VPN community PE routers—propagates VRF reachability information to all members of a VPN community. You need to configure BGP peering in all PE routers within a VPN community.
- VPN forwarding—transports all traffic between all VPN community members across a VPN service-provider network.

## VRF-Aware Services

IP services can be configured on global interfaces, and these services run within the global routing instance. IP services are enhanced to run on multiple routing instances; they are VRF-aware. Any configured VRF in the system can be specified for a VRF-aware service.

VRF-Aware services are implemented in platform-independent modules. VRF means multiple routing instances in Cisco IOS. Each platform has its own limit on the number of VRFs it supports.

VRF-aware services have the following characteristics:

- The user can ping a host in a user-specified VRF.
- ARP entries are learned in separate VRFs. The user can display Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) entries for specific VRFs.

# How to Configure Multi-VRF CE

## Default Multi-VRF CE Configuration

*Table 22: Default VRF Configuration*

Feature	Default Setting
VRF	Disabled. No VRFs are defined.
Maps	No import maps, export maps, or route maps are defined.
VRF maximum routes	Fast Ethernet switches: 8000 Gigabit Ethernet switches: 12000.
Forwarding table	The default for an interface is the global routing table.



## Multi-VRF CE Configuration Guidelines

**Note**

To use multi-VRF CE, you must have the Network Advantage license enabled on your switch.

- A switch with multi-VRF CE is shared by multiple customers, and each customer has its own routing table.
- Because customers use different VRF tables, the same IP addresses can be reused. Overlapped IP addresses are allowed in different VPNs.
- Multi-VRF CE lets multiple customers share the same physical link between the PE and the CE. Trunk ports with multiple VLANs separate packets among customers. Each customer has its own VLAN.
- Multi-VRF CE does not support all MPLS-VRF functionality. It does not support label exchange, LDP adjacency, or labeled packets.
- For the PE router, there is no difference between using multi-VRF CE or using multiple CEs. In Figure 41-6, multiple virtual Layer 3 interfaces are connected to the multi-VRF CE device.
- The switch supports configuring VRF by using physical ports, VLAN SVIs, or a combination of both. The SVIs can be connected through an access port or a trunk port.
- A customer can use multiple VLANs as long as they do not overlap with those of other customers. A customer's VLANs are mapped to a specific routing table ID that is used to identify the appropriate routing tables stored on the switch.
- The switch supports one global network and up to 256 VRFs.
- Most routing protocols (BGP, OSPF, RIP, and static routing) can be used between the CE and the PE. However, we recommend using external BGP (EBGP) for these reasons:
  - BGP does not require multiple algorithms to communicate with multiple CEs.
  - BGP is designed for passing routing information between systems run by different administrations.
  - BGP makes it easy to pass attributes of the routes to the CE.
- Multi-VRF CE does not affect the packet switching rate.
- VPN multicast is not supported.
- You can enable VRF on a private VLAN, and the reverse.
- You cannot enable VRF when policy-based routing (PBR) is enabled on an interface, and the reverse.
- You cannot enable VRF when Web Cache Communication Protocol (WCCP) is enabled on an interface, and the reverse.

## Configuring VRFs

For complete syntax and usage information for the commands, see the switch command reference for this release and the *Cisco IOS Switching Services Command Reference*.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ip routing</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>ip routing</b>	Enables IP routing.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip vrf vrf-name</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>ip vrf vpn1</b>	Names the VRF, and enter VRF configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>rd route-distinguisher</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-vrf)# <b>rd 100:2</b>	Creates a VRF table by specifying a route distinguisher. Enter either an AS number and an arbitrary number (xxx:y) or an IP address and arbitrary number (A.B.C.D:y)
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>route-target {export   import   both}</b> <b>route-target-ext-community</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-vrf)# <b>route-target both 100:2</b>	Creates a list of import, export, or import and export route target communities for the specified VRF. Enter either an AS system number and an arbitrary number (xxx:y) or an IP address and an arbitrary number (A.B.C.D:y). The <i>route-target-ext-community</i> should be the same as the <i>route-distinguisher</i> entered in Step 4.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>import map route-map</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-vrf)# <b>import map importmap1</b>	(Optional) Associates a route map with the VRF.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-vrf)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Specifies the Layer 3 interface to be associated with the VRF, and enter interface configuration mode. The interface can be a routed port or SVI.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>ip vrf forwarding vrf-name</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip vrf forwarding vpn1</b>	Associates the VRF with the Layer 3 interface.  <b>Note</b> When <b>ip vrf forwarding</b> is enabled in the Management Interface, the access point does not join.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# <b>end</b>	
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show ip vrf [brief   detail   interfaces] [vrf-name]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip vrf interfaces vpn1	Verifies the configuration. Displays information about the configured VRFs.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring VRF-Aware Services

These services are VRF-Aware:

- ARP
- Ping
- Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)
- Unicast Reverse Path Forwarding (uRPF)
- Syslog
- Traceroute
- FTP and TFTP

### Configuring VRF-Aware Services for ARP

For complete syntax and usage information for the commands, see the switch command reference for this release and the *Cisco IOS Switching Services Command Reference, Release 12.4*.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show ip arp vrf vrf-name</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip arp vrf vpn1	Displays the ARP table in the specified VRF.

### Configuring VRF-Aware Services for Ping

For complete syntax and usage information for the commands, see the switch command reference for this release and the *Cisco IOS Switching Services Command Reference, Release 12.4*.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>ping vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> <b>ip-host</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# ping vrf vpn1 ip-host	Displays the ARP table in the specified VRF.

## Configuring VRF-Aware Services for SNMP

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>snmp-server trap authentication vrf</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# snmp-server trap authentication vrf	Enables SNMP traps for packets on a VRF.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>snmp-server engineID remote host vrf vpn-instance engine-id string</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# snmp-server engineID remote 172.16.20.3 vrf vpn1 80000009030000B064EFE100	Configures a name for the remote SNMP engine on a switch.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>snmp-server host host vrf vpn-instance traps community</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# snmp-server host 172.16.20.3 vrf vpn1 traps comaccess	Specifies the recipient of an SNMP trap operation and specifies the VRF table to be used for sending SNMP traps.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>snmp-server host host vrf vpn-instance informs community</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# snmp-server host 172.16.20.3 vrf vpn1 informs comaccess	Specifies the recipient of an SNMP inform operation and specifies the VRF table to be used for sending SNMP informs.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>snmp-server user user group remote host vrf vpn-instance security model</b> <b>Example:</b>	Adds a user to an SNMP group for a remote host on a VRF for SNMP access.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# snmp-server user abcd remote 172.16.20.3 vrf vpn1 priv v2c 3des secure3des	
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring VRF-Aware Services for NTP

Configuring VRF-aware services for NTP comprises configuring the NTP servers and the NTP client interfaces connected to the NTP servers.

### Before you begin

Ensure connectivity between the NTP client and servers. Configure a valid IP address and subnet on the client interfaces that are connected to the NTP servers.

### Configuring VRF-Aware Services for NTP on NTP Client

Perform the following steps on the client interface that is connected to the NTP server.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password, if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>interface</b> gigabitethernet 1/0/1	Specifies the Layer 3 interface to be associated with the VRF, and enters the interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>vrf forwarding</b> <i>vrf-name</i>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-if)# <b>vrf forwarding</b> A	Associates the VRF with the Layer 3 interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip address</b> <i>ip-address subnet-mask</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>ip address 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0</b>	Enter the IP address for the interface.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>no shutdown</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>no shutdown</b>	Enables the interface.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) <b>exit</b>	Exits the interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>ntp authentication-key</b> <i>number md5 md5-number</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>ntp authentication-key 1 md5 cisco123</b>	Defines the authentication keys. The device does not synchronize to a time source unless the source has one of these authentication keys and the key number is specified by the <b>ntp trusted-key number</b> command.  <b>Note</b> The authentication key <i>number</i> and the MD5 <i>passwd</i> must be the same on both the client and server.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>ntp authenticate</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>ntp authenticate</b>	Enables the NTP authentication feature. NTP authentication is disabled by default.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>ntp trusted-key</b> <i>key-number</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>ntp trusted-key 1</b>	Specifies one or more keys that an NTP server must provide in its NTP packets in order for the NTP client to synchronize to it. The range for trusted keys is from 1 to 65535. This command provides protection against accidentally synchronizing the NTP client to an NTP server that is not trusted.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>ntp server vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config) # <b>ntp server vrf A 1.1.1.2 key 1</b>	Configures NTP Server in the specified VRF.

### Configuring VRF-Aware Services for NTP on the NTP Server

Perform the following steps on the NTP server.

#### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device> <b>enable</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ntp authentication-key number md5 passowrd</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>ntp authentication-key 1 md5 cisco123</b>	Defines the authentication keys. The device does not synchronize to a time source unless the source has one of these authentication keys and the key number is specified by the <b>ntp trusted-key number</b> command.  <b>Note</b> The authentication key <i>number</i> and the MD5 <i>passowrd</i> must be the same on both the client and server.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ntp authenticate</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>ntp authenticate</b>	Enables the NTP authentication feature. NTP authentication is disabled by default.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ntp trusted-key key-number</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>ntp trusted-key 1</b>	Specifies one or more keys that an NTP server must provide in its NTP packets in order for the NTP client to synchronize to it. The range for trusted keys is from 1 to 65535. This command provides protection against accidentally synchronizing the NTP client to an NTP server that is not trusted.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/3</b>	Specifies the Layer 3 interface to be associated with the VRF, and enters the interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>vrf forwarding vrf-name</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>vrf forwarding A</b>	Associates the VRF with the Layer 3 interface.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>ip address ip-address subnet-mask</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip address 1.1.1.2 255.255.255.0</b>	Enter the IP address for the interface.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) <b>exit</b>	Exits the interface configuration mode.

## Configuring VRF-Aware Services for uRPF

uRPF can be configured on an interface assigned to a VRF, and source lookup is done in the VRF table.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>no switchport</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>no switchport</b>	Removes the interface from Layer 2 configuration mode if it is a physical interface.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip vrf forwarding <i>vrf-name</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip vrf forwarding vpn2</b>	Configures VRF on the interface.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip address <i>ip-address</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip address 10.1.5.1</b>	Enters the IP address for the interface.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>ip verify unicast reverse-path</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip verify unicast reverse-path</b>	Enables uRPF on the interface.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.



## Configuring VRF-Aware RADIUS

To configure VRF-Aware RADIUS, you must first enable AAA on a RADIUS server. The switch supports the **ip vrf forwarding** *vrf-name* server-group configuration and the **ip radius source-interface** global configuration commands, as described in the Per VRF AAA Feature Guide.

## Configuring VRF-Aware Services for Syslog

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>logging on</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>logging on</b>	Enables or temporarily disables logging of storage router event message.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>logging host ip-address vrf vrf-name</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>logging host 10.10.1.0 vrf vpn1</b>	Specifies the host address of the syslog server where logging messages are to be sent.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>logging buffered logging buffered size debugging</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>logging buffered critical 6000 debugging</b>	Logs messages to an internal buffer.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>logging trap debugging</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>logging trap debugging</b>	Limits the logging messages sent to the syslog server.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>logging facility facility</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>logging facility user</b>	Sends system logging messages to a logging facility.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring VRF-Aware Services for Traceroute

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>traceroute vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> <i>ipaddress</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# traceroute vrf vpn2 10.10.1.1	Specifies the name of a VPN VRF in which to find the destination address.

## Configuring VRF-Aware Services for FTP and TFTP

So that FTP and TFTP are VRF-aware, you must configure some FTP/TFTP CLIs. For example, if you want to use a VRF table that is attached to an interface, say E1/0, you need to configure the `ip tftp source-interface E1/0` or the `ip ftp source-interface E1/0` command to inform TFTP or FTP server to use a specific routing table. In this example, the VRF table is used to look up the destination IP address. These changes are backward-compatible and do not affect existing behavior. That is, you can use the source-interface CLI to send packets out a particular interface even if no VRF is configured on that interface.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ip ftp source-interface</b> <i>interface-type interface-number</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# ip ftp source-interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2	Specifies the source IP address for FTP connections.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)#end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip tftp source-interface</b> <i>interface-type interface-number</i> <b>Example:</b>	Specifies the source IP address for TFTP connections.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# ip tftp source-interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2	
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring Multicast VRFs

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ip routing</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# ip routing	Enables IP routing mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip vrf vrf-name</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# ip vrf vpn1	Names the VRF, and enter VRF configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>rd route-distinguisher</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-vrf)# rd 100:2	Creates a VRF table by specifying a route distinguisher. Enter either an AS number and an arbitrary number (xxx:y) or an IP address and an arbitrary number (A.B.C.D:y)
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>route-target {export   import   both}</b> <i>route-target-ext-community</i>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-vrf)# route-target import 100:2	Creates a list of import, export, or import and export route target communities for the specified VRF. Enter either an AS system number and an arbitrary number (xxx:y) or an IP address and an arbitrary number (A.B.C.D:y). The <i>route-target-ext-community</i> should be the same as the <i>route-distinguisher</i> entered in Step 4.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>import map route-map</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-vrf)# import map importmap1	(Optional) Associates a route map with the VRF.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>ip multicast-routing vrf <i>vrf-name</i> distributed</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-vrf)# ip multicast-routing vrf vpn1 distributed</pre>	(Optional) Enables global multicast routing for VRF table.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>interface <i>interface-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-vrf)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/2</pre>	Specifies the Layer 3 interface to be associated with the VRF, and enter interface configuration mode. The interface can be a routed port or an SVI.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>ip vrf forwarding <i>vrf-name</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding vpn1</pre>	Associates the VRF with the Layer 3 interface.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>ip address <i>ip-address</i> mask</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.5.1 255.255.255.0</pre>	Configures IP address for the Layer 3 interface.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>ip pim sparse-dense mode</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-dense mode</pre>	Enables PIM on the VRF-associated Layer 3 interface.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>show ip vrf [brief   detail   interfaces] [<i>vrf-name</i>]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip vrf detail vpn1</pre>	Verifies the configuration. Displays information about the configured VRFs.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring a VPN Routing Session

Routing within the VPN can be configured with any supported routing protocol (RIP, OSPF, EIGRP, or BGP) or with static routing. The configuration shown here is for OSPF, but the process is the same for other protocols.



**Note** To configure an EIGRP routing process to run within a VRF instance, you must configure an autonomous-system number by entering the **autonomous-system** *autonomous-system-number* address-family configuration mode command.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router ospf process-id vrf vrf-name</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# router ospf 1 vrf vpn1	Enables OSPF routing, specifies a VPN forwarding table, and enter router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>log-adjacency-changes</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# log-adjacency-changes	(Optional) Logs changes in the adjacency state. This is the default state.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>redistribute bgp autonomous-system-number subnets</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# redistribute bgp 10 subnets	Sets the switch to redistribute information from the BGP network to the OSPF network.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>network network-number area area-id</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# network 1 area 2	Defines a network address and mask on which OSPF runs and the area ID for that network address.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip ospf process-id</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ip ospf 1	Verifies the configuration of the OSPF network.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Configuring BGP PE to CE Routing Sessions

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router bgp <i>autonomous-system-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 2</pre>	Configures the BGP routing process with the AS number passed to other BGP routers, and enter router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>network <i>network-number</i> mask <i>network-mask</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# network 5 mask 255.255.255.0</pre>	Specifies a network and mask to announce using BGP.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>redistribute ospf <i>process-id</i> match internal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# redistribute ospf 1 match internal</pre>	Sets the switch to redistribute OSPF internal routes.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>network <i>network-number</i> area <i>area-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# network 5 area 2</pre>	Defines a network address and mask on which OSPF runs and the area ID for that network address.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>address-family ipv4 vrf <i>vrf-name</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv4 vrf vpn1</pre>	Defines BGP parameters for PE to CE routing sessions, and enter VRF address-family mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>neighbor <i>address</i> remote-as <i>as-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b>	Defines a BGP session between PE and CE routers.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-router)# neighbor 10.1.1.2 remote-as 2	
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>neighbor address activate</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# neighbor 10.2.1.1 activate	Activates the advertisement of the IPv4 address family.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show ip bgp [ipv4] [neighbors]</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ip bgp ipv4 neighbors	Verifies BGP configuration.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Monitoring Multi-VRF CE

*Table 23: Commands for Displaying Multi-VRF CE Information*

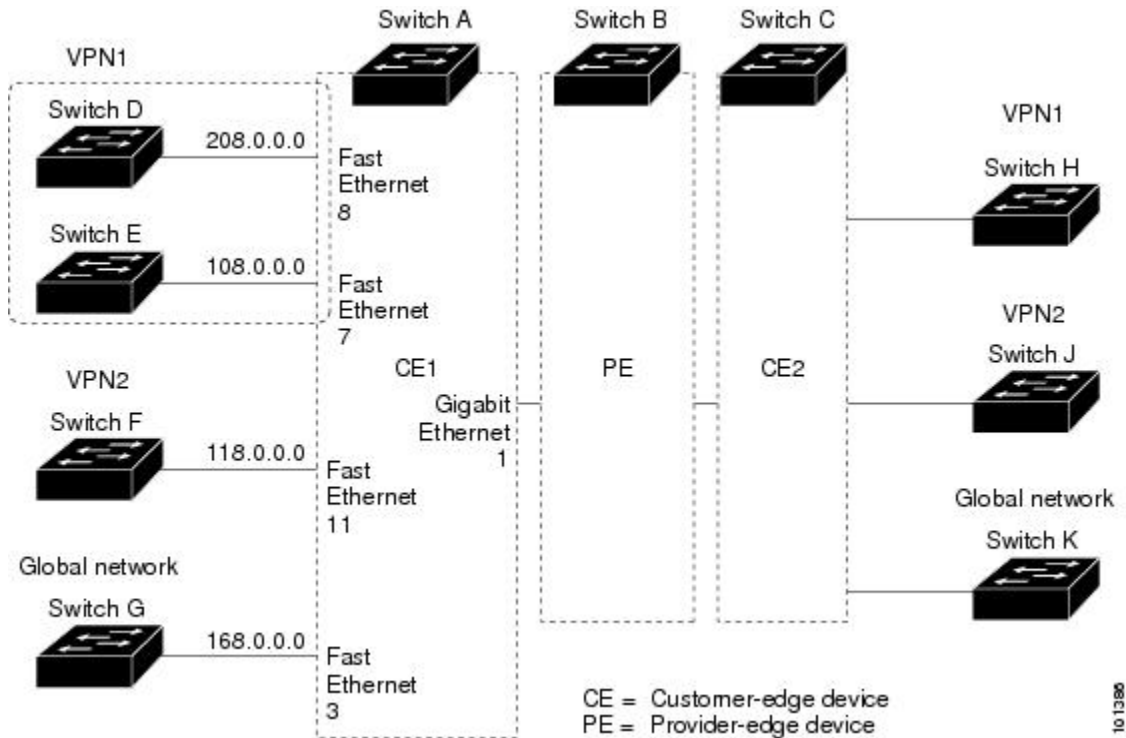
<b>show ip protocols vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i>	Displays routing protocol information as a VRF.
<b>show ip route vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> [ <b>connected</b> ] [ <i>protocol</i> [ <i>as-number</i> ]] [ <b>list</b> ] [ <b>mobile</b> ] [ <b>odr</b> ] [ <b>profile</b> ] [ <b>static</b> ] [ <b>summary</b> ] [ <b>supernets-only</b> ]	Displays IP routing table information as a VRF.
<b>show ip vrf</b> [ <b>brief</b>   <b>detail</b>   <b>interfaces</b> ] [ <i>vrf-name</i> ]	Displays information about the defined VRFs.

## Configuration Examples for Multi-VRF CE

### Multi-VRF CE Configuration Example

OSPF is the protocol used in VPN1, VPN2, and the global network. BGP is used in the CE to PE connections. The examples following the illustration show how to configure a switch as CE Switch A, and the VRF configuration for customer switches D and F. Commands for configuring CE Switch C and the other customer switches are not included but would be similar.

Figure 8: Multi-VRF CE Configuration Example



On Switch A, enable routing and configure VRF.

```
Device# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Device(config)# ip routing
Device(config)# ip vrf v11
Device(config-vrf)# rd 800:1
Device(config-vrf)# route-target export 800:1
Device(config-vrf)# route-target import 800:1
Device(config-vrf)# exit
Device(config)# ip vrf v12
Device(config-vrf)# rd 800:2
Device(config-vrf)# route-target export 800:2
Device(config-vrf)# route-target import 800:2
Device(config-vrf)# exit
```

Configure the loopback and physical interfaces on Switch A. Gigabit Ethernet port 1 is a trunk connection to the PE. Gigabit Ethernet ports 8 and 11 connect to VPNs:

```
Device(config)# interface loopback1
Device(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding v11
Device(config-if)# ip address 8.8.1.8 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit

Device(config)# interface loopback2
Device(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding v12
Device(config-if)# ip address 8.8.2.8 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit

Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/5
Device(config-if)# switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q
```



```

Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no ip address
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/8
Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 208
Device(config-if)# no ip address
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/11
Device(config-if)# switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no ip address
Device(config-if)# exit

```

Configure the VLANs used on Switch A. VLAN 10 is used by VRF 11 between the CE and the PE. VLAN 20 is used by VRF 12 between the CE and the PE. VLANs 118 and 208 are used for the VPNs that include Switch F and Switch D, respectively:

```

Device(config)# interface vlan10
Device(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding v11
Device(config-if)# ip address 38.0.0.8 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface vlan20
Device(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding v12
Device(config-if)# ip address 83.0.0.8 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface vlan118
Device(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding v12
Device(config-if)# ip address 118.0.0.8 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface vlan208
Device(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding v11
Device(config-if)# ip address 208.0.0.8 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit

```

Configure OSPF routing in VPN1 and VPN2.

```

Device(config)# router ospf 1 vrf v11
Device(config-router)# redistribute bgp 800 subnets
Device(config-router)# network 208.0.0.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
Device(config-router)# exit
Device(config)# router ospf 2 vrf v12
Device(config-router)# redistribute bgp 800 subnets
Device(config-router)# network 118.0.0.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
Device(config-router)# exit

```

Configure BGP for CE to PE routing.

```

Device(config)# router bgp 800
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv4 vrf v12
Device(config-router-af)# redistribute ospf 2 match internal
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 83.0.0.3 remote-as 100
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 83.0.0.3 activate
Device(config-router-af)# network 8.8.2.0 mask 255.255.255.0
Device(config-router-af)# exit
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv4 vrf v11
Device(config-router-af)# redistribute ospf 1 match internal
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 38.0.0.3 remote-as 100
Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 38.0.0.3 activate
Device(config-router-af)# network 8.8.1.0 mask 255.255.255.0
Device(config-router-af)# end

```

Switch D belongs to VPN 1. Configure the connection to Switch A by using these commands.

```

Device# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Device(config)# ip routing
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/2
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 208.0.0.20 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit

Device(config)# router ospf 101
Device(config-router)# network 208.0.0.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
Device(config-router)# end

```

Switch F belongs to VPN 2. Configure the connection to Switch A by using these commands.

```

Device# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Device(config)# ip routing
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# no ip address
Device(config-if)# exit

Device(config)# interface vlan118
Device(config-if)# ip address 118.0.0.11 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit

Device(config)# router ospf 101
Device(config-router)# network 118.0.0.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
Device(config-router)# end

```

When used on switch B (the PE router), these commands configure only the connections to the CE device, Switch A.

```

Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)# ip vrf v1
Router(config-vrf)# rd 100:1
Router(config-vrf)# route-target export 100:1
Router(config-vrf)# route-target import 100:1
Router(config-vrf)# exit

Router(config)# ip vrf v2
Router(config-vrf)# rd 100:2
Router(config-vrf)# route-target export 100:2
Router(config-vrf)# route-target import 100:2
Router(config-vrf)# exit
Router(config)# ip cef
Router(config)# interface Loopback1
Router(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding v1
Router(config-if)# ip address 3.3.1.3 255.255.255.0
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# interface Loopback2
Router(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding v2
Router(config-if)# ip address 3.3.2.3 255.255.255.0
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/1/0.10
Router(config-if)# encapsulation dot1q 10
Router(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding v1
Router(config-if)# ip address 38.0.0.3 255.255.255.0

```

```

Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/1/0.20
Router(config-if)# encapsulation dot1q 20
Router(config-if)# ip vrf forwarding v2
Router(config-if)# ip address 83.0.0.3 255.255.255.0
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# router bgp 100
Router(config-router)# address-family ipv4 vrf v2
Router(config-router-af)# neighbor 83.0.0.8 remote-as 800
Router(config-router-af)# neighbor 83.0.0.8 activate
Router(config-router-af)# network 3.3.2.0 mask 255.255.255.0
Router(config-router-af)# exit
Router(config-router)# address-family ipv4 vrf v1
Router(config-router-af)# neighbor 38.0.0.8 remote-as 800
Router(config-router-af)# neighbor 38.0.0.8 activate
Router(config-router-af)# network 3.3.1.0 mask 255.255.255.0
Router(config-router-af)# end

```

## Feature Information for Multi-VRF CE

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 24: Feature Information for Multi VRF CE**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
Multi-VRF CE	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	Multi-VRF CE allows a service provide to support two or more VPNs, where IP addresses can be overlapped among the VPNs.  The feature was introduced.





## CHAPTER 11

# Configuring Unicast Reverse Path Forwarding

- [Configuring Unicast Reverse Path Forwarding, on page 211](#)

## Configuring Unicast Reverse Path Forwarding

The unicast reverse path forwarding (unicast RPF) feature helps to mitigate problems that are caused by the introduction of malformed or forged (spoofed) IP source addresses into a network by discarding IP packets that lack a verifiable IP source address. For example, a number of common types of denial-of-service (DoS) attacks, including Smurf and Tribal Flood Network (TFN), can take advantage of forged or rapidly changing source IP addresses to allow attackers to thwart efforts to locate or filter the attacks. For Internet service providers (ISPs) that provide public access, Unicast RPF deflects such attacks by forwarding only packets that have source addresses that are valid and consistent with the IP routing table. This action protects the network of the ISP, its customer, and the rest of the Internet.



### Note

- Unicast RPF is supported in Network Essentials.

For detailed IP unicast RPF configuration information, see the *Other Security Features* chapter in the *Cisco IOS Security Configuration Guide*.





## CHAPTER 12

# Protocol-Independent Features

- [Protocol-Independent Features, on page 213](#)

## Protocol-Independent Features

This section describes IP routing protocol-independent features that are available on switches running the Network Essentials feature set. For a complete description of the IP routing protocol-independent commands in this chapter, see the “IP Routing Protocol-Independent Commands” chapter of the *Cisco IOS IP Command Reference, Volume 2 of 3: Routing Protocols*.

## Distributed Cisco Express Forwarding

### Information About Cisco Express Forwarding

Cisco Express Forwarding (CEF) is a Layer 3 IP switching technology used to optimize network performance. CEF implements an advanced IP look-up and forwarding algorithm to deliver maximum Layer 3 switching performance. CEF is less CPU-intensive than fast switching route caching, allowing more CPU processing power to be dedicated to packet forwarding. In a switch stack, the hardware uses distributed CEF (dCEF) in the stack. In dynamic networks, fast switching cache entries are frequently invalidated because of routing changes, which can cause traffic to be process switched using the routing table, instead of fast switched using the route cache. CEF and dCEF use the Forwarding Information Base (FIB) lookup table to perform destination-based switching of IP packets.

The two main components in CEF and dCEF are the distributed FIB and the distributed adjacency tables.

- The FIB is similar to a routing table or information base and maintains a mirror image of the forwarding information in the IP routing table. When routing or topology changes occur in the network, the IP routing table is updated, and those changes are reflected in the FIB. The FIB maintains next-hop address information based on the information in the IP routing table. Because the FIB contains all known routes that exist in the routing table, CEF eliminates route cache maintenance, is more efficient for switching traffic, and is not affected by traffic patterns.
- Nodes in the network are said to be adjacent if they can reach each other with a single hop across a link layer. CEF uses adjacency tables to prepend Layer 2 addressing information. The adjacency table maintains Layer 2 next-hop addresses for all FIB entries.

Because the switch or switch stack uses Application Specific Integrated Circuits (ASICs) to achieve Gigabit-speed line rate IP traffic, CEF or dCEF forwarding applies only to the software-forwarding path, that is, traffic that is forwarded by the CPU.

## How to Configure Cisco Express Forwarding

CEF or distributed CEF is enabled globally by default. If for some reason it is disabled, you can re-enable it by using the **ip cef** or **ip cef distributed** global configuration command.

The default configuration is CEF or dCEF enabled on all Layer 3 interfaces. Entering the **no ip route-cache cef** interface configuration command disables CEF for traffic that is being forwarded by software. This command does not affect the hardware forwarding path. Disabling CEF and using the **debug ip packet detail** privileged EXEC command can be useful to debug software-forwarded traffic. To enable CEF on an interface for the software-forwarding path, use the **ip route-cache cef** interface configuration command.



**Caution** Although the **no ip route-cache cef** interface configuration command to disable CEF on an interface is visible in the CLI, we strongly recommend that you do not disable CEF or dCEF on interfaces except for debugging purposes.

To enable CEF or dCEF globally and on an interface for software-forwarded traffic if it has been disabled:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ip cef</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>ip cef</b>	Enables CEF operation on a non-stacking switch. Go to Step 4.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip cef distributed</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>ip cef distributed</b>	Enables CEF operation on a active switch.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip route-cache cef</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-if)# <b>ip route-cache cef</b>	Enables CEF on the interface for software-forwarded traffic.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip cef</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip cef</pre>	Displays the CEF status on all interfaces.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>show cef linecard [detail]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show cef linecard detail</pre>	(Optional) Displays CEF-related interface information on a non-stacking switch.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show cef linecard [slot-number] [detail]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show cef linecard 5 detail</pre>	(Optional) Displays CEF-related interface information on a switch by stack member for all switches in the stack or for the specified switch.  (Optional) For <i>slot-number</i> , enter the stack member switch number.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show cef interface [interface-id]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show cef interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</pre>	Displays detailed CEF information for all interfaces or the specified interface.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>show adjacency</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show adjacency</pre>	Displays CEF adjacency table information.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Load-Balancing Scheme for CEF Traffic

### Restrictions for Configuring a Load-Balancing Scheme for CEF Traffic

- You must globally configure load balancing on device or device stack members in the same way.
- Per-packet load balancing for CEF traffic is not supported.

## CEF Load-Balancing Overview

CEF load balancing allows you to optimize resources by distributing traffic over multiple paths. CEF load balancing works based on a combination of source and destination packet information.

You can configure load balancing on a per-destination. Because load-balancing decisions are made on the outbound interface, load balancing must be configured on the outbound interface.

## Per-Destination Load Balancing for CEF Traffic

Per-destination load balancing allows the device to use multiple paths to achieve load sharing across multiple source-destination host pairs. Packets for a given source-destination host pair are guaranteed to take the same path, even if multiple paths are available. Traffic streams destined for different pairs tend to take different paths.

Per-destination load balancing is enabled by default when you enable CEF. To use per-destination load balancing, you do not perform any additional tasks once CEF is enabled. Per-destination is the load-balancing method of choice for most situations.

Because per-destination load balancing depends on the statistical distribution of traffic, load sharing becomes more effective as the number of source-destination host pairs increases.

You can use per-destination load balancing to ensure that packets for a given host pair arrive in order. All packets intended for a certain host pair are routed over the same link (or links).

## Load-Balancing Algorithms for CEF Traffic

The following load-balancing algorithms are provided for use with CEF traffic. Select a load-balancing algorithm with the **ip cef load-sharing algorithm** command.

- **Original algorithm**—The original load-balancing algorithm produces distortions in load sharing across multiple devices because the same algorithm was used on every device. Depending on your network environment, you should select the algorithm.
- **Universal algorithm**—The universal load-balancing algorithm allows each device on the network to make a different load sharing decision for each source-destination address pair, which resolves load-sharing imbalances. The device is set to perform universal load sharing by default.

## How to Configure a Load-Balancing for CEF Traffic

The following sections provide information on configuring load-balancing for CEF traffic.

### Enabling or Disabling CEF Per-Destination Load Balancing

To enable or disable CEF per-destination load balancing, perform the following procedure:

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **interface *interface-id***
4. **[no] ip load-sharing per-destination**
5. **end**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>enable</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</b>	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the Layer 3 interface to configure.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>[no] ip load-sharing per-destination</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip load-sharing per-destination</b>	Enables per-destination load balancing for CEF on the interface.  The <b>no ip load-sharing per-destination</b> command disables per-destination load balancing for CEF on the interface.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Selecting a Tunnel Load-Balancing Algorithm for CEF Traffic

Select the tunnel algorithm when your network environment contains only a few source and destination pairs. The device is set to perform universal load sharing by default.

To select a tunnel load-balancing algorithm for CEF traffic, perform the following procedure:

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **ip cef load-sharing algorithm {original | universal [id] }**
4. **end**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>enable</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip cef load-sharing algorithm {original   universal [id]}</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>ip cef load-sharing algorithm universal</b>	Selects a CEF load-balancing algorithm. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>original</b> keyword sets the load-balancing algorithm to the original algorithm, based on a source IP and destination IP hash.</li> <li>• The <b>universal</b> keyword sets the load-balancing algorithm to one that uses a source IP, destination IP, Layer 3 Protocol, Layer 4 source port, Layer 4 destination port and IPv6 flow label (for IPv6 traffic).</li> <li>• The <i>id</i> argument is a fixed identifier.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>end</b>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuration Examples for CEF Traffic Load-Balancing

The following sections provide configuration examples for CEF traffic load-balancing.

## Example: Enabling or Disabling CEF Per-Destination Load Balancing

Per-destination load balancing is enabled by default when you enable CEF. The following example shows how to disable per-destination load balancing:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface Ethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# no ip load-sharing per-destination
Device(config-if)# end
```

# Number of Equal-Cost Routing Paths

## Information About Equal-Cost Routing Paths

When a router has two or more routes to the same network with the same metrics, these routes can be thought of as having an equal cost. The term parallel path is another way to see occurrences of equal-cost routes in a routing table. If a router has two or more equal-cost paths to a network, it can use them concurrently. Parallel paths provide redundancy in case of a circuit failure and also enable a router to load balance packets over the available paths for more efficient use of available bandwidth. Equal-cost routes are supported across switches in a stack.

Even though the router automatically learns about and configures equal-cost routes, you can control the maximum number of parallel paths supported by an IP routing protocol in its routing table. Although the switch software allows a maximum of 32 equal-cost routes, the switch hardware will never use more than 16 paths per route.

## How to Configure Equal-Cost Routing Paths

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router {rip   ospf   eigrp}</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# router eigrp	Enters router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>maximum-paths <i>maximum</i></b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# maximum-paths 2	Sets the maximum number of parallel paths for the protocol routing table. The range is from 1 to 16; the default is 4 for most IP routing protocols, but only 1 for BGP.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show ip protocols</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ip protocols	Verifies the setting in the <i>Maximum path</i> field.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# copy running-config startup-config	

## Static Unicast Routes

### Information About Static Unicast Routes

Static unicast routes are user-defined routes that cause packets moving between a source and a destination to take a specified path. Static routes can be important if the router cannot build a route to a particular destination and are useful for specifying a gateway of last resort to which all unroutable packets are sent.

The switch retains static routes until you remove them. However, you can override static routes with dynamic routing information by assigning administrative distance values. Each dynamic routing protocol has a default administrative distance, as listed in Table 41-16. If you want a static route to be overridden by information from a dynamic routing protocol, set the administrative distance of the static route higher than that of the dynamic protocol.

**Table 25: Dynamic Routing Protocol Default Administrative Distances**

Route Source	Default Distance
Connected interface	0
Static route	1
Enhanced IGRP summary route	5
Internal Enhanced IGRP	90
IGRP	100
OSPF	110
Internal BGP	200
Unknown	225

Static routes that point to an interface are advertised through RIP, IGRP, and other dynamic routing protocols, whether or not static **redistribute** router configuration commands were specified for those routing protocols. These static routes are advertised because static routes that point to an interface are considered in the routing table to be connected and hence lose their static nature. However, if you define a static route to an interface that is not one of the networks defined in a network command, no dynamic routing protocols advertise the route unless a **redistribute** static command is specified for these protocols.

When an interface goes down, all static routes through that interface are removed from the IP routing table. When the software can no longer find a valid next hop for the address specified as the forwarding router's address in a static route, the static route is also removed from the IP routing table.

## Configuring Static Unicast Routes

Static unicast routes are user-defined routes that cause packets moving between a source and a destination to take a specified path. Static routes can be important if the router cannot build a route to a particular destination and are useful for specifying a gateway of last resort to which all unroutable packets are sent.

Follow these steps to configure a static route:

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ip route prefix mask {address   interface} [distance]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ip route prefix mask gigabitethernet 1/0/4</pre>	Establish a static route.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show ip route</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip route</pre>	Displays the current state of the routing table to verify the configuration.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

### What to do next

Use the **no ip route prefix mask {address| interface}** global configuration command to remove a static route. The device retains static routes until you remove them.

# Default Routes and Networks

## Information About Default Routes and Networks

A router might not be able to learn the routes to all other networks. To provide complete routing capability, you can use some routers as smart routers and give the remaining routers default routes to the smart router. (Smart routers have routing table information for the entire internetwork.) These default routes can be dynamically learned or can be configured in the individual routers. Most dynamic interior routing protocols include a mechanism for causing a smart router to generate dynamic default information that is then forwarded to other routers.

If a router has a directly connected interface to the specified default network, the dynamic routing protocols running on that device generate a default route. In RIP, it advertises the pseudonetwork 0.0.0.0.

A router that is generating the default for a network also might need a default of its own. One way a router can generate its own default is to specify a static route to the network 0.0.0.0 through the appropriate device.

When default information is passed through a dynamic routing protocol, no further configuration is required. The system periodically scans its routing table to choose the optimal default network as its default route. In IGRP networks, there might be several candidate networks for the system default. Cisco routers use administrative distance and metric information to set the default route or the gateway of last resort.

If dynamic default information is not being passed to the system, candidates for the default route are specified with the **ip default-network** global configuration command. If this network appears in the routing table from any source, it is flagged as a possible choice for the default route. If the router has no interface on the default network, but does have a path to it, the network is considered as a possible candidate, and the gateway to the best default path becomes the gateway of last resort.

## How to Configure Default Routes and Networks

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ip default-network <i>network number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>ip default-network 1</code>	Specifies a default network.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>show ip route</b> <b>Example:</b>	Displays the selected default route in the gateway of last resort display.



	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show ip route	
Step 5	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Route Maps to Redistribute Routing Information

### Information About Route Maps

The switch can run multiple routing protocols simultaneously, and it can redistribute information from one routing protocol to another. Redistributing information from one routing protocol to another applies to all supported IP-based routing protocols.

You can also conditionally control the redistribution of routes between routing domains by defining enhanced packet filters or route maps between the two domains. The **match** and **set** route-map configuration commands define the condition portion of a route map. The **match** command specifies that a criterion must be matched. The **set** command specifies an action to be taken if the routing update meets the conditions defined by the match command. Although redistribution is a protocol-independent feature, some of the **match** and **set** route-map configuration commands are specific to a particular protocol.

One or more **match** commands and one or more **set** commands follow a **route-map** command. If there are no **match** commands, everything matches. If there are no **set** commands, nothing is done, other than the match. Therefore, you need at least one **match** or **set** command.



**Note** A route map with no **set** route-map configuration commands is sent to the CPU, which causes high CPU utilization.

You can also identify route-map statements as **permit** or **deny**. If the statement is marked as a deny, the packets meeting the match criteria are sent back through the normal forwarding channels (destination-based routing). If the statement is marked as permit, set clauses are applied to packets meeting the match criteria. Packets that do not meet the match criteria are forwarded through the normal routing channel.

### How to Configure a Route Map

Although each of Steps 3 through 14 in the following section is optional, you must enter at least one **match** route-map configuration command and one **set** route-map configuration command.



**Note** The keywords are the same as defined in the procedure to control the route distribution.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> [ <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> ] [ <i>sequence number</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# route-map rip-to-ospf permit 4</pre>	<p>Defines any route maps used to control redistribution and enter route-map configuration mode.</p> <p><i>map-tag</i>—A meaningful name for the route map. The <b>redistribute</b> router configuration command uses this name to reference this route map. Multiple route maps might share the same map tag name.</p> <p>(Optional) If <b>permit</b> is specified and the match criteria are met for this route map, the route is redistributed as controlled by the set actions. If <b>deny</b> is specified, the route is not redistributed.</p> <p><i>sequence number</i> (Optional)— Number that indicates the position a new route map is to have in the list of route maps already configured with the same name.</p>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>match as-path</b> <i>path-list-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)#match as-path 10</pre>	Matches a BGP AS path access list.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>match community-list</b> <i>community-list-number</i> [ <b>exact</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# match community-list 150</pre>	Matches a BGP community list.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>match ip address</b> { <i>access-list-number</i>   <i>access-list-name</i> } [ <i>...access-list-number</i>   <i>...access-list-name</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# match ip address 5 80</pre>	Matches a standard access list by specifying the name or number. It can be an integer from 1 to 199.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>match metric</b> <i>metric-value</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# match metric 2000</pre>	Matches the specified route metric. The <i>metric-value</i> can be an EIGRP metric with a specified value from 0 to 4294967295.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>match ip next-hop</b> { <i>access-list-number</i>   <i>access-list-name</i> } [ <i>...access-list-number</i>   <i>...access-list-name</i> ] <b>Example:</b>	Matches a next-hop router address passed by one of the access lists specified (numbered from 1 to 199).

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-route-map)# match ip next-hop 8 45	
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>match tag tag value</b> [...tag-value] <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# match tag 3500	Matches the specified tag value in a list of one or more route tag values. Each can be an integer from 0 to 4294967295.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>match interface type number</b> [...type-number] <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# match interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1	Matches the specified next hop route out one of the specified interfaces.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>match ip route-source</b> {access-list-number   access-list-name} [...access-list-number   ...access-list-name] <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# match ip route-source 10 30	Matches the address specified by the specified advertised access lists.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>match route-type</b> {local   internal   external [type-1   type-2]} <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# match route-type local	Matches the specified <b>route-type</b> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>local</b>—Locally generated BGP routes.</li> <li>• <b>internal</b>—OSPF intra-area and interarea routes or EIGRP internal routes.</li> <li>• <b>external</b>—OSPF external routes (Type 1 or Type 2) or EIGRP external routes.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>set dampening half-life reuse suppress max-suppress-time</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# set dampening 30 1500 10000 120	Sets BGP route dampening factors.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>set local-preference value</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# set local-preference 100	Assigns a value to a local BGP path.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>set origin</b> {igp   egp as   incomplete} <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# set origin igp	Sets the BGP origin code.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 15</b>	<b>set as-path</b> {tag   <b>prepend</b> <i>as-path-string</i> } <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# set as-path tag</pre>	Modifies the BGP autonomous system path.
<b>Step 16</b>	<b>set level</b> {level-1   level-2   level-1-2   stub-area   backbone} <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# set level level-1-2</pre>	Sets the level for routes that are advertised into the specified area of the routing domain. The <b>stub-area</b> and <b>backbone</b> are OSPF NSSA and backbone areas.
<b>Step 17</b>	<b>set metric</b> <i>metric value</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# set metric 100</pre>	Sets the metric value to give the redistributed routes (for EIGRP only). The <i>metric value</i> is an integer from -294967295 to 294967295.
<b>Step 18</b>	<b>set metric</b> <i>bandwidth delay reliability loading mtu</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# set metric 10000 10 255 1 1500</pre>	Sets the metric value to give the redistributed routes (for EIGRP only): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>bandwidth</i>—Metric value or IGRP bandwidth of the route in kilobits per second in the range 0 to 4294967295</li> <li>• <i>delay</i>—Route delay in tens of microseconds in the range 0 to 4294967295.</li> <li>• <i>reliability</i>—Likelihood of successful packet transmission expressed as a number between 0 and 255, where 255 means 100 percent reliability and 0 means no reliability.</li> <li>• <i>loading</i>—Effective bandwidth of the route expressed as a number from 0 to 255 (255 is 100 percent loading).</li> <li>• <i>mtu</i>—Minimum maximum transmission unit (MTU) size of the route in bytes in the range 0 to 4294967295.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 19</b>	<b>set metric-type</b> {type-1   type-2} <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# set metric-type type-2</pre>	Sets the OSPF external metric type for redistributed routes.
<b>Step 20</b>	<b>set metric-type internal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# set metric-type internal</pre>	Sets the multi-exit discriminator (MED) value on prefixes advertised to external BGP neighbor to match the IGP metric of the next hop.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 21</b>	<b>set weight <i>number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# set weight 100</pre>	Sets the BGP weight for the routing table. The value can be from 1 to 65535.
<b>Step 22</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-route-map)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 23</b>	<b>show route-map</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show route-map</pre>	Displays all route maps configured or only the one specified to verify configuration.
<b>Step 24</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## How to Control Route Distribution

Although each of Steps 3 through 14 in the following section is optional, you must enter at least one **match** route-map configuration command and one **set** route-map configuration command.



**Note** The keywords are the same as defined in the procedure to configure the route map for redistribution.

The metrics of one routing protocol do not necessarily translate into the metrics of another. For example, the RIP metric is a hop count, and the IGRP metric is a combination of five qualities. In these situations, an artificial metric is assigned to the redistributed route. Uncontrolled exchanging of routing information between different routing protocols can create routing loops and seriously degrade network operation.

If you have not defined a default redistribution metric that replaces metric conversion, some automatic metric translations occur between routing protocols:

- RIP can automatically redistribute static routes. It assigns static routes a metric of 1 (directly connected).
- Any protocol can redistribute other routing protocols if a default mode is in effect.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router { rip   ospf   eigrp }</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router eigrp 10</pre>	Enters router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>redistribute protocol [process-id] {level-1   level-1-2   level-2} [metric metric-value] [metric-type type-value] [match internal   external type-value] [tag tag-value] [route-map map-tag] [weight weight] [subnets]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# redistribute eigrp 1</pre>	Redistributes routes from one routing protocol to another routing protocol. If no route-maps are specified, all routes are redistributed. If the keyword <b>route-map</b> is specified with no <i>map-tag</i> , no routes are distributed.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>default-metric number</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# default-metric 1024</pre>	Cause the current routing protocol to use the same metric value for all redistributed routes (RIP and OSPF).
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>default-metric bandwidth delay reliability loading mtu</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# default-metric 1000 100 250 100 1500</pre>	Cause the EIGRP routing protocol to use the same metric value for all non-EIGRP redistributed routes.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show route-map</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show route-map</pre>	Displays all route maps configured or only the one specified to verify configuration.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Policy-Based Routing

### Restrictions for Configuring PBR

- Policy-based routing (PBR) is not supported to forward traffic into GRE tunnel. This applies to PBR applied on any interface and forwarding traffic into GRE tunnel (by means of PBR next-hop or default next-hop or set interface).

- PBR is not supported on GRE tunnel itself (applied under the GRE tunnel itself).

## Information About Policy-Based Routing

You can use policy-based routing (PBR) to configure a defined policy for traffic flows. By using PBR, you can have more control over routing by reducing the reliance on routes derived from routing protocols. PBR can specify and implement routing policies that allow or deny paths based on:

- Identity of a particular end system
- Application
- Protocol

You can use PBR to provide equal-access and source-sensitive routing, routing based on interactive versus batch traffic, or routing based on dedicated links. For example, you could transfer stock records to a corporate office on a high-bandwidth, high-cost link for a short time while transmitting routine application data such as e-mail over a low-bandwidth, low-cost link.

With PBR, you classify traffic using access control lists (ACLs) and then make traffic go through a different path. PBR is applied to incoming packets. All packets received on an interface with PBR enabled are passed through route maps. Based on the criteria defined in the route maps, packets are forwarded (routed) to the appropriate next hop.

- Route map statement marked as permit is processed as follows:
  - A match command can match on length or multiple ACLs. A route map statement can contain multiple match commands. Logical or algorithm function is performed across all the match commands to reach a permit or deny decision.

For example:

```
match length A B
match ip address acl1 acl2
match ip address acl3
```

A packet is permitted if it is permitted by match length A B or acl1 or acl2 or acl3

- If the decision reached is permit, then the action specified by the set command is applied on the packet .
  - If the decision reached is deny, then the PBR action (specified in the set command) is not applied. Instead the processing logic moves forward to look at the next route-map statement in the sequence (the statement with the next higher sequence number). If no next statement exists, PBR processing terminates, and the packet is routed using the default IP routing table.
- For PBR, route-map statements marked as deny are not supported.

You can use standard IP ACLs to specify match criteria for a source address or extended IP ACLs to specify match criteria based on an application, a protocol type, or an end station. The process proceeds through the route map until a match is found. If no match is found, normal destination-based routing occurs. There is an implicit deny at the end of the list of match statements.

If match clauses are satisfied, you can use a set clause to specify the IP addresses identifying the next hop router in the path.

For details about PBR commands and keywords, see *Cisco IOS IP Command Reference, Volume 2 of 3: Routing Protocols*.

## How to Configure PBR

- To use PBR, you must have the Network Essentials license enabled on the switch or active switch.
- Multicast traffic is not policy-routed. PBR applies only to unicast traffic.
- You can enable PBR on a routed port or an SVI.
- The switch supports PBR based on match length.
- You can apply a policy route map to an EtherChannel port channel in Layer 3 mode, but you cannot apply a policy route map to a physical interface that is a member of the EtherChannel. If you try to do so, the command is rejected. When a policy route map is applied to a physical interface, that interface cannot become a member of an EtherChannel.
- You can define a maximum of 128 IP policy route maps on the switch or switch stack.
- You can define a maximum of 512 access control entries (ACEs) for PBR on the switch or switch stack.
- When configuring match criteria in a route map, follow these guidelines:
  - Do not match ACLs that permit packets destined for a local address.
- VRF and PBR are mutually exclusive on a switch interface. You cannot enable VRF when PBR is enabled on an interface. The reverse is also true, you cannot enable PBR when VRF is enabled on an interface.
- Web Cache Communication Protocol (WCCP) and PBR are mutually exclusive on a switch interface. You cannot enable WCCP when PBR is enabled on an interface. The reverse is also true, you cannot enable PBR when WCCP is enabled on an interface.
- The number of hardware entries used by PBR depends on the route map itself, the ACLs used, and the order of the ACLs and route-map entries.
- PBR based on TOS, DSCP and IP Precedence are not supported.
- Set interface, set default next-hop and set default interface are not supported.
- **ip next-hop recursive** and **ip next-hop verify availability** features are not available and the next-hop should be directly connected.
- Policy-maps with no set actions are supported. Matching packets are routed normally.
- Policy-maps with no match clauses are supported. Set actions are applied to all packets.

By default, PBR is disabled on the switch. To enable PBR, you must create a route map that specifies the match criteria and the resulting action. Then, you must enable PBR for that route map on an interface. All packets arriving on the specified interface matching the match clauses are subject to PBR.

Packets that are generated by the switch, or local packets, are not normally policy-routed. When you globally enable local PBR on the switch, all packets that originate on the switch are subject to local PBR. Local PBR is disabled by default.

## SUMMARY STEPS

### 1. configure terminal



2. **route-map** *map-tag* [**permit**] [*sequence number*]
3. **match ip address** {*access-list-number* | *access-list-name*} [*access-list-number* |...*access-list-name*]
4. **match length** *min max*
5. **set ip next-hop** *ip-address* [...*ip-address*]
6. **exit**
7. **interface** *interface-id*
8. **ip policy route-map** *map-tag*
9. **ip route-cache policy**
10. **exit**
11. **ip local policy route-map** *map-tag*
12. **end**
13. **show route-map** [*map-name*]
14. **show ip policy**
15. **show ip local policy**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> [ <b>permit</b> ] [ <i>sequence number</i> ]  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# route-map pbr-map permit	<p>Defines route maps that are used to control where packets are output, and enters route-map configuration mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>map-tag</i>: A meaningful name for the route map. The <b>ip policy route-map</b> interface configuration command uses this name to reference the route map. Multiple route-map statements with the same map tag define a single route map.</li> <li>• (Optional) <b>permit</b>: If <b>permit</b> is specified and the match criteria are met for this route map, the route is policy routed as defined by the set actions.</li> <li>• (Optional) <i>sequence number</i>: The sequence number shows the position of the route-map statement in the given route map.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> Do not configure the <b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> [<i>sequence number</i>] command without a match or set action defined for the sequence because this will result in incorrect traffic forwarding in the hardware.</p>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>match ip address</b> { <i>access-list-number</i>   <i>access-list-name</i> } [ <i>access-list-number</i>  ... <i>access-list-name</i> ]  <b>Example:</b>	Matches the source and destination IP addresses that are permitted by one or more standard or extended access lists. ACLs can match on more than one source and destination IP address.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-route-map)# match ip address 110 140	If you do not specify a <b>match</b> command, the route map is applicable to all packets.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>match length min max</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# match length 64 1500	Matches the length of the packet.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>set ip next-hop ip-address [...ip-address]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# set ip next-hop 10.1.6.2	Specifies the action to be taken on the packets that match the criteria. Sets next hop to which to route the packet (the next hop must be adjacent).
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>interface interface-id</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1	Enters interface configuration mode, and specifies the interface to be configured.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>ip policy route-map map-tag</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# ip policy route-map pbr-map	Enables PBR on a Layer 3 interface, and identify the route map to use. You can configure only one route map on an interface. However, you can have multiple route map entries with different sequence numbers. These entries are evaluated in the order of sequence number until the first match. If there is no match, packets are routed as usual.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>ip route-cache policy</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# ip route-cache policy	(Optional) Enables fast-switching PBR. You must enable PBR before enabling fast-switching PBR.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>ip local policy route-map map-tag</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# ip local policy route-map local-pbr	(Optional) Enables local PBR to perform policy-based routing on packets originating at the switch. This applies to packets generated by the switch, and not to incoming packets.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>show route-map [map-name]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show route-map	(Optional) Displays all the route maps configured or only the one specified to verify configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>show ip policy</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip policy	(Optional) Displays policy route maps attached to the interface.
<b>Step 15</b>	<b>show ip local policy</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip local policy	(Optional) Displays whether or not local policy routing is enabled and, if so, the route map being used.

## Filtering Routing Information

You can filter routing protocol information by performing the tasks described in this section.



**Note** When routes are redistributed between OSPF processes, no OSPF metrics are preserved.

## Setting Passive Interfaces

To prevent other routers on a local network from dynamically learning about routes, you can use the **passive-interface** router configuration command to keep routing update messages from being sent through a router interface. When you use this command in the OSPF protocol, the interface address you specify as passive appears as a stub network in the OSPF domain. OSPF routing information is neither sent nor received through the specified router interface.

In networks with many interfaces, to avoid having to manually set them as passive, you can set all interfaces to be passive by default by using the **passive-interface default** router configuration command and manually setting interfaces where adjacencies are desired.

Use a network monitoring privileged EXEC command such as **show ip ospf interface** to verify the interfaces that you enabled as passive, or use the **show ip interface** privileged EXEC command to verify the interfaces that you enabled as active.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router { rip   ospf   eigrp }</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router ospf	Enters router configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>passive-interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# passive-interface gigabitethernet 1/0/1</pre>	Suppresses sending routing updates through the specified Layer 3 interface.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>passive-interface default</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# passive-interface default</pre>	(Optional) Sets all interfaces as passive by default.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>no passive-interface</b> <i>interface type</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# no passive-interface gigabitethernet1/0/3 gigabitethernet 1/0/5</pre>	(Optional) Activates only those interfaces that need to have adjacencies sent.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>network</b> <i>network-address</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# network 10.1.1.1</pre>	(Optional) Specifies the list of networks for the routing process. The <i>network-address</i> is an IP address.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Controlling Advertising and Processing in Routing Updates

You can use the **distribute-list** router configuration command with access control lists to suppress routes from being advertised in routing updates and to prevent other routers from learning one or more routes. When used in OSPF, this feature applies to only external routes, and you cannot specify an interface name.

You can also use a **distribute-list** router configuration command to avoid processing certain routes listed in incoming updates. (This feature does not apply to OSPF.)

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router { rip   eigrp }</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# router eigrp 10	Enters router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>distribute-list {access-list-number   access-list-name} out</b> [interface-name   routing process   autonomous-system-number]  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# distribute 120 out gigabitethernet 1/0/7	Permits or denies routes from being advertised in routing updates, depending upon the action listed in the access list.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>distribute-list {access-list-number   access-list-name} in</b> [type-number]  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# distribute-list 125 in	Suppresses processing in routes listed in updates.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Filtering Sources of Routing Information

Because some routing information might be more accurate than others, you can use filtering to prioritize information coming from different sources. An administrative distance is a rating of the trustworthiness of a routing information source, such as a router or group of routers. In a large network, some routing protocols can be more reliable than others. By specifying administrative distance values, you enable the router to intelligently discriminate between sources of routing information. The router always picks the route whose routing protocol has the lowest administrative distance.

Because each network has its own requirements, there are no general guidelines for assigning administrative distances.

## Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>router { rip   ospf   eigrp }</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# router eigrp 10	Enters router configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>distance weight {ip-address {ip-address mask}} [ip access list]</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# distance 50 10.1.5.1	Defines an administrative distance.  <i>weight</i> —The administrative distance as an integer from 10 to 255. Used alone, <i>weight</i> specifies a default administrative distance that is used when no other specification exists for a routing information source. Routes with a distance of 255 are not installed in the routing table.  (Optional) <i>ip access list</i> —An IP standard or extended access list to be applied to incoming routing updates.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show ip protocols</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ip protocols	Displays the default administrative distance for a specified routing process.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

## Managing Authentication Keys

Key management is a method of controlling authentication keys used by routing protocols. Not all protocols can use key management. Authentication keys are available for EIGRP and RIP Version 2.

### Prerequisites

Before you manage authentication keys, you must enable authentication. See the appropriate protocol section to see how to enable authentication for that protocol. To manage authentication keys, define a key chain, identify the keys that belong to the key chain, and specify how long each key is valid. Each key has its own key identifier (specified with the **key number** key chain configuration command), which is stored locally. The

combination of the key identifier and the interface associated with the message uniquely identifies the authentication algorithm and Message Digest 5 (MD5) authentication key in use.

## How to Configure Authentication Keys

You can configure multiple keys with life times. Only one authentication packet is sent, regardless of how many valid keys exist. The software examines the key numbers in order from lowest to highest, and uses the first valid key it encounters. The lifetimes allow for overlap during key changes. Note that the router must know these lifetimes.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>key chain</b> <i>name-of-chain</i> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# key chain key10	Identifies a key chain, and enter key chain configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>key number</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-keychain)# key 2000	Identifies the key number. The range is 0 to 2147483647.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>key-string</b> <i>text</i> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-keychain)# Room 20, 10th floor	Identifies the key string. The string can contain from 1 to 80 uppercase and lowercase alphanumeric characters, but the first character cannot be a number.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>accept-lifetime</b> <i>start-time</i> { <b>infinite</b>   <i>end-time</i>   <b>duration</b> <i>seconds</i> } <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-keychain)# accept-lifetime 12:30:00 Jan 25 1009 infinite	(Optional) Specifies the time period during which the key can be received.  The <i>start-time</i> and <i>end-time</i> syntax can be either <i>hh:mm:ss Month date year</i> or <i>hh:mm:ss date Month year</i> . The default is forever with the default <i>start-time</i> and the earliest acceptable date as January 1, 1993. The default <i>end-time</i> and <b>duration</b> is <b>infinite</b> .
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>send-lifetime</b> <i>start-time</i> { <b>infinite</b>   <i>end-time</i>   <b>duration</b> <i>seconds</i> } <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-keychain)# accept-lifetime 23:30:00 Jan 25 1019 infinite	(Optional) Specifies the time period during which the key can be sent.  The <i>start-time</i> and <i>end-time</i> syntax can be either <i>hh:mm:ss Month date year</i> or <i>hh:mm:ss date Month year</i> . The default is forever with the default <i>start-time</i> and the earliest acceptable date as January 1, 1993. The default <i>end-time</i> and <b>duration</b> is <b>infinite</b> .

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-keychain)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>show key chain</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# show key chain	Displays authentication key information.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.





## CHAPTER 13

# Configuring Generic Routing Encapsulation(GRE) Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership

---

- [Restrictions for GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership, on page 239](#)
- [Information About GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership, on page 239](#)
- [How to Configure GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership, on page 240](#)
- [Configuration Example for GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership, on page 241](#)
- [Additional References, on page 242](#)
- [Feature History for Generic Routing Encapsulation Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership, on page 243](#)

## Restrictions for GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership

- Both ends of the tunnel must reside within the same VRF.
- The VRF associated with the tunnel vrf command is the same as the VRF associated with the physical interface over which the tunnel sends packets (outer IP packet routing).
- The VRF associated with the tunnel by using the ip vrf forwarding command is the VRF that the packets are to be forwarded in as the packets exit the tunnel (inner IP packet routing).
- The feature does not support the fragmentation of multicast packets passing through a multicast tunnel.
- The feature does not support the ISIS (Intermediate System to intermediate system) protocol.

## Information About GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership

This feature allows you to configure the source and destination of a tunnel to belong to any Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) table. A VRF table stores routing data for each VPN. The

VRF table defines the VPN membership of a customer site attached to the network access server (NAS). Each VRF table comprises an IP routing table, a derived Cisco Express Forwarding (CEF) table, and guidelines and routing protocol parameters that control the information that is included in the routing table.

Previously, GRE IP tunnels required the IP tunnel destination to be in the global routing table. The implementation of this feature allows you to configure a tunnel source and destination to belong to any VRF. As with existing GRE tunnels, the tunnel becomes disabled if no route to the tunnel destination is defined.

## How to Configure GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership

Follow these steps to configure GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **interface tunnel***number*
4. **ip vrf forwarding***vrf-name*
5. **ip address***ip-address subnet-mask*
6. **tunnel source** {*ip-address* | *type number*}
7. **tunnel destination** {*hostname* | *ip-address*}
8. **tunnel vrf***vrf-name*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  • Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface tunnel</b> <i>number</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface tunnel</b> 0	Enters interface configuration mode for the specified interface.  • <i>number</i> is the number associated with the tunnel interface.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip vrf forwarding</b> <i>vrf-name</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip vrf forwarding green</b>	Associates a virtual private network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) instance with an interface or subinterface.  • <i>vrf-name</i> is the name assigned to a VRF.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip address</b> <i>ip-address subnet-mask</i>	Specifies the interface IP address and subnet mask.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip address 10.7.7.7 255.255.255.255</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ip-address specifies the IP address of the interface.</li> <li>• subnet-mask specifies the subnet mask of the interface.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>tunnel source</b> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>type number</i> } <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>tunnel source loop 0</b>	Specifies the source of the tunnel interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ip-address specifies the IP address to use as the source address for packets in the tunnel.</li> <li>• type specifies the interface type (for example, serial).</li> <li>• number specifies the port, connector, or interface card number. The numbers are assigned at the factory at the time of installation or when added to a system, and can be displayed using the show interfaces command.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>tunnel destination</b> { <i>hostname</i>   <i>ip-address</i> } <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>tunnel destination 10.5.5.5</b>	Defines the tunnel destination. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• hostname specifies the name of the host destination.</li> <li>• ip-address specifies the IP address of the host destination.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>tunnel vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>tunnel vrf finance1</b>	Associates a VPN routing and forwarding (VRF) instance with a specific tunnel destination. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• vrf-name is the name assigned to a VRF.</li> </ul>

## Configuration Example for GRE Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership

In this example, packets received on interface e0 using VRF green are forwarded out of the tunnel through interface e1 using VRF blue.

```
ip vrf blue rd 1:1

ip vrf green rd 1:2

interface loop0
ip vrf forwarding blue
ip address 10.7.7.7 255.255.255.255

interface tunnel0
ip vrf forwarding green
ip address 10.3.3.3 255.255.255.0 tunnel source loop 0
tunnel destination 10.5.5.5 tunnel vrf blue

interface ethernet0
ip vrf forwarding green
```

```

ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0

interface ethernet1
ip vrf forwarding blue
ip address 10.2.2.2 255.255.255.0

ip route vrf blue 10.5.5.5 255.255.255.0 ethernet 1

```

## Additional References

**Table 26: Related Documents**

Related Topic	Document Title
VRF tables	"Configuring Multiprotocol Label Switching" chapter of the Cisco IOS Switching Services Configuration Guide, Release 12.2
Tunnels	Cisco IOS Interface Configuration Guide, Release 12.2

**Table 27: Standards**

Standard	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature	--

**Table 28: RFCs**

RFC	Title
No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature, and support for existing RFCs has not been modified by this feature.	--

**Table 29: Related DoTechnical Assistancecuments**

Description	Link
The Cisco Technical Support & Documentation website contains thousands of pages of searchable technical content, including links to products, technologies, solutions, technical tips, and tools. Registered Cisco.com users can log in from this page to access even more content.	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/techsupport">http://www.cisco.com/techsupport</a>

# Feature History for Generic Routing Encapsulation Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 30: Feature History for Generic Routing Encapsulation Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
Generic Routing Encapsulation Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership	Cisco IOS 16.6.1	The Generic Routing Encapsulation Tunnel IP Source and Destination VRF Membership feature allows you to configure the source and destination of a tunnel to belong to any virtual private network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) table.





## CHAPTER 14

# Configuring Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE

- [Prerequisites for Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE, on page 245](#)
- [Restrictions for Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE, on page 245](#)
- [Information About Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE , on page 246](#)
- [How to Configure Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE , on page 248](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE, on page 256](#)
- [Feature History and Information for Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE, on page 258](#)

## Prerequisites for Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE

- Before configuring multicast routing over multipoint Generic Routing Encapsulation (mGRE), you should be familiar with the concepts of IP multicast routing technology and mGRE tunneling.

## Restrictions for Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE

- This feature is not supported on the C9500-12Q, C9500-16X, C9500-24Q, C9500-40X models of the Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches.
- IPv6 multicast over mGRE tunnel is not supported.
- mGRE tunnel maximum transmission unit (MTU) does not get auto updated upon IP MTU change in the underlying network. Tunnel MTU has to be updated manually.
- mGRE can use only IPv4 as the transport protocol, and can tunnel both IPv4 and IPv6 packets across the underlying network infrastructure.
- Only IPv4 Next Hop Resolution Protocol (NHRP) is supported, , and as a result, a non-broadcast multiple access network (NBMA) can only be IPv4.
- Bidirectional Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) is not supported.

- Tunnel source can be a Layer 3 etherchannel, loopback, physical, or Switched Virtual Interface (SVI).
- No feature interactions such as access control list (ACL), Cisco Discovery Protocol, Crypto support, IPSec, or quality of service (QoS) are supported on the mGRE tunnel.
- All routing protocol that uses multicast requires additional configurations.

## Information About Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE

### Information About NHRP

The Next Hop Resolution Protocol (NHRP) is like the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) that dynamically maps a non-broadcast multiaccess (NBMA) network instead of manually configuring all the tunnel end points. With NHRP, systems attached to an NBMA network can dynamically learn the NBMA physical address of other systems that are part of that network, allowing these systems to directly communicate.

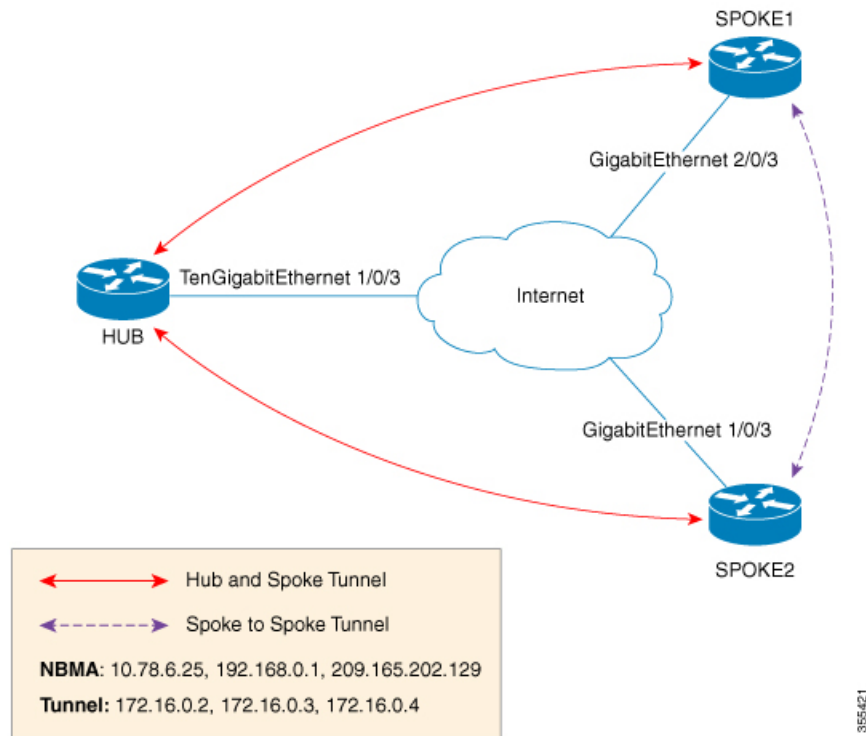
This protocol provides an ARP-like solution which allow station data-link addresses to dynamically determine NHRP as a client and server protocol, where the hub is the Next Hop Server (NHS) and the spokes are the Next Hop Clients (NHCs). The hub maintains an NHRP database of public interface addresses of each spoke. Each spoke registers its non-NBMA (real) address when it boots up and queries the NHRP database for addresses of the destination spokes to build direct tunnels.

### Information About mGRE

The traditional implementation of a GRE tunnel involves the configuration of a point-to-point tunnel going between two sites. This type of configuration works well when there are limited number of tunnels that need to be configured. However, if there are a large number of spoke sites, the configuration of the hub router and the number of independent IP address ranges (one per tunnel) can quickly get excessive. In such cases, you can use Multipoint GRE (mGRE) at the hub site and normal point-to-point GRE configuration at the spokes. mGRE is configured over an IPv4 core/underlying network and allows multiple destinations to be grouped into a single multipoint interface.



Figure 9: Sample mGRE Configuration at Hub and Spokes



There are two different ways to configure mGRE on the hub and leave a normal GRE configuration on spokes:

- Static NHRP mapping statements on the hub router
- Dynamic NHRP mapping on the hub router

In static mappings, the hub router is manually configured with the spoke IP in the NHRP configuration and spokes are configured as point-to-point GRE tunnels. But if there are several branch routers, the configuration on the hub router becomes lengthy, and dynamic NHRP is used on the hub router. When using dynamic NHRP, the hub router requires that each of the spoke routers be configured to register with a Next Hop Server (NHS), which would also typically be the hub router. This NHS keeps track of the NHRP mappings so that the hub device knows where to send traffic (sent to multiple tunnel destinations). For this configuration to work correctly the IP address of the NHS server must also be statically mapped on spoke routers.

With the above hub-spoke topology, the only available way for spokes to send traffic to other spokes is to forward traffic through the hub. This requires an extra hop that may not be required when forwarding traffic. Each of the spokes has the ability to forward traffic directly to each other on the underlying IP network. When this happens, it will be more efficient for the spoke-to-spoke traffic to be routed directly between the spokes without having to jump through the hub router.

If both the hub and spokes are configured to use mGRE then the ability to set up dynamic spoke-to-spoke tunnels is permitted. With this configuration, each spoke still use the hub as an NHS which allows the hub to keep track of each of the spoke sites. It also allows mGRE and NHRP to work together to inform the spokes what the forwarding information is for the other spokes. This information can then be used for each of the spokes to dynamically set up mGRE tunnels between each of the other spokes, as required.

# How to Configure Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE

## Configuring Unicast mGRE for Hub

Perform this task to configure unicast mGRE for a hub:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `enable`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `interface tunnel tunnel-number`
4. `tunnel mode gre multipoint`
5. `ip ospf network point-to-multipoint`
6. `ip address address mask`
7. `ipv6 address address prefix`
8. `tunnel source address`
9. `{ip | ipv6} nhrp network-id id`
10. `{ip | ipv6} nhrp registration timeout seconds`
11. `{ip | ipv6} nhrp holdtime seconds`
12. `{ip | ipv6} nhrp authentication string`
13. `ip pim nbma-mode`
14. `end`

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	<b>interface tunnel <i>tunnel-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device (config)# <b>interface tunnel 1</b>	Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 4	<b>tunnel mode gre multipoint</b> <b>Example:</b>	Configures multipoint GRE as the tunnel mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config-if)#tunnel mode gre multipoint</code>	
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip ospf network point-to-multipoint</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device(config-if)#ip ospf network point-to-multipoint</code>	If the underlying protocol is OSPF, execute this command to set the network type to point-to-multipoint.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>ip address address mask</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device(config-if)#ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.255</code>	Configures the IP address of the tunnel.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>ipv6 address address prefix</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:DB8:1::1</code>	Configures the IPv6 address of the tunnel.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>tunnel source address</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device(config-if)#tunnel source TenGigabitEthernet1/0/3</code>	Configures the source IP address of the tunnel.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>{ip   ipv6} nhrp network-id id</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device(config-if)#ip nhrp network-id 1</code>	Defines the NHRP domain which differentiates if multiple NHRP domains (GRE tunnel interfaces) are available on the same NHRP router.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>{ip   ipv6} nhrp registration timeout seconds</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device(config-if)#ip nhrp registration timeout 30</code>	Changes the interval that NHRP NHCs take to send NHRP registration requests to configured NHRP NHSs.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>{ip   ipv6} nhrp holdtime seconds</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device(config-if)#ip nhrp holdtime 400</code>	Changes the number of seconds that NHRP NBMA addresses are advertised as valid in positive NHRP responses.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>{ip   ipv6} nhrp authentication string</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device(config-if)#ip nhrp authentication DMVPN</code>	Specifies an authentication string.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>ip pim nbma-mode</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device(config-if)#ip pim nbma-mode</code>	Configures a multiaccess WAN interface to be in non-broadcast multiaccess (NBMA) mode.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>Device(config-if)#end</code>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring Unicast mGRE at a Spoke

Perform this task to configure unicast mGRE at spokes:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **interface tunnel** *tunnel-number*
4. **ip nhrp map** *ip-address nbma-address*
5. **{ip | ipv6} nhrp map multicast** *nbma-address*
6. **ip nhrp nhs** *nhs-address*
7. **ipv6 nhrp nhs** *nhs-address*
8. **ipv6 nhrp map** *address/prefix nbma address*
9. **end**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface tunnel</b> <i>tunnel-number</i>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# <b>interface tunnel 1</b>	Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip nhrp map</b> <i>ip-address nbma-address</i>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-if)# <b>ip nhrp map 10.0.0.1 192.0.0.1</b>	Configures static IP-to-NBMA address mapping of a hub router on the spoke.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>{ip   ipv6} nhrp map multicast</b> <i>nbma-address</i>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-if)# <b>ip nhrp map multicast 10.0.0.2</b>	Enables IP multicast and broadcast packets (example: routing protocol information) to be sent from the spoke to the hub.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>ip nhrp nhs</b> <i>nhs-address</i>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-if)# <b>ip nhrp nhs 192.0.2.1</b>	Enables the spoke to send NHRP registration request to the hub.  • Here <i>nhs-address</i> is the tunnel address of the hub.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>ipv6 nhrp nhs <i>nhs-address</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>ipv6 nhrp nhs 2001:DB8:1::2</b>	Enables the spoke to send an NHRP registration request to the hub. Here <i>nhs-address</i> is the IPv6 address of the hub tunnel.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>ipv6 nhrp map <i>address/prefix nbma address</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>ipv6 nhrp map 2001:DB8:1::3 192.0.2.2</b>	Configures static IPv6-to-NBMA address mapping of the hub on the spoke.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>end</b>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring Unicast mGRE at the Hub

Perform this task to configure unicast mGRE at the hub:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **interface tunnel *tunnel-number***
4. **{ip | ipv6} nhrp map multicast dynamic**
5. **{ip | ipv6} next-hop-self eigrp *number***
6. **{ip | ipv6} split-horizon eigrp *number***
7. **end**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface tunnel <i>tunnel-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface tunnel 1</b>	Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>{ip   ipv6} nhrp map multicast dynamic</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip nhrp map multicast dynamic</b>	Enables the NHRP server (hub) to create a broadcast/multicast mapping for the spoke when spoke routers register their unicast NHRP mapping with the hub.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>{ip   ipv6} next-hop-self eigrp number</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip next-hop-self eigrp 10</b>	Enables the hub to use the next received hop while sending routing protocol updates of one spoke to another, so that hosts behind hosts can be reached directly.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>{ip   ipv6} split-horizon eigrp number</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip split-horizon eigrp 10</b>	Enables routing protocol updates of one spoke to be sent to another spoke.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring Multicast mGRE

To configure multicast mGRE, configure unicast mGRE first and then perform this task:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **interface tunnel *tunnel-number***
4. **ip pim nbma-mode**
5. **ip pim sparse-mode**
6. **end**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  • Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface tunnel <i>tunnel-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b>	Configures an interface and enters interface configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# <b>interface tunnel 1</b>	
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip pim nbma-mode</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip pim nbma-mode</b>	Configures a multiaccess WAN interface to be in NBMA mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>ip pim sparse-mode</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>ip pim sparse-mode</b>	Enables IPv4 Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) sparse mode on an interface.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Verifying the mGRE Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the mGRE configuration:

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **show ip nhrp**
3. **show ipv6 nhrp**
4. **show ip route**
5. **show ipv6 route**
6. **debug nhrp detail**
7. **debug tunnel**

### DETAILED STEPS

#### Step 1 enable

##### Example:

```
Device> enable
```

Enables privileged EXEC mode.

- Enter your password if prompted.

#### Step 2 show ip nhrp

Displays IPv4 Next Hop Resolution Protocol (NHRP) mapping information.

##### Example:

```
Spoke2# show ip nhrp 10.0.0.1
```

```
10.0.0.1/32 via 10.0.0.1
Tunnel0 created 00:03:13, expire 00:06:47
Type: dynamic, Flags: router used nhop
NBMA address: 192.0.0.1
```

```
Spoke2# show ip nhrp 10.0.0.3
```

```
10.0.0.3/32 via 10.0.0.3
Tunnel0 created 22:57:58, never expire
Type: static, Flags: used
NBMA address: 192.0.0.3
```

### Step 3 show ipv6 nhrp

Displays IPv6 Next Hop Resolution Protocol (NHRP) mapping information.

#### Example:

```
HUB# show running-config | interface tunnel6
```

```
Building configuration...
```

```
Current configuration : 255 bytes
```

```
!
interface Tunnel6
 no ip address
 no ip redirects
 ipv6 address 2001:DB8:1::1/64
 ipv6 eigrp 10
 no ipv6 next-hop-self eigrp 10
 no ipv6 split-horizon eigrp 10
 ipv6 nhrp network-id 1
 tunnel source FortyGigabitEthernet1/0/19
 tunnel mode gre multipoint
end
```

```
HUB# show ipv6 nhrp
```

```
2001:DB8:1::5/128 via 2001:DB8:1::5
Tunnel6 created 02:37:30, expire 00:07:29
Type: dynamic, Flags: registered nhop
NBMA address: 192.168.0.2
2001:DB8:1::2A7:42FF:FE83:CEA0/128 via 2001:DB8:1::5
Tunnel6 created 02:37:30, expire 00:07:29
Type: dynamic, Flags: registered
NBMA address: 192.168.0.2
```

```
HUB#
```

```
Spoke1# show running-config | interface tunnel6
```

```
Building configuration...
```

```
Current configuration : 292 bytes
```

```
!
interface Tunnel6
 no ip address
 no ip redirects
 ipv6 address 2001::5/64
 ipv6 eigrp 10
 ipv6 nhrp map multicast 192.168.0.3
 ipv6 nhrp map 2001:DB8:1::1/64 192.168.0.3
 ipv6 nhrp network-id 1
 ipv6 nhrp nhs 2001:DB8:1::1
```



```

tunnel source FortyGigabitEthernet1/0/7
tunnel mode gre multipoint
end

Spoke1# show ipv6 nhrp

2001:DB8:1::/64 via 2001:DB8:1::1
  Tunnel6 created 02:46:17, never expire
  Type: static, Flags:
  NBMA address: 192.168.0.3
2001:DB8:1::2A7:42FF:FE83:CFE0/128 via 2001:DB8:1::2A7:42FF:FE83:CFE0
  Tunnel6 created 02:45:39, never expire
  Type: static, Flags: nhs-ll
  NBMA address: 192.168.0.3
Spoke1#

```

#### Step 4 show ip route

Displays IPv4 content of the routing table.

##### Example:

```

Spoke2# show ip route 10.0.1.1

Routing entry for 10.0.1.1
  Known via "eigrp 10", distance 90, metric 26880256, type internal
  Redistributing via eigrp 10
  Last update from 10.0.0.3 on Tunnel0, 00:55:34 ago
  Routing Descriptor Blocks:
  * 10.0.0.3, from 10.0.0.3, 00:55:34 ago, via Tunnel0
    Route metric is 26880256, traffic share count is 1
    Total delay is 50010 microseconds, minimum bandwidth is 100 Kbit
    Reliability 255/255, minimum MTU 1472 bytes
    Loading 1/255, Hops 1

HUB# show ip route 10.0.1.2

Routing entry for 10.0.1.2/24
  Known via "eigrp 10", distance 90, metric 26880256, type internal
  Redistributing via eigrp 10
  Last update from 10.0.0.1 on Tunnel0, 00:56:45 ago
  Routing Descriptor Blocks:
  * 10.0.0.1, from 10.0.0.1, 00:56:45 ago, via Tunnel0
    Route metric is 26880256, traffic share count is 1
    Total delay is 50010 microseconds, minimum bandwidth is 100 Kbit
    Reliability 255/255, minimum MTU 1472 bytes
    Loading 1/255, Hops 1

HUB#

```

#### Step 5 show ipv6 route

Displays IPv6 content of the routing table.

##### Example:

```

Spoke1# show ipv6 route 2001:DB8:1::/64

Routing entry for 2001:DB8:1::/64
  Known via "eigrp 10", distance 90, metric 27008000, type internal
  Route count is 1/1, share count 0
  Routing paths:
    2001:DB8:1::2A7:42FF:FE83:CFE0, Tunnel6
    From 2001:DB8:1::2A7:42FF:FE83:CFE0

```

```

      Last updated 00:03:07 ago
Spoke1#

HUB# show ipv6 route 2001:DB8:1::/64

Routing entry for 2001:DB8:1::/64
  Known via "eigrp 10", distance 90, metric 27008000, type internal
  Route count is 1/1, share count 0
  Routing paths:
    2001:DB8:1::2A7:42FF:FE83:CEA0, Tunnel6
      From 2001:DB8:1::2A7:42FF:FE83:CEA0
      Last updated 00:01:29 ago
HUB#

```

**Step 6**    **debug nhrp detail**

Displays NHRP registration and packet related information.

**Step 7**    **debug tunnel**

Displays tunnel state changes and packet related information.

## Configuration Examples for Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE

### Example: Configuring Unicast mGRE for Hub

This example shows how to configure unicast mGRE for the hub:

```

Device>enable
Device#configure terminal
Device(config)#interface tunnel 1
Device(config-if)#tunnel mode gre multipoint
Device(config-if)#ip ospf network point-to-multipoint
Device(config-if)#ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.255
Device(config-if)#ipv6 address 2001:DB8:1::1
Device(config-if)#tunnel source TenGigabitEthernet1/0/3
Device(config-if)#ip nhrp network-id 1
Device(config-if)#ip nhrp registration timeout 30
Device(config-if)#ip nhrp holdtime 400
Device(config-if)#ip nhrp authentication DMVPN
Device(config-if)#ip pim nbma-mode
Device(config-if)#end

```

### Example: Configuring Unicast mGRE at Spoke

This example shows how to configure unicast mGRE at a spoke.

```

Device>enable
Device#configure terminal
Device(config)#interface tunnel 1

```

```
Device(config-if)#ip nhrp map 10.0.0.1 192.0.0.1
Device(config-if)#ip nhrp map multicast 10.0.0.2
Device(config-if)#ip nhrp nhs 192.0.2.1
Device(config-if)#ipv6 nhrp nhs 2001:DB8:1::2
Device(config-if)#ipv6 nhrp map 2001:DB8:1::3 192.0.2.2
Device(config-if)#end
```

## Example: Configuring Unicast mGRE at Hub

This example shows how to configure unicast mGRE at the hub:

```
Device>enable
Device#configure terminal
Device(config)#interface tunnel 1
Device(config-if)#ip nhrp map multicast dynamic
Device(config-if)#ip next-hop-self eigrp 10
Device(config-if)#ip split-horizon eigrp 10
Device(config-if)#end
```

## Example: Configuring Multicast mGRE

This example shows how to configure multicast mGRE:

```
Device>enable
Device#configure terminal
Device(config)#interface tunnel 1
Device(config-if)#ip pim nbma-mode
Device(config-if)#ip pim sparse-mode
Device(config-if)#end
```

## Sample mGRE Configuration at Hub and Spokes

### Configuration at hub:

```
interface Tunnel0
ip address 172.16.0.2 255.255.255.0
no ip redirects
ip nhrp authentication DMVPN
ip nhrp network-id 1
ip nhrp registration timeout 30
no ip next-hop-self eigrp 10
no ip split-horizon eigrp 10
tunnel source TenGigabitEthernet1/0/3
tunnel mode gre multipoint
tunnel key 4
end
interface TenGigabitEthernet1/0/3
no switchport
ip address 10.78.6.25. 255.255.255.0
end
```

### Configuration at spoke1:

```
interface Tunnel0
ip address 172.16.0.4 255.255.255.0
```

```

no ip redirects
ip nhrp authentication DMVPN
ip nhrp map 172.16.0.2 10.78.6.25
ip nhrp map multicast 10.78.6.25
ip nhrp network-id 1
ip nhrp nhs 172.16.0.2
ip nhrp registration timeout 30
tunnel source GigabitEthernet2/0/3
tunnel mode gre multipoint
tunnel key 4
end
interface GigabitEthernet2/0/3
no switchport
ip address 209.165.202.129 255.255.255.0
end

```

#### Configuration at spoke2:

```

interface Tunnel0
ip address 172.16.0.3 255.255.255.0
no ip redirects
ip nhrp authentication DMVPN
ip nhrp map 172.16.0.2 10.78.6.25
ip nhrp map multicast 10.78.6.25
ip nhrp network-id 1
ip nhrp nhs 172.16.0.2
ip nhrp registration timeout 30
tunnel source GigabitEthernet1/0/3
tunnel mode gre multipoint
tunnel key 4
end
interface GigabitEthernet1/0/3
no switchport
ip address 192.168.0.1 255.255.255.0
end

```

## Feature History and Information for Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE	<p>The Unicast and Multicast over Point-to-Multipoint GRE feature allows to configure mGRE at the hub site and normal point-to-point GRE configuration at the spokes.</p> <p>Support for this feature was introduced only on the C9500-32C, C9500-32QC, C9500-48Y4C, and C9500-24Y4C models of the Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches.</p>

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform and software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to <https://cfnng.cisco.com>.





## CHAPTER 15

# Configuring BGP Support for 4-byte ASN

- [Information About BGP Support for 4-byte ASN, on page 261](#)
- [How to Configure BGP Support for 4-byte ASN, on page 264](#)
- [Configuration Examples for BGP Support for 4-byte ASN, on page 271](#)
- [Additional References for BGP Support for 4-byte ASN, on page 275](#)
- [Feature History and Information for BGP Support for 4-byte ASN, on page 276](#)

## Information About BGP Support for 4-byte ASN

### BGP Autonomous System Number Formats

Prior to January 2009, BGP autonomous system (AS) numbers that were allocated to companies were 2-octet numbers in the range from 1 to 65535 as described in RFC 4271, *A Border Gateway Protocol 4 (BGP-4)*. Due to increased demand for AS numbers, the Internet Assigned Number Authority (IANA) started to allocate four-octet AS numbers in the range from 65536 to 4294967295. RFC 5396, *Textual Representation of Autonomous System (AS) Numbers*, documents three methods of representing AS numbers. Cisco has implemented the following two methods:

- **Asplain**—Decimal value notation where both 2-byte and 4-byte AS numbers are represented by their decimal value. For example, 65526 is a 2-byte AS number and 234567 is a 4-byte AS number.
- **Asdot**—Autonomous system dot notation where 2-byte AS numbers are represented by their decimal value and 4-byte AS numbers are represented by a dot notation. For example, 65526 is a 2-byte AS number and 1.169031 is a 4-byte AS number (this is dot notation for the 234567 decimal number).

For details about the third method of representing autonomous system numbers, see RFC 5396.

#### Asdot Only Autonomous System Number Formatting

The 4-octet (4-byte) AS numbers are entered and displayed only in asdot notation, for example, 1.10 or 45000.64000. When using regular expressions to match 4-byte AS numbers the asdot format includes a period, which is a special character in regular expressions. A backslash must be entered before the period (for example, 1\.14) to ensure the regular expression match does not fail. The table below shows the format in which 2-byte and 4-byte AS numbers are configured, matched in regular expressions, and displayed in **show** command output in Cisco IOS images where only asdot formatting is available.

Table 31: Asdot Only 4-Byte AS Number Format

Format	Configuration Format	Show Command Output and Regular Expression Match Format
asdot	2-byte: 1 to 65535 4-byte: 1.0 to 65535.65535	2-byte: 1 to 65535 4-byte: 1.0 to 65535.65535

### Asplain as Default AS Number Formatting

The Cisco implementation of 4-byte AS numbers uses asplain as the default display format for AS numbers, but you can configure 4-byte AS numbers in both the asplain and asdot format. In addition, the default format for matching 4-byte AS numbers in regular expressions is asplain, so you must ensure that any regular expressions to match 4-byte AS numbers are written in the asplain format. If you want to change the default **show** command output to display 4-byte autonomous system numbers in the asdot format, use the **bgp asnotation dot** command under router configuration mode. When the asdot format is enabled as the default, any regular expressions to match 4-byte AS numbers must be written using the asdot format, or the regular expression match will fail. The tables below show that although you can configure 4-byte AS numbers in either asplain or asdot format, only one format is used to display **show** command output and control 4-byte AS number matching for regular expressions, and the default is asplain format. To display 4-byte AS numbers in **show** command output and to control matching for regular expressions in the asdot format, you must configure the **bgp asnotation dot** command. After enabling the **bgp asnotation dot** command, a hard reset must be initiated for all BGP sessions by entering the **clear ip bgp \*** command.



**Note** If you are upgrading to an image that supports 4-byte AS numbers, you can still use 2-byte AS numbers. The **show** command output and regular expression match are not changed and remain in asplain (decimal value) format for 2-byte AS numbers regardless of the format configured for 4-byte AS numbers.

Table 32: Default Asplain 4-Byte AS Number Format

Format	Configuration Format	Show Command Output and Regular Expression Match Format
asplain	2-byte: 1 to 65535 4-byte: 65536 to 4294967295	2-byte: 1 to 65535 4-byte: 65536 to 4294967295
asdot	2-byte: 1 to 65535 4-byte: 1.0 to 65535.65535	2-byte: 1 to 65535 4-byte: 65536 to 4294967295

Table 33: Asdot 4-Byte AS Number Format

Format	Configuration Format	Show Command Output and Regular Expression Match Format
asplain	2-byte: 1 to 65535 4-byte: 65536 to 4294967295	2-byte: 1 to 65535 4-byte: 1.0 to 65535.65535
asdot	2-byte: 1 to 65535 4-byte: 1.0 to 65535.65535	2-byte: 1 to 65535 4-byte: 1.0 to 65535.65535



### Reserved and Private AS Numbers

The Cisco implementation of BGP supports RFC 4893. RFC 4893 was developed to allow BGP to support a gradual transition from 2-byte AS numbers to 4-byte AS numbers. A new reserved (private) AS number, 23456, was created by RFC 4893 and this number cannot be configured as an AS number in the Cisco IOS CLI.

RFC 5398, *Autonomous System (AS) Number Reservation for Documentation Use*, describes new reserved AS numbers for documentation purposes. Use of the reserved numbers allow configuration examples to be accurately documented and avoids conflict with production networks if these configurations are literally copied. The reserved numbers are documented in the IANA AS number registry. Reserved 2-byte AS numbers are in the contiguous block, 64496 to 64511 and reserved 4-byte AS numbers are from 65536 to 65551 inclusive.

Private 2-byte AS numbers are still valid in the range from 64512 to 65534 with 65535 being reserved for special use. Private AS numbers can be used for internal routing domains but must be translated for traffic that is routed out to the Internet. BGP should not be configured to advertise private AS numbers to external networks. Cisco IOS software does not remove private AS numbers from routing updates by default. We recommend that ISPs filter private AS numbers.



---

**Note** AS number assignment for public and private networks is governed by the IANA. For information about AS numbers, including reserved number assignment, or to apply to register an AS number, see the following URL: <http://www.iana.org/>.

---

## Cisco Implementation of 4-Byte Autonomous System Numbers

The Cisco implementation of 4-byte autonomous system (AS) numbers uses asplain—65538, for example—as the default regular expression match and output display format for AS numbers, but you can configure 4-byte AS numbers in both the asplain format and the asdot format as described in RFC 5396. To change the default regular expression match and output display of 4-byte AS numbers to asdot format, use the **bgp asnotation dot** command followed by the **clear ip bgp \*** command to perform a hard reset of all current BGP sessions. For more details about 4-byte AS number formats, see the “BGP Autonomous System Number Formats” section.

The Cisco implementation of 4-byte AS numbers uses asdot—1.2, for example—as the only configuration format, regular expression match, and output display, with no asplain support. For an example of BGP peers in two autonomous systems using 4-byte numbers, see the figure below. To view a configuration example of the configuration between three neighbor peers in separate 4-byte autonomous systems configured using asdot notation, see the “Example: Configuring a BGP Routing Process and Peers Using 4-Byte Autonomous System Numbers” section.

Cisco also supports RFC 4893, which was developed to allow BGP to support a gradual transition from 2-byte AS numbers to 4-byte AS numbers. To ensure a smooth transition, we recommend that all BGP speakers within an AS that is identified using a 4-byte AS number be upgraded to support 4-byte AS numbers.

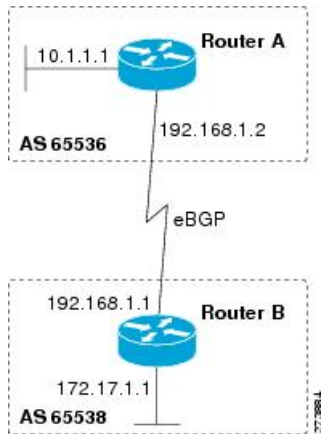


---

**Note** A new private AS number, 23456, was created by RFC 4893, and this number cannot be configured as an AS number in the Cisco IOS CLI.

---

Figure 10: BGP Peers in Two Autonomous Systems Using 4-Byte Numbers



## How to Configure BGP Support for 4-byte ASN

### Configuring a BGP Routing Process and Peers Using 4-Byte Autonomous System Numbers

Perform this task to configure a Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) routing process and BGP peers when the BGP peers are located in an autonomous system (AS) that uses 4-byte AS numbers. The address family configured here is the default IPv4 unicast address family, and the configuration is done at Router B in the figure above (in the “Cisco Implementation of 4-Byte Autonomous System Numbers” section). The 4-byte AS numbers in this task are formatted in the default asplain (decimal value) format; for example, Router B is in AS number 65538 in the figure above. Remember to perform this task for any neighbor routers that are to be BGP peers.

#### Before you begin



**Note** By default, neighbors that are defined using the **neighbor remote-as** command in router configuration mode exchange only IPv4 unicast address prefixes. To exchange other address prefix types, such as IPv6 prefixes, neighbors must also be activated using the **neighbor activate** command in address family configuration mode for the other prefix types.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp** *autonomous-system-number*
4. **neighbor** *ip-address* **remote-as** *autonomous-system-number*
5. Repeat Step 4 to define other BGP neighbors, as required.
6. **address-family ipv4** [**unicast** | **multicast** | **vrf** *vrf-name*]

7. **neighbor** *ip-address* **activate**
8. Repeat Step 7 to activate other BGP neighbors, as required.
9. **network** *network-number* [**mask** *network-mask*] [**route-map** *route-map-name*]
10. **end**
11. **show ip bgp** [*network*] [*network-mask*]
12. **show ip bgp summary**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
Step 2	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	<b>router bgp</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 65538</pre>	Enters router configuration mode for the specified routing process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In this example, the 4-byte AS number, 65538, is defined in asplain notation.</li> </ul>
Step 4	<b>neighbor</b> <i>ip-address</i> <b>remote-as</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 192.168.1.2 remote-as 65536</pre>	Adds the IP address of the neighbor in the specified AS to the IPv4 multiprotocol BGP neighbor table of the local device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In this example, the 4-byte AS number, 65536, is defined in asplain notation.</li> </ul>
Step 5	Repeat Step 4 to define other BGP neighbors, as required.	--
Step 6	<b>address-family ipv4</b> [ <b>unicast</b>   <b>multicast</b>   <b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv4 unicast</pre>	Specifies the IPv4 address family and enters address family configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>unicast</b> keyword specifies the IPv4 unicast address family. By default, the device is placed in configuration mode for the IPv4 unicast address family if the <b>unicast</b> keyword is not specified with the <b>address-family ipv4</b> command.</li> <li>• The <b>multicast</b> keyword specifies IPv4 multicast address prefixes.</li> <li>• The <b>vrf</b> keyword and <i>vrf-name</i> argument specify the name of the virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance to associate with subsequent IPv4 address family configuration mode commands.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>neighbor</b> <i>ip-address</i> <b>activate</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# neighbor 192.168.1.2 activate</pre>	Enables the neighbor to exchange prefixes for the IPv4 unicast address family with the local device.
<b>Step 8</b>	Repeat Step 7 to activate other BGP neighbors, as required.	--
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>network</b> <i>network-number</i> [ <b>mask</b> <i>network-mask</i> ] [ <b>route-map</b> <i>route-map-name</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# network 172.17.1.0 mask 255.255.255.0</pre>	(Optional) Specifies a network as local to this AS and adds it to the BGP routing table. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For exterior protocols the <b>network</b> command controls which networks are advertised. Interior protocols use the <b>network</b> command to determine where to send updates.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# end</pre>	Exits address family configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>show ip bgp</b> [ <i>network</i> ] [ <i>network-mask</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip bgp 10.1.1.0</pre>	(Optional) Displays the entries in the BGP routing table. <b>Note</b> Only the syntax applicable to this task is used in this example. For more details, see the <i>Cisco IOS IP Routing: BGP Command Reference</i> .
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>show ip bgp summary</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip bgp summary</pre>	(Optional) Displays the status of all BGP connections.

## Examples

The following output from the **show ip bgp** command at Router B shows the BGP routing table entry for network 10.1.1.0 learned from the BGP neighbor at 192.168.1.2 in Router A in the figure above with its 4-byte AS number of 65536 displayed in the default asplain format.

```
RouterB# show ip bgp 10.1.1.0

BGP routing table entry for 10.1.1.0/24, version 2
Paths: (1 available, best #1)
  Advertised to update-groups:
    2
  65536
    192.168.1.2 from 192.168.1.2 (10.1.1.99)
      Origin IGP, metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
```

The following output from the **show ip bgp summary** command shows the 4-byte AS number 65536 for the BGP neighbor 192.168.1.2 of Router A in the figure above after this task has been configured on Router B:

```
RouterB# show ip bgp summary

BGP router identifier 172.17.1.99, local AS number 65538
BGP table version is 3, main routing table version 3
2 network entries using 234 bytes of memory
2 path entries using 104 bytes of memory
3/2 BGP path/bestpath attribute entries using 444 bytes of memory
1 BGP AS-PATH entries using 24 bytes of memory
0 BGP route-map cache entries using 0 bytes of memory
0 BGP filter-list cache entries using 0 bytes of memory
BGP using 806 total bytes of memory
BGP activity 2/0 prefixes, 2/0 paths, scan interval 60 secs
Neighbor        V    AS MsgRcvd MsgSent   TblVer  InQ  OutQ  Up/Down    Stated
192.168.1.2      4      65536      6       6         3    0    0 00:01:33      1
```

## Modifying the Default Output and Regular Expression Match Format for 4-Byte Autonomous System Numbers

Perform this task to modify the default output format for 4-byte autonomous system (AS) numbers from asplain format to asdot notation format. The **show ip bgp summary** command is used to display the changes in output format for the 4-byte AS numbers.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **show ip bgp summary**
3. **configure terminal**
4. **router bgp *autonomous-system-number***
5. **bgp asnotation dot**
6. **end**
7. **clear ip bgp \***
8. **show ip bgp summary**
9. **show ip bgp regexp *regexp***
10. **configure terminal**
11. **router bgp *autonomous-system-number***
12. **no bgp asnotation dot**
13. **end**
14. **clear ip bgp \***

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	<b>Example:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device> enable	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>show ip bgp summary</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip bgp summary	Displays the status of all Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) connections.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>router bgp <i>autonomous-system-number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router bgp 65538	Enters router configuration mode for the specified routing process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In this example, the 4-byte AS number, 65538, is defined in asplain notation.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>bgp asnotation dot</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# bgp asnotation dot	Changes the default output format of BGP 4-byte AS numbers from asplain (decimal values) to dot notation. <p><b>Note</b> 4-byte AS numbers can be configured using either asplain format or asdot format. This command affects only the output displayed for <b>show</b> commands or the matching of regular expressions.</p>
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# end	Exits address family configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>clear ip bgp *</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# clear ip bgp *	Clears and resets all current BGP sessions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In this example, a hard reset is performed to ensure that the 4-byte AS number format change is reflected in all BGP sessions.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> Only the syntax applicable to this task is used in this example. For more details, see the <i>Cisco IOS IP Routing: BGP Command Reference</i>.</p>
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>show ip bgp summary</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ip bgp summary	Displays the status of all BGP connections.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show ip bgp regexp <i>regexp</i></b>	Displays routes that match the AS path regular expression.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<b>Example:</b>  Device# show ip bgp regexp ^1\.0\$	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In this example, a regular expression to match a 4-byte AS path is configured using asdot format.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>router bgp <i>autonomous-system-number</i></b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# router bgp 65538	Enters router configuration mode for the specified routing process.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In this example, the 4-byte AS number, 65538, is defined in asplain notation.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>no bgp asnotation dot</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# no bgp asnotation dot	Resets the default output format of BGP 4-byte AS numbers back to asplain (decimal values).  <b>Note</b> 4-byte AS numbers can be configured using either asplain format or asdot format. This command affects only the output displayed for <b>show</b> commands or the matching of regular expressions.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# end	Exits router configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>clear ip bgp *</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# clear ip bgp *	Clears and resets all current BGP sessions.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In this example, a hard reset is performed to ensure that the 4-byte AS number format change is reflected in all BGP sessions.</li> </ul> <b>Note</b> Only the syntax applicable to this task is used in this example. For more details, see the <i>Cisco IOS IP Routing: BGP Command Reference</i> .

### Examples

The following output from the **show ip bgp summary** command shows the default asplain format of the 4-byte AS numbers. Note the asplain format of the 4-byte AS numbers, 65536 and 65550.

```
Router# show ip bgp summary
```

```
BGP router identifier 172.17.1.99, local AS number 65538
BGP table version is 1, main routing table version 1
```

Neighbor	V	AS	MsgRcvd	MsgSent	TblVer	InQ	OutQ	Up/Down	Statd
192.168.1.2	4	65536	7	7	1	0	0	00:03:04	0
192.168.3.2	4	65550	4	4	1	0	0	00:00:15	0

After the **bgp asnotation dot** command is configured (followed by the **clear ip bgp \*** command to perform a hard reset of all current BGP sessions), the output is converted to asdot notation format as shown in the following output from the **show ip bgp summary** command. Note the asdot format of the 4-byte AS numbers, 1.0 and 1.14 (these are the asdot conversions of the 65536 and 65550 AS numbers).

```
Router# show ip bgp summary
```

```
BGP router identifier 172.17.1.99, local AS number 1.2
BGP table version is 1, main routing table version 1
Neighbor      V      AS MsgRcvd MsgSent  TblVer  InQ OutQ Up/Down  Statd
192.168.1.2    4        1.0      9       9        1    0   0 00:04:13    0
192.168.3.2    4        1.14     6       6        1    0   0 00:01:24    0
```

After the **bgp asnotation dot** command is configured (followed by the **clear ip bgp \*** command to perform a hard reset of all current BGP sessions), the regular expression match format for 4-byte AS paths is changed to asdot notation format. Although a 4-byte AS number can be configured in a regular expression using either asplain format or asdot format, only 4-byte AS numbers configured using the current default format are matched. In the first example below, the **show ip bgp regexp** command is configured with a 4-byte AS number in asplain format. The match fails because the default format is currently asdot format and there is no output. In the second example using asdot format, the match passes and the information about the 4-byte AS path is shown using the asdot notation.



**Note** The asdot notation uses a period, which is a special character in Cisco regular expressions. To remove the special meaning, use a backslash before the period.

```
Router# show ip bgp regexp ^65536$
```

```
Router# show ip bgp regexp ^1\.0$
```

```
BGP table version is 2, local router ID is 172.17.1.99
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i - internal,
               r RIB-failure, S Stale
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
   Network        Next Hop           Metric LocPrf Weight Path
*> 10.1.1.0/24     192.168.1.2             0           0 1.0 i
```



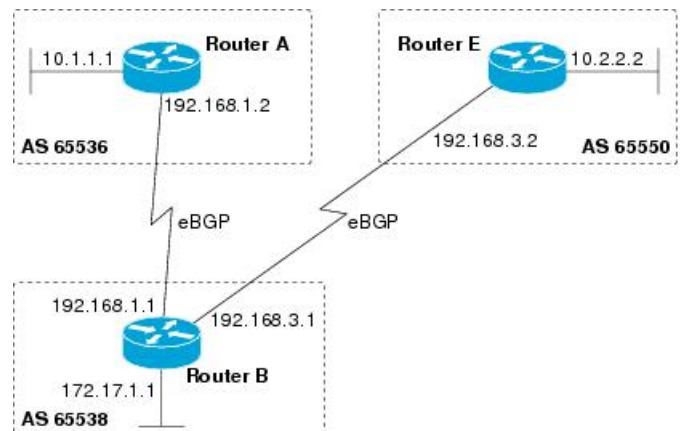
# Configuration Examples for BGP Support for 4-byte ASN

## Examples: Configuring a BGP Routing Process and Peers Using 4-Byte Autonomous System Numbers

### Asplain Format

The following example shows the configuration for Router A, Router B, and Router E in the figure below with a Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) process configured between three neighbor peers (at Router A, at Router B, and at Router E) in separate 4-byte autonomous systems configured using asplain notation. IPv4 unicast routes are exchanged with all peers.

**Figure 11: BGP Peers Using 4-Byte Autonomous System Numbers in Asplain Format**



### Router A

```

router bgp 65536
  bgp router-id 10.1.1.99
  no bgp default ipv4-unicast
  bgp fast-external-fallover
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  timers bgp 70 120
  neighbor 192.168.1.1 remote-as 65538
  !
  address-family ipv4
    neighbor 192.168.1.1 activate
    no auto-summary
    no synchronization
    network 10.1.1.0 mask 255.255.255.0
  exit-address-family
  
```

### Router B

```

router bgp 65538
  bgp router-id 172.17.1.99
  no bgp default ipv4-unicast
  
```

```

bgp fast-external-fallover
bgp log-neighbor-changes
timers bgp 70 120
neighbor 192.168.1.2 remote-as 65536
neighbor 192.168.3.2 remote-as 65550
neighbor 192.168.3.2 description finance
!
address-family ipv4
neighbor 192.168.1.2 activate
neighbor 192.168.3.2 activate
no auto-summary
no synchronization
network 172.17.1.0 mask 255.255.255.0
exit-address-family

```

## Router E

```

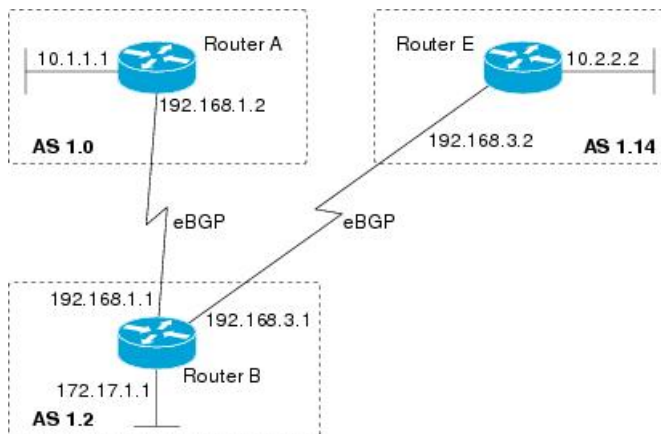
router bgp 65550
bgp router-id 10.2.2.99
no bgp default ipv4-unicast
bgp fast-external-fallover
bgp log-neighbor-changes
timers bgp 70 120
neighbor 192.168.3.1 remote-as 65538
!
address-family ipv4
neighbor 192.168.3.1 activate
no auto-summary
no synchronization
network 10.2.2.0 mask 255.255.255.0
exit-address-family

```

## Asdot Format

The following example shows how to create the configuration for Router A, Router B, and Router E in the figure below with a BGP process configured between three neighbor peers (at Router A, at Router B, and at Router E) in separate 4-byte autonomous systems configured using the default asdot format. IPv4 unicast routes are exchanged with all peers.

**Figure 12: BGP Peers Using 4-Byte Autonomous System Numbers in Asdot Format**



### Router A

```
router bgp 1.0
  bgp router-id 10.1.1.99
  no bgp default ipv4-unicast
  bgp fast-external-fallover
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  timers bgp 70 120
  neighbor 192.168.1.1 remote-as 1.2
  !
  address-family ipv4
    neighbor 192.168.1.1 activate
    no auto-summary
    no synchronization
    network 10.1.1.0 mask 255.255.255.0
  exit-address-family
```

### Router B

```
router bgp 1.2
  bgp router-id 172.17.1.99
  no bgp default ipv4-unicast
  bgp fast-external-fallover
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  timers bgp 70 120
  neighbor 192.168.1.2 remote-as 1.0
  neighbor 192.168.3.2 remote-as 1.14
  neighbor 192.168.3.2 description finance
  !
  address-family ipv4
    neighbor 192.168.1.2 activate
    neighbor 192.168.3.2 activate
    no auto-summary
    no synchronization
    network 172.17.1.0 mask 255.255.255.0
  exit-address-family
```

### Router E

```
router bgp 1.14
  bgp router-id 10.2.2.99
  no bgp default ipv4-unicast
  bgp fast-external-fallover
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  timers bgp 70 120
  neighbor 192.168.3.1 remote-as 1.2
  !
  address-family ipv4
    neighbor 192.168.3.1 activate
    no auto-summary
    no synchronization
    network 10.2.2.0 mask 255.255.255.0
  exit-address-family
```

## Examples: Configuring a VRF and Setting an Extended Community Using a BGP 4-Byte Autonomous System Number

The following example shows how to create a VRF with a route target that uses a 4-byte autonomous system number, 65537, and how to set the route target to extended community value 65537:100 for routes that are permitted by the route map:

```
ip vrf vpn_red
 rd 64500:100
 route-target both 65537:100
 exit
route-map red_map permit 10
 set extcommunity rt 65537:100
 end
```

After the configuration is completed, use the **show route-map** command to verify that the extended community is set to the route target that contains the 4-byte autonomous system number of 65537:

```
RouterB# show route-map red_map
route-map red_map, permit, sequence 10
 Match clauses:
  Set clauses:
    extended community RT:65537:100
 Policy routing matches: 0 packets, 0 bytes
```

### 4-Byte Autonomous System Number RD Support

The following example shows how to create a VRF with a route distinguisher that contains a 4-byte AS number 65536, and a route target that contains a 4-byte autonomous system number, 65537:

```
ip vrf vpn_red
 rd 65536:100
 route-target both 65537:100
 exit
```

After the configuration is completed, use the **show vrf** command to verify that the 4-byte AS number route distinguisher is set to 65536:100:

```
RouterB# show vrf vpn_red
Current configuration : 36 bytes
vrf definition x
 rd 65536:100
!
```

### Asdot Default Format in Cisco IOS Release 12.0(32)S12, and 12.4(24)T

The following example shows how to create a VRF with a route target that uses a 4-byte autonomous system number, 1.1, and how to set the route target to the extended community value 1.1:100 for routes that are permitted by the route map.



**Note** This example works if you have configured asdot as the default display format using the **bgp asnotation dot** command.

```
ip vrf vpn_red
 rd 64500:100
  route-target both 1.1:100
 exit
route-map red_map permit 10
 set extcommunity rt 1.1:100
end
```

After the configuration is completed, use the **show route-map** command to verify that the extended community is set to the route target that contains the 4-byte autonomous system number of 1.1.

```
RouterB# show route-map red_map
route-map red_map, permit, sequence 10
  Match clauses:
  Set clauses:
    extended community RT:1.1:100
  Policy routing matches: 0 packets, 0 bytes
```

### Asdot Default Format for 4-Byte Autonomous System Number RD Support

The following example works if you have configured asdot as the default display format using the **bgp asnotation dot** command:

```
ip vrf vpn_red
 rd 1.0:100
  route-target both 1.1:100
 exit
```

## Additional References for BGP Support for 4-byte ASN

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
BGP commands	<i>Cisco IOS IP Routing: BGP Command Reference</i>

### Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Title
RFC 4893	<i>BGP Support for Four-octet AS Number Space</i>
RFC 5396	<i>Textual Representation of Autonomous System (AS) Numbers</i>
RFC 5398	<i>Autonomous System (AS) Number Reservation for Documentation Use</i>
RFC 5668	<i>4-Octet AS Specific BGP Extended Community</i>

## Feature History and Information for BGP Support for 4-byte ASN

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Release	Modification
Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	This feature was introduced.



## CHAPTER 16

# Configuring BGP Graceful Shutdown

- [Information About BGP Graceful Shutdown, on page 277](#)
- [How to Configure BGP Graceful Shutdown, on page 278](#)
- [Configuration Examples for BGP Graceful Shutdown, on page 283](#)
- [Additional References, on page 286](#)
- [Feature Information for BGP Graceful Shutdown, on page 286](#)

## Information About BGP Graceful Shutdown

### Purpose and Benefits of BGP Graceful Shutdown

There are times when planned maintenance operations cause routing changes in BGP. After the shutdown of eBGP and iBGP peering sessions between autonomous system border routers (ASBRs), BGP devices are temporarily unreachable during BGP convergence. The goal of gracefully shutting down one or more BGP sessions is to minimize traffic loss during the planned shutdown and subsequent reestablishment of the sessions.

The BGP Graceful Shutdown feature reduces or eliminates the loss of inbound or outbound traffic flows that were initially forwarded along the peering link that is being shut down for maintenance. This feature is primarily for PE-CE, PE-RR and PE-PE links. Lowering the local preference for paths received over the session being shutdown renders the affected paths less preferred by the BGP decision process, but still allows the paths to be used during the convergence while alternative paths are propagated to the affected devices. Therefore, devices always have a valid route available during the convergence process.

The feature also allows vendors to provide a graceful shutdown mechanism that does not require any router reconfiguration at maintenance time. The benefits of the BGP Graceful Shutdown feature are fewer lost packets and less time spent reconfiguring devices.

### GSHUT Community

The GSHUT community is a well-known community used in conjunction with the BGP Graceful Shutdown feature. The GSHUT community attribute is applied to a neighbor specified by the **neighbor shutdown graceful** command, thereby gracefully shutting down the link in an expected number of seconds. The GSHUT community is always sent by the GSHUT initiator.

The GSHUT community is specified in a community list, which is referenced by a route map and then used to make policy routing decisions.

The GSHUT community can also be used in the **show ip bgp community** command to limit output to GSHUT routes.

## BGP GSHUT Enhancement

The BGP Graceful Shutdown (GSHUT) Enhancement feature enables graceful shutdown of either all neighbors or only virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) neighbors across BGP sessions. To enable the BGP GSHUT enhancement feature on the device, you must configure either the **community** keyword or the **local-preference** keyword in the **bgp graceful-shutdown all** command. Use the **activate** keyword to activate graceful shutdown either across all neighbors or only across all VRF neighbors, across all BGP sessions.

# How to Configure BGP Graceful Shutdown

## Shutting Down a BGP Link Gracefully

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp** *autonomous-system-number*
4. **neighbor** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **remote-as** *number*
5. **neighbor** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address* | *peer-group-name*} **shutdown graceful** *seconds* {**community** *value* [**local-preference** *value*] | **local-preference** *value*}
6. **end**
7. **show ip bgp community gshut**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li></ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# router bgp 5000	Configures a BGP routing process.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor {ipv4-address   ipv6-address} remote-as number</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:db8:3::1 remote-as 5500</pre>	Configures the autonomous system (AS) to which the neighbor belongs.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>neighbor {ipv4-address   ipv6-address   peer-group-name} shutdown graceful seconds {community value [local-preference value]   local-preference value}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:db8:3::1 shutdown graceful 600 community 1200 local-preference 300</pre>	<p>Configures the device to gracefully shut down the link to the specified peer in the specified number of seconds; advertises the route with the GSHUT (Graceful Shutdown) community; and advertises the route with another community or specifies a local preference value for the route, or both.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure to specify an adequate amount of time for iBGP peers to converge and to choose an alternate path as the best path.</li> <li>• If the <b>graceful</b> keyword is used in the <b>neighbor shutdown</b> command, at least one of the two attributes (a community or local preference) must be configured. You may configure both attributes.</li> <li>• If the <b>graceful</b> keyword is used in the <b>neighbor shutdown</b> command, the route is advertised with the GSHUT community by default. You may also set one other community for policy routing purposes.</li> <li>• In this particular example, the route to the neighbor is configured to shut down in 600 seconds, is advertised with the GSHUT community and community 1200, and is configured with a local preference of 300.</li> <li>• The device receiving the advertisement looks at the community value(s) of the route and optionally uses the community value to apply routing policy. Filtering routes based on a community is done with the <b>ip community-list</b> command and a route map.</li> <li>• During the graceful shutdown, the <b>neighbor shutdown</b> command is not nvgened. After the timer expires, SHUTDOWN is nvgened.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# end</pre>	Returns to EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip bgp community gshut</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip bgp community gshut</pre>	(Optional) Displays information about the routes that are advertised with the well-known GSHUT community.

## Filtering BGP Routes Based on the GSHUT Community

Perform this task on a BGP peer to the device where you enabled the BGP Graceful Shutdown feature.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router bgp** *autonomous-system-number*
4. **neighbor** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **remote-as** *number*
5. **neighbor** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **activate**
6. **neighbor** {*ipv4-address* | *ipv6-address*} **send-community**
7. **exit**
8. **route-map** *map-tag* [**permit** | **deny**] [*sequence-number*]
9. **match community** {*standard-list-number* | *expanded-list-number* | *community-list-name* [**exact**]}
10. **exit**
11. **ip community-list** {*standard* | **standard** *list-name*} {**deny** | **permit**} **gshut**
12. **router bgp** *autonomous-system-number*
13. **neighbor** *address* **route-map** *map-name* **in**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. • Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router bgp 2000	Configures a BGP routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ipv4-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> } <b>remote-as</b> <i>number</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:db8:4::1 remote-as 1000	Configures the autonomous system (AS) to which the neighbor belongs.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ipv4-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> } <b>activate</b> <b>Example:</b>	Activates the neighbor.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:db8:4::1 activate	
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>neighbor</b> { <i>ipv4-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> } <b>send-community</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# neighbor 2001:db8:4::1 send-community	Enables BGP community exchange with the neighbor.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# exit	Exits router configuration mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> [ <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> ] [ <i>sequence-number</i> ] <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# route-map RM_GSHUT deny 10	Configures a route map to permit or deny routes for policy routing.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>match community</b> { <i>standard-list-number</i>   <i>expanded-list-number</i>   <i>community-list-name</i> [ <b>exact</b> ]} <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# match community GSHUT	Configures that the routes that match ip community-list GSHUT will be policy routed.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-route-map)# exit	Exits route-map configuration mode.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>ip community-list</b> { <i>standard</i>   <b>standard</b> <i>list-name</i> } { <b>deny</b>   <b>permit</b> } <b>gshut</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# ip community-list standard GSHUT permit gshut	Configures a community list and permits or denies routes that have the GSHUT community to the community list. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you specify other communities in the same statement, there is a logical AND operation and all communities in the statement must match the communities for the route in order for the statement to be processed.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router bgp 2000	Configures a BGP routing process.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>neighbor</b> <i>address</i> <b>route-map</b> <i>map-name</i> <b>in</b> <b>Example:</b>	Applies the route map to incoming routes from the specified neighbor.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config)# neighbor 2001:db8:4::1 route-map RM_GSHUT in</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In this example, the route map named RM_GSHUT denies routes from the specified neighbor that have the GSHUT community.</li> </ul>

## Configuring BGP GSHUT Enhancement

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. router bgp *autonomous-system-number*
4. bgp graceful-shutdown all {neighbors | vrfs} shutdown-time {community community-value [local-preference local-pref-value] | local-preference local-pref-value [community community-value]}
5. bgp graceful-shutdown all {neighbors | vrfs} activate
6. end
7. show ip bgp
8. show running-config

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router bgp</b> <i>autonomous-system-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router bgp 65000</pre>	Enters router configuration mode to create or configure a BGP routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>bgp graceful-shutdown all {neighbors   vrfs} shutdown-time {community community-value [local-preference local-pref-value]   local-preference local-pref-value [community community-value]}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bgp graceful-shutdown all neighbors 180 local-preference 20 community 10</pre>	Enables the BGP GSHUT enhancement feature on the device.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>bgp graceful-shutdown all {neighbors   vrfs} activate</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bgp graceful-shutdown all neighbors activate</pre>	Activates graceful shutdown across all neighbors or only across VRF neighbors for BGP sessions.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip bgp</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ip bgp neighbors 10.2.2.2   include shutdown</pre>	Displays entries in the BGP routing table.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show running-config   session router bgp</pre>	Displays running configuration on the device.

## Configuration Examples for BGP Graceful Shutdown

### Example: Shutting Down a BGP Link Gracefully

#### Graceful Shutdown While Setting a Local-Preference

This example gracefully shuts down the link to the specified neighbor in 600 seconds, adds the GSHUT community to the route, and sets a local preference of 500 for the route.

```
router bgp 1000
 neighbor 2001:db8:5::1 remote-as 2000
 neighbor 2001:db8:5::1 shutdown graceful 600 local-preference 500
 neighbor 2001:db8:5::1 send-community
exit
```

#### Graceful Shutdown While Setting an Additional Community

This example gracefully shuts down the link to the specified neighbor in 600 seconds, and adds the GSHUT community and numbered community to the route.

```
router bgp 1000
 neighbor 2001:db8:5::1 remote-as 2000
```

**Example: Filtering BGP Routes Based on the GSHUT Community**

```
neighbor 2001:db8:5::1 shutdown graceful 600 community 1400
neighbor 2001:db8:5::1 send-community
exit
```

**Graceful Shutdown while Setting an Additional Community and Local-Preference**

This example gracefully shuts down the link to the specified neighbor in 600 seconds, adds the GSHUT community and the numbered community to the route, and sets a local preference of 500 to the route.

```
router bgp 1000
neighbor 2001:db8:5::1 remote-as 2000
neighbor 2001:db8:5::1 shutdown graceful 600 community 1400 local-preference 500
neighbor 2001:db8:5::1 send-community
exit
```

**Example: Filtering BGP Routes Based on the GSHUT Community**

In addition to being able to gracefully shut down a BGP route, another use of the GSHUT community is to configure a community list to filter routes with this community from getting into the BGP routing table.

This example illustrates how to use a community list to filter incoming BGP routes based on the GSHUT community. In this example, a route map named RM\_GSHUT denies routes based on a standard community list named GSHUT. The community list contains routes with the GSHUT community. The route map is then applied to incoming routes from the neighbor at 2001:db8:4::1.

```
router bgp 2000
neighbor 2001:db8:4::1 remote-as 1000
neighbor 2001:db8:4::1 activate
neighbor 2001:db8:4::1 send-community
exit
route-map RM_GSHUT deny 10
match community GSHUT
exit
ip community-list standard GSHUT permit gshut
router bgp 2000
neighbor 2001:db8:4::1 route-map RM_GSHUT in
```

**Example: BGP GSHUT Enhancement**

The following example shows how to enable and activate the BGP GSHUT enhancement feature across all neighbors. In this example, the neighbors are configured to gracefully shutdown within the specified duration of 180 seconds.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# router bgp 65000
Device(config-router)# bgp graceful-shutdown all neighbors 180 local-preference 20 community 10
```

```
Device(config-router)# bgp graceful-shutdown all neighbors activate  
Device(config-router)# end
```

Following is sample output from the **show ip bgp** command, which displays the graceful shutdown time for each neighbor. In this example, there are two IPv4 neighbors configured with IP address 10.2.2.2 and 172.16.2.1 and one VRF neighbor, tagged v1, is configured with IP address 192.168.1.1.

```
Device# show ip bgp neighbors 10.2.2.2 | include shutdown
```

```
Graceful Shutdown Timer running, schedule to reset the peer in 00:02:47 seconds  
Graceful Shutdown Localpref set to 20  
Graceful Shutdown Community set to 10
```

```
Device# show ip bgp neighbors 172.16.2.1 | include shutdown
```

```
Graceful Shutdown Timer running, schedule to reset the peer in 00:02:38 seconds  
Graceful Shutdown Localpref set to 20  
Graceful Shutdown Community set to 10
```

```
Device# show ip bgp vpnv4 vrf v1 neighbors 192.168.1.1 | include shutdown
```

```
Graceful Shutdown Timer running, schedule to reset the peer in 00:01:45 seconds  
Graceful Shutdown Localpref set to 20  
Graceful Shutdown Community set to 10
```

Following is sample output from the **show running-config** command, which displays information associated with the BGP session in router configuration mode:

```
Device# show running-config | session router bgp
```

```
router bgp 65000  
  bgp log-neighbor-changes  
  bgp graceful-shutdown all neighbors 180 local-preference 20 community 10  
  network 10.1.1.0 mask 255.255.255.0  
  neighbor 10.2.2.2 remote-as 40  
  neighbor 10.2.2.2 shutdown  
  neighbor 172.16.2.1 remote-as 10  
  neighbor 172.16.2.1 shutdown  
  !  
  address-family vpnv4  
    neighbor 172.16.2.1 activate  
    neighbor 172.16.2.1 send-community both  
  exit-address-family  
  !  
  address-family ipv4 vrf v1  
    neighbor 192.168.1.1 remote-as 30  
    neighbor 192.168.1.1 shutdown  
    neighbor 192.168.1.1 activate  
    neighbor 192.168.1.1 send-community both  
  exit-address-family
```

## Additional References

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
BGP commands	<i>Cisco IOS IP Routing: BGP Command Reference</i>

### Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Title
RFC 6198	<i>Requirements for the Graceful Shutdown of BGP Sessions</i>

## Feature Information for BGP Graceful Shutdown

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Release	Modification
Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	This feature was introduced.





## CHAPTER 17

# Configuring EIGRP MIB

- [EIGRP MIB, on page 287](#)

## EIGRP MIB

The EIGRP MIB feature provides complete Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) support for GET requests and limited notification (also known as trap) support for neighbor authentication failure, neighbor down, and stuck-in-active (SIA) events. This MIB is accessed through remote Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) software clients. The EIGRP IPv6 MIB feature enables IPv6 support for the EIGRP MIB.

## Prerequisites for EIGRP MIB

- An Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) routing process must be enabled and a Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) community string must be configured on at least one device for EIGRP MIB table objects to be visible via SNMP.
- Support for EIGRP notifications (traps) is not activated until a trap destination is configured.

## Restrictions for EIGRP MIB

EIGRP MIB support was not implemented for the EIGRP Prefix Limit Support feature.

## Information About EIGRP MIB

### EIGRP MIB Overview

The EIGRP MIB feature provides MIB support in Cisco software for Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) routing processes that run over IPv4 and IPv6. The EIGRP MIB is accessed through remote Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) software clients. MIB table objects are accessed as read-only through GETBULK, GETINFO, GETMANY, GETONE, and GETNEXT requests. Counters for MIB table objects are cleared when the EIGRP routing process is reset or when the routing table is refreshed when you enter the **clear ip route** or **clear ip eigrp** command. Managed objects for all EIGRP routing processes are implemented as five table objects—EIGRP Interface, EIGRP Neighbor, EIGRP Topology, EIGRP Traffic Statistics, and EIGRP VPN—on a per-autonomous-system or per-VPN basis.

## EIGRP Interface Table

The EIGRP Interface table contains information and statistics for all interfaces on which the Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) has been configured. The objects in this table are populated on a per-interface basis. The table below describes EIGRP Interface table objects and the values populated for each object.

**Table 34: EIGRP Interface Table Object Descriptions**

EIGRP Interface Table Object	Description
cEigrpAcksSuppressed	Total number of individual acknowledgment packets that have been suppressed and combined in an already enqueued outbound reliable packet on an interface.
cEigrpAuthKeyChain	The name of the authentication key chain that is configured on the interface. The key chain is a reference to the set of secret keys that need to be accessed to determine the key string that needs to be used.
cEigrpAuthMode	The authentication mode that is configured for traffic that uses the interface. A value of 0 is displayed when no authentication is enabled. A value of 1 is displayed when message digest algorithm 5 (MD5) authentication is enabled.
cEigrpCRpkts	Total number conditional receive (CR) packets sent from the interface.
cEigrpHelloInterval	The configured time interval (in seconds) between hello packet transmissions on the interface.
cEigrpPacingReliable	The configured time interval (in milliseconds) between EIGRP packet transmissions on the interface when the reliable transport is used.
cEigrpPacingUnreliable	The configured time interval (in milliseconds) between EIGRP packet transmissions on the interface when the unreliable transport is used.
cEigrpPeerCount	Total number of neighbor adjacencies formed through the interface.
cEigrpPendingRoutes	Total number of routing updates that are queued for transmission on the interface.
cEigrpMcastExcept	Total number of EIGRP multicast exception transmissions that have occurred on the interface.
cEigrpMeanSrtt	The computed smooth round-trip time (SRTT) for packets that were transmitted to and received from all neighbors on the interface.
cEigrpMFlowTimer	The configured multicast flow control timer value (in milliseconds) for the interface.
cEigrpOOSrcvd	Total number of out-of-sequence packets received on the interface.
cEigrpRetranSent	Total number of packet retransmissions sent from the interface.
cEigrpRMcasts	Total number of reliable (acknowledgment required) multicast packets that were transmitted on the interface.

EIGRP Interface Table Object	Description
cEigrpRUcasts	Total number of reliable (acknowledgment required) unicast packets that were transmitted on the interface.
cEigrpUMcasts	Total number of unreliable (no acknowledgment required) multicast packets that were transmitted on the interface.
cEigrpUUcasts	Total number of unreliable (no acknowledgment required) unicast packets that were transmitted on the interface.
cEigrpXmitNextSerial	The serial number of the next packet that is queued for transmission on the interface.
cEigrpXmitReliableQ	Total number of packets waiting in the reliable transport transmission queue (acknowledgment required).
cEigrpXmitUnreliableQ	Total number of packets waiting in the unreliable transport transmission queue (no acknowledgment required).

## EIGRP Neighbor Table

The EIGRP Neighbor table contains information about Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) neighbors with which adjacencies have been established. EIGRP uses a “Hello” protocol to form neighbor relationships with directly connected EIGRP neighbors. The objects in this table are populated on a per-neighbor basis. The table below describes EIGRP Neighbor table objects and the values populated for each object.

**Table 35: EIGRP Neighbor Table Object Descriptions**

EIGRP Neighbor Table Object	Description
cEigrpHoldTime	The hold timer value for an adjacency with a neighbor. If this timer expires, the neighbor is declared down and removed from the neighbor table.
cEigrpLastSeq	The number of the last sequence of a packet transmitted to a neighbor. This table object value increases as the sequence number increases.
cEigrpPeerAddr	The source IP address of a neighbor that was used to establish an EIGRP adjacency with the local device. The source IP address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address.
cEigrpPeerAddrType	The protocol type of the remote source IP address that was used by a neighbor to establish an EIGRP adjacency with the local device. The protocol type can be IPv4 or IPv6.
cEigrpPeerIfIndex	The index of the local interface through which a neighbor can be reached.
cEigrpPeerInterface	The name of the local interface through which a neighbor can be reached.
cEigrpPktsEnqueued	Total number of EIGRP packets (all types) currently queued for transmission to a neighbor.
cEigrpRetrans	Cumulative number of packets retransmitted to a neighbor while the neighbor is in an up state.

EIGRP Neighbor Table Object	Description
cEigrpRetries	Total number of times an unacknowledged packet is sent to a neighbor.
cEigrpRto	The computed retransmission timeout (RTO) for a neighbor. The value for this table object is computed as an aggregate average of the time required for packet delivery.
cEigrpSrtt	The computed smooth round-trip time (SRTT) for packets that are transmitted to and received from a neighbor.
cEigrpUpTime	The period for which the EIGRP adjacency to a neighbor has been in an up state. The time period is displayed in hours:minutes:seconds.
cEigrpVersion	EIGRP version information reported by a remote neighbor.

## EIGRP Topology Table

The EIGRP Topology table contains information about Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) routes that are received in updates and routes that are locally originated. EIGRP sends routing updates to and receives routing updates from adjacent routers with which adjacencies have been formed. The objects in this table are populated on a per-topology table entry (route) basis. The table below describes EIGRP Topology table objects and the values populated for each object.

**Table 36: EIGRP Topology Table Object Descriptions**

EIGRP Topology Table Object	Description
cEigrpActive	Status of routes in the topology table. The value for this table object is displayed on a per-route basis. A value of 1 is displayed when a route is in active state. A value of 2 is displayed when a route is in passive state (normal).
cEigrpDestSuccessors	Total number of successors (a successor is a route that is the next hop to a destination network) for a topology table entry. The topology table will contain a successor for each path to a given destination. This table object value increases each time a successor is added.
cEigrpDistance	The computed distance to the destination network entry from the local router.
cEigrpFdistance	The feasible (best) distance to a destination network. This value is used to calculate a feasible successor for a topology table entry.
cEigrpNextHopAddress	The next-hop IP address for a route in a topology table entry. The next hop can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address.
cEigrpNextHopAddressType	The protocol type of the next-hop IP address for a route in a topology table entry. The protocol type can be IPv4 or IPv6.
cEigrpNextHopInterface	The interface through which the next-hop IP address is reached to forward traffic to the destination.
cEigrpReportDistance	The computed distance to the destination network in the topology entry as reported by the originator of the route.

EIGRP Topology Table Object	Description
cEigrpRouteOriginAddr	The IP address of the router that originated the route in the topology table entry. This table is populated only if the topology table entry was not locally originated. The route origin address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address.
cEigrpRouteOriginType	The protocol type of the IP address defined as the origin of the topology route entry. The protocol type can be IPv4 or IPv6.
cEigrpStuckInActive	Stuck-in-active (SIA) status of a route. The value for this table object is displayed on a per-route basis. A value of 1 is displayed when a route is in SIA state (that is, no reply has been received for queries about alternate paths). SIA queries are transmitted when a route is placed in this state.

## EIGRP Traffic Statistics Table

The EIGRP Traffic Statistics table contains counters and statistics for specific types of Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) packets that are sent and the related, collective information that is generated. Objects in this table are populated on a per-autonomous-system basis. Objects in this table are populated for adjacencies formed on interfaces that have IP addresses configured under EIGRP network statements. The table below describes EIGRP Traffic Statistics table objects and the values populated for each object.

**Table 37: EIGRP Traffic Statistics Table Object Descriptions**

EIGRP Traffic Statistics Table Object	Description
cEigrpAcksRcvd	Total number of acknowledgment packets that are received in response to the transmitted update packets. This table object value increases as packets are received.
cEigrpAcksSent	Total number of acknowledgment packets that are transmitted in response to received update packets. This table object value increases as packets are transmitted.
cEigrpAsRouterId	The configured or automatically selected router ID in IP address format. This table object is updated if the router ID is manually reconfigured or if the IP address that was automatically selected is removed.
cEigrpAsRouterIdType	The type of IP address that is used as the router ID. The value for this table object is an IPv4 address.
cEigrpInputQDrops	Total number of packets that are dropped from the input queue because the input queue was full. This table object value increases each time a packet is dropped.
cEigrpInputQHighMark	The highest number of packets that have been in the input queue. This table object value increases only when the previous highest number is exceeded.

EIGRP Traffic Statistics Table Object	Description
cEigrpHeadSerial	Internal sequencing number (serial) that is applied to EIGRP topology table routes. Routes are sequenced starting with 1. A value of 0 is displayed when there are no routes in the topology table. The “Head” serial number is applied to the first route in the sequence.
cEigrpHellosRcvd	Total number of received hello packets. This table object value increases as packets are received.
cEigrpHellosSent	Total number of hello packets transmitted. This table object value increases as packets are transmitted.
cEigrpNbrCount	Total number of live neighbors. This table object value increases or decreases as peering sessions are established or expired.
cEigrpNextSerial	Serial number that is applied to the next route in the sequence.
cEigrpQueriesSent	Total number of alternate route query packets that are transmitted. This table object value increases as packets are transmitted.
cEigrpQueriesRcvd	Total number of alternate route query packets that are received. This table object value increases as packets are received.
cEigrpRepliesSent	Total number of reply packets that are transmitted in response to the received query packets. This table object value increases as packets are transmitted.
cEigrpRepliesRcvd	Total number of reply packets that are received in response to transmitted query packets. This table object value increases as packets are received.
cEigrpSiaQueriesSent	Total number of query packets that are sent in response to a destination that is in a stuck-in-active (SIA) state for a down peer. This table object value increases each time an SIA query packet is sent.
cEigrpSiaQueriesRcvd	Total number of SIA query packets that are received from neighbors searching for an alternate path to a destination. This table object value increases each time an SIA query packet is received.
cEigrpTopoRoutes	Total number of EIGRP-derived routes in the topology table. This table object value increases if a route is added.
cEigrpUpdatesRcvd	Total number of routing update packets that are received. This table object value increases as packets are received.
cEigrpUpdatesSent	Total number of routing update packets that are transmitted. This table object value increases as packets are transmitted.
cEigrpXmitDummies	Total number of temporary entries in the topology table. Dummies are internal entries and not transmitted in routing updates.
cEigrpXmitPendReplies	Total number of replies expected in response to locally transmitted query packets. This table object contains a value of 0 until a route is placed in an active state.

## EIGRP VPN Table

The EIGRP VPN table contains information about VPNs that are configured to run an Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) process. Devices index VPN routes by using the VPN name and the EIGRP autonomous system number. The table below describes the EIGRP VPN table object and the value populated for that object.

**Table 38: EIGRP VPN Table Object Description**

EIGRP VPN Table Object	Description
cEigrpVpnName	The VPN routing and forwarding (VRF) name. Only VRFs that are configured to run an EIGRP routing process are populated.

## EIGRP Notifications

The EIGRP MIB provides limited notification (trap) support for neighbor authentication failure, neighbor down, and stuck-in-active (SIA) events. Use the **snmp-server enable traps eigrp** command to enable Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) notifications or traps on a Cisco device. To activate support for trap events, you must configure a trap destination by using the **snmp-server host** command and define a community string by using the **snmp-server community** command. EIGRP notifications are described in the table below.

**Table 39: EIGRP Notifications**

EIGRP Notifications	Description
cEigrpAuthFailureEvent	When EIGRP message digest algorithm 5 (MD5) authentication is enabled on any interface and neighbor adjacencies are formed, a notification is sent if any adjacency goes down because of an authentication failure. This notification will be sent once per down event. This notification includes the source IP address of the neighbor from which the authentication failure occurred.
cEigrpNbrDownEvent	This notification is sent when a neighbor goes down for any reason, such as hold time expiry, neighbor shutdown, interface shutdown, SIA events, or authentication failure. If a neighbor is down because of an authentication failure, both cEigrpAuthFailureEvent and cEigrpNbrDownEvent notifications are sent.
cEigrpRouteStuckInActive	During the query phase for a new route to a destination network, the route is placed in active state (during which an alternate path is actively sought) and a query packet is broadcast to the network. If no replies are received for the query, SIA query packets are broadcast. If no replies are received for the SIA queries, the neighbor adjacency is dropped, the route is declared to be in an SIA state, and this notification is sent.

# How to Enable EIGRP MIB

## Enabling EIGRP MIB Notifications

Perform this task to specify a Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) server host, configure an SNMP community access string, and enable Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) MIB notifications.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **snmp-server host** *{hostname | ip-address}* [**traps** | **informs** | **version** {**1** | **2c** | **3** [**auth** | **noauth** | **priv**]}] *community-string* [**udp-port** *port*] [*notification-type*]
4. **snmp-server community** *string*
5. **snmp-server enable traps** [*notification-type*]
6. **end**
7. **show running-config**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>snmp-server host</b> <i>{hostname   ip-address}</i> [ <b>traps</b>   <b>informs</b>   <b>version</b> { <b>1</b>   <b>2c</b>   <b>3</b> [ <b>auth</b>   <b>noauth</b>   <b>priv</b> ]}] <i>community-string</i> [ <b>udp-port</b> <i>port</i> ] [ <i>notification-type</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# snmp-server host 10.0.0.1 traps version 2c NETMANAGER</pre>	Specifies the destination server host or destination address for SNMP notifications.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>snmp-server community</b> <i>string</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# snmp-server community EIGRP1NET1A</pre>	Configures a community access string to permit SNMP access to the local router by the remote SNMP software client. <b>Note</b> Cisco software supports both IPv4 and IPv6.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>snmp-server enable traps</b> [ <i>notification-type</i> ] <b>Example:</b>	Enables SNMP support for EIGRP notifications.



	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# snmp-server enable traps eigrp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Notifications can be configured for only neighbor authentication failure, neighbor down, and stuck-in-active (SIA) events.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# end	Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show running-config</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# show running-config   include snmp	Displays contents of the current running configuration file. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the output modifier “ ” to display and verify the SNMP configuration.</li> </ul>

## Configuration Examples for EIGRP MIB

### Example: Enabling EIGRP MIB Notifications

The following example shows how to specify a Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) server host, configure an SNMP community string, and enable support for Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) notifications:

```
Device(config)# snmp-server host 10.0.0.2 traps version 2c NETMANAGER eigrp
Device(config)# snmp-server community EIGRP1NET1A
Device(config)# snmp-server enable traps eigrp
```

The following sample output from the **show running-config** command displays the EIGRP MIB configuration:

```
Device# show running-config | include snmp

snmp-server community EIGRP1NET1A
snmp-server enable traps eigrp
snmp-server host 10.0.0.2 version 2c NETMANAGER eigrp
```

## Additional References for EIGRP MIB

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
EIGRP commands	<i>EIGRP Command Reference</i>
Basic EIGRP configuration tasks	“Configuring EIGRP” module in the <i>EIGRP Configuration Guide</i>
SNMP commands	<i>SNMP Support Command Reference</i>

Related Topic	Document Title
SNMP configuration tasks	“Configuring SNMP Support” module in the <i>SNMP Configuration Guide</i>

#### Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Title
RFC 1213	<i>Management Information Base for Network Management of TCP/IP-based Internet: MIB-II</i>

## Feature Information for EIGRP MIB

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 40: Feature Information for EIGRP MIB**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
EIGRP MIB	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	The EIGRP MIB feature provides complete Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) support for GET requests and limited notification (trap) support for neighbor authentication failure, neighbor down, and stuck-in-active (SIA) events. This MIB is accessed through remote Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) software clients.  This feature was introduced.



## CHAPTER 18

# Configuring EIGRP Wide Metrics

- [EIGRP Wide Metrics, on page 297](#)

## EIGRP Wide Metrics

The EIGRP Wide Metrics feature supports 64-bit metric calculations and Routing Information Base (RIB) scaling in Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) topologies. The 64-bit calculations work only in EIGRP named mode configurations. EIGRP classic mode configurations use 32-bit calculations. This module provides an overview of the EIGRP Wide Metrics feature.

## Information About EIGRP Wide Metrics

### EIGRP Composite Cost Metrics

The Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) uses bandwidth, delay, reliability, load, and K values (various constants that can be configured by a user to produce varying routing behaviors) to calculate the composite cost metric for local Routing Information Base (RIB) installation and route selections. The EIGRP composite cost metric is calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{EIGRP composite cost metric} = 256 * ((K1 * \text{Scaled Bw}) + (K2 * \text{Scaled Bw}) / (256 - \text{Load}) + (K3 * \text{Scaled Delay}) * (K5 / (\text{Reliability} + K4)))$$

EIGRP uses one or more vector metrics to calculate the composite cost metric. The table below lists EIGRP vector metrics and their descriptions.

**Table 41: EIGRP Vector Metrics**

Vector Metric	Description
bandwidth	The minimum bandwidth (Bw) of the route, in kilobits per second. It can be 0 or any positive integer. The bandwidth for the formula is scaled and inverted by using the following formula: $\text{Scaled Bw} = (10^7 / \text{minimum bandwidth (Bw) in kilobits per second})$
delay	Route delay, in tens of microseconds. $\text{Scaled Delay} = (\text{Delay} / 10)$

Vector Metric	Description
load	The effective load of the route, expressed as a number from 0 to 255 (255 is 100 percent loading).
mtu	The minimum maximum transmission unit (MTU) size of the route, in bytes. It can be 0 or any positive integer.
reliability	The likelihood of successful packet transmission, expressed as a number between 0 and 255, where 255 means 100 percent reliability and 0 means no reliability.

EIGRP monitors metric weights, by using K values, on an interface to allow the tuning of EIGRP metric calculations and to indicate the type of service (ToS). K values are integers from 0 to 128; these integers, in conjunction with variables like bandwidth and delay, are used to calculate the overall EIGRP composite cost metric. The table below lists the K values and their defaults.

**Table 42: EIGRP K-Value Defaults**

Setting	Default Value
K1	1
K2	0
K3	1
K4	0
K5	0

Although you can configure K values to produce varying routing behaviors, most configurations use only the delay and bandwidth metrics by default, with bandwidth taking precedence, to produce a single 32-bit metric. Use of the default constants effectively reduces the above-mentioned composite cost metric formula to the following default formula:  $256 * (\text{Scaled Bw} + \text{Scaled Delay})$ .

For example, let us consider a link whose bandwidth to a particular destination is 128 kb/s and the delay is 84,000 microseconds. By using the default formula, you can simplify the EIGRP composite cost metric calculation to  $256 * (\text{Scaled Bw} + \text{Scaled Delay})$ , thus resulting in the following value:

$$\text{Metric} = 256 * (10^7 / 128 + 84000 / 10) = 256 * 86525 = 22150400$$

## EIGRP Wide Metrics

The Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) composite cost metric (calculated using the bandwidth, delay, reliability, load, and K values) is not scaled correctly for high-bandwidth interfaces or Ethernet channels, resulting in incorrect or inconsistent routing behavior. The lowest delay that can be configured for an interface is 10 microseconds. As a result, high-speed interfaces, such as 10 Gigabit Ethernet (GE) interfaces, or high-speed interfaces channeled together (GE ether channel) will appear to EIGRP as a single GE interface. This may cause undesirable equal-cost load balancing. To resolve this issue, the EIGRP Wide Metrics feature supports 64-bit metric calculations and Routing Information Base (RIB) scaling that provide the ability to support interfaces (either directly or via channeling techniques like port channels or ether channels) up to approximately 4.2 terabits.



**Note** The 64-bit metric calculations work only in EIGRP named mode configurations. EIGRP classic mode uses 32-bit metric calculations.

To accommodate interfaces with bandwidths above 1 gigabit and up to 4.2 terabits and to allow EIGRP to perform path selections, the EIGRP composite cost metric formula is modified. The paths are selected based on the computed time. The time that information takes to travel through links is measured in picoseconds. The interfaces can be directly capable of these high speeds, or the interfaces can be bundles of links with an aggregate bandwidth greater than 1 gigabit.

$$\text{Metric} = [(K1 * \text{Minimum Throughput} + \{K2 * \text{Minimum Throughput}\} / 256 - \text{Load}) + (K3 * \text{Total Latency}) + (K6 * \text{Extended Attributes})] * [K5 / (K4 + \text{Reliability})]$$

Default K values are as follows:

- K1 = K3 = 1
- K2 = K4 = K5 = 0
- K6 = 0

The EIGRP Wide Metrics feature also introduces K6 as an additional K value for future use.

By default, the path selection scheme used by EIGRP is a combination of throughput (rate of data transfer) and latency (time taken for data transfer), and the formula for calculating the composite cost metric is as follows:

$$\text{Composite Cost Metric} = (K1 * \text{Minimum Throughput}) + (K3 * \text{Total Latency})$$

Minimum Throughput =  $(10^7 * 65536) / \text{Bw}$ , where 65536 is the wide-scale constant.

Total Latency for bandwidths below 1 gigabit =  $(\text{Delay} * 65536) / 10$ , where 65536 is the wide-scale constant.

Total Latency for bandwidths above 1 gigabit =  $(10^7 * 65536 / 10) / \text{Bw}$ , 65536 is the wide-scale constant.

With the calculation of larger bandwidths, EIGRP can no longer fit the computed metric into a 4-byte unsigned long value that is needed by the Cisco RIB. To set the RIB scaling factor for EIGRP, use the **metric rib-scale** command. When you configure the **metric rib-scale** command, all EIGRP routes in the RIB are cleared and replaced with the new metric values.

## EIGRP Metric Weights

You can use the **metric weights** command to adjust the default behavior of Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) routing and metric computations. EIGRP metric defaults (K values) have been carefully selected to provide optimal performance in most networks.



**Note** Adjusting EIGRP metric weights can dramatically affect network performance. Because of the complexity of this task, we recommend that you do not change the default K values without guidance from an experienced network designer.

By default, the EIGRP composite cost metric is a 32-bit quantity that is the sum of segment delays and the lowest segment bandwidth (scaled and inverted) for a given route. The formula used to scale and invert the bandwidth value is  $10^7 / \text{minimum bandwidth in kilobits per second}$ . However, with the EIGRP Wide Metrics

feature, the EIGRP composite cost metric is scaled to include 64-bit metric calculations for EIGRP named mode configurations.

For a network of homogeneous media, this metric reduces to a hop count. For a network of mixed media (FDDI, Gigabit Ethernet (GE), and serial lines running from 9600 bits per second to T1 rates), the route with the lowest metric reflects the most desirable path to a destination.

## Mismatched K Values

EIGRP K values are the metrics that EIGRP uses to calculate routes. Mismatched K values can prevent neighbor relationships from being established and can negatively impact network convergence. The example given below explains this behavior between two EIGRP peers (Device-A and Device-B).

The following configuration is applied to Device-A. The K values are changed using the **metric weights** command. A value of 2 is entered for the *k1* argument to adjust the bandwidth calculation. A value of 1 is entered for the *k3* argument to adjust the delay calculation.

```
Device(config)# hostname Device-A
Device-A(config)# interface serial 0
Device-A(config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
Device-A(config-if)# exit
Device-A(config)# router eigrp namel
Device-A(config-router)# address-family ipv4 autonomous-system 4533
Device-A(config-router-af)# network 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255
Device-A(config-router-af)# metric weights 0 2 0 1 0 0 1
```

The following configuration is applied to Device-B, and the default K values are used. The default K values are 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, and 0.

```
Device(config)# hostname Device-B
Device-B(config)# interface serial 0
Device-B(config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
Device-B(config-if)# exit
Device-B(config)# router eigrp namel
Device-B(config-router)# address-family ipv4 autonomous-system 4533
Device-B(config-router-af)# network 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255
Device-B(config-router-af)# metric weights 0 1 0 1 0 0 0
```

The bandwidth calculation is set to 2 on Device-A and set to 1 (by default) on Device-B. This configuration prevents these peers from forming a neighbor relationship.

The following error message is displayed on the console of Device-B because the K values are mismatched:

```
*Apr 26 13:48:41.811: %DUAL-5-NBRCHANGE: IP-EIGRP(0) 1: Neighbor 10.1.1.1 (Ethernet0/0) is
down: K-value mismatch
```

The following are two scenarios where the above error message can be displayed:

- Two devices are connected on the same link and configured to establish a neighbor relationship. However, each device is configured with different K values.
- One of two peers has transmitted a “peer-termination” message (a message that is broadcast when an EIGRP routing process is shut down), and the receiving device does not support this message. The receiving device will interpret this message as a K-value mismatch.

## Additional References for EIGRP MIB

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
EIGRP commands	<i>EIGRP Command Reference</i>
Basic EIGRP configuration tasks	“Configuring EIGRP” module in the <i>EIGRP Configuration Guide</i>
SNMP commands	<i>SNMP Support Command Reference</i>
SNMP configuration tasks	“Configuring SNMP Support” module in the <i>SNMP Configuration Guide</i>

### Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Title
RFC 1213	<i>Management Information Base for Network Management of TCP/IP-based Internet: MIB-II</i>

## Feature Information for EIGRP Wide Metrics

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 43: Feature Information for EIGRP Wide Metrics**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
EIGRP Wide Metrics	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	The EIGRP Wide Metrics feature introduces 64-bit metric calculations and RIB scaling in Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) topologies.  The feature was introduced.







## CHAPTER 19

# Configuring OSPFv3 Fast Convergence - LSA and SPF Throttling

- [OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling, on page 303](#)

## OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling

The Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) link-state advertisement (LSAs) and shortest-path first (SPF) throttling feature provides a dynamic mechanism to slow down link-state advertisement updates in OSPFv3 during times of network instability. It also allows faster OSPFv3 convergence by providing LSA rate limiting in milliseconds.

## Information About OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling

### Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling

**Note**

This feature is not supported on the C9500-12Q, C9500-16X, C9500-24Q, C9500-40X models of the Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches

The OSPFv3 LSA and SPF throttling feature provides a dynamic mechanism to slow down link-state advertisement updates in OSPFv3 during times of network instability. It also allows faster OSPFv3 convergence by providing LSA rate limiting in milliseconds.

OSPFv3 can use static timers for rate-limiting SPF calculation and LSA generation. Although these timers are configurable, the values used are specified in seconds, which poses a limitation on OSPFv3 convergence. LSA and SPF throttling achieves subsecond convergence by providing a more sophisticated SPF and LSA rate-limiting mechanism that is able to react quickly to changes and also provide stability and protection during prolonged periods of instability.

# How to Configure OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling

## Tuning LSA and SPF Timers for OSPFv3 Fast Convergence

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router ospfv3** *[process-id]*
4. **timers lsa arrival** *milliseconds*
5. **timers pacing flood** *milliseconds*
6. **timers pacing lsa-group** *seconds*
7. **timers pacing retransmission** *milliseconds*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospfv3</b> <i>[process-id]</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router ospfv3 1</pre>	Enables OSPFv3 router configuration mode for the IPv4 or IPv6 address family.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>timers lsa arrival</b> <i>milliseconds</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-rtr)# timers lsa arrival 300</pre>	Sets the minimum interval at which the software accepts the same LSA from OSPFv3 neighbors.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>timers pacing flood</b> <i>milliseconds</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-rtr)# timers pacing flood 30</pre>	Configures LSA flood packet pacing.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>timers pacing lsa-group</b> <i>seconds</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# timers pacing lsa-group 300</pre>	Changes the interval at which OSPFv3 LSAs are collected into a group and refreshed, checksummed, or aged.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>timers pacing retransmission</b> <i>milliseconds</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# timers pacing retransmission 100</pre>	Configures LSA retransmission packet pacing in IPv4 OSPFv3.

## Configuring LSA and SPF Throttling for OSPFv3 Fast Convergence

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **ipv6 router ospf** *process-id*
4. **timers throttle spf** *spf-start spf-hold spf-max-wait*
5. **timers throttle lsa** *start-interval hold-interval max-interval*
6. **timers lsa arrival** *milliseconds*
7. **timers pacing flood** *milliseconds*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ipv6 router ospf</b> <i>process-id</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ipv6 router ospf 1</pre>	Enables OSPFv3 router configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>timers throttle spf</b> <i>spf-start spf-hold spf-max-wait</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-rtr)# timers throttle spf 200 200 200</pre>	Turns on SPF throttling.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>timers throttle lsa</b> <i>start-interval hold-interval max-interval</i> <b>Example:</b>	Sets rate-limiting values for OSPFv3 LSA generation.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-rtr)# timers throttle lsa 300 300 300	
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>timers lsa arrival</b> <i>milliseconds</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-rtr)# timers lsa arrival 300	Sets the minimum interval at which the software accepts the same LSA from OSPFv3 neighbors.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>timers pacing flood</b> <i>milliseconds</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-rtr)# timers pacing flood 30	Configures LSA flood packet pacing.

## Configuration Examples for OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling

### Example: Configuring LSA and SPF Throttling for OSPFv3 Fast Convergence

The following example show how to display the configuration values for SPF and LSA throttling timers:

```
Device# show ipv6 ospf

Routing Process "ospfv3 1" with ID 10.9.4.1
Event-log enabled, Maximum number of events: 1000, Mode: cyclic
It is an autonomous system boundary router
Redistributing External Routes from,
    ospf 2
Initial SPF schedule delay 5000 msecs
Minimum hold time between two consecutive SPFs 10000 msecs
Maximum wait time between two consecutive SPFs 10000 msecs
Minimum LSA interval 5 secs
Minimum LSA arrival 1000 msecs
```

## Additional References

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
IPv6 addressing and connectivity	<i>IPv6 Configuration Guide</i>
OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling	<i>OSPF Shortest Path First Throttling module</i>

**Standards and RFCs**

Standard/RFC	Title
RFCs for IPv6	IPv6 RFCs

## Feature Information for OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 44: Feature Information for OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
OSPFv3 Fast Convergence: LSA and SPF Throttling	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	The OSPFv3 LSA and SPF throttling feature provides a dynamic mechanism to slow down link-state advertisement updates in OSPFv3 during times of network instability.  This feature was introduced.





## CHAPTER 20

# Configuring NSSA for OSPFv2

- [Configuring NSSA for OSPFv2, on page 309](#)

## Configuring NSSA for OSPFv2

The Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA) feature for OSPFv2 enhances the Type 7 autonomous-system external routing calculation and translates the Type 7 Link State Advertisement (LSA) into Type 5 LSA. This feature adds support for the OSPF NSSA specification that is defined by RFC 3101, OSPF Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA) Option . RFC 3101 replaces RFC 1587, OSPF Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA) Option, and is backward compatible with RFC 1587. For additional information, refer to RFC 3101.

## Information About Configuring NSSA for OSPF

### Characteristics of RFC 3101

RFC 3101 describes the following features:

- Provides an option of importing OSPF summary routes into a Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA) as Type-3 summary-Link State Advertisement (LSA).
- Refines the setting of the forwarding address in Type-7 LSAs .
- Revises the Type-7 external route calculation .
- Strengthens the process of translating Type-7 LSAs into Type-5 LSAs.
- Modifies the process of flushing translated Type-7 LSAs.
- Defines the P-bit (propagate bit) default as clear.

### RFC 1587 Compliance

RFC 3101 compliance is automatically enabled on the devices. Use the **compatible rfc1587** command in router configuration mode to revert to route selection that is based on RFC 1587. When you configure the device to be compatible with RFC 1587, the device performs the following actions:

- Reverts the route selection process to RFC 1587.
- Configures Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR) to configure the P (propagate bit) and zero-forwarding address.
- Disables always translating Area Border Router (ABR).

## ABR as NSSA Link State Advertisement Translator

Use the Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA) for Open Shortest Path First version 2 (OSPFv2) feature to simplify administration in a network that connects a central site that uses OSPF to a remote site that is using a different routing protocol.

When the NSSA feature was not implemented, the connection between the border device at the corporate site and the remote device was not established as an OSPF stub area due to following reasons:

- Routes for the remote site were not redistributed into the stub area.
- Two routing protocols had to be maintained.

A protocol such as Routing Information Protocol (RIP) is run to handle the redistribution.

By implementing NSSA, you can extend OSPF to include the remote connection by defining the area between the border device at the corporate site and the remote device as an NSSA.

As with OSPF stub areas, NSSA areas cannot be injected with distributed routes via Type 5 Link State Advertisement (LSA). Route redistribution into an NSSA area is possible only with Type 7 LSA. An NSSA Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR) generates the Type 7 LSA, and an NSSA Area Border Router (ABR) translates the Type 7 LSA into a Type 5 LSA. These LSAs can be flooded throughout the OSPF routing domain. Route summarization and filtering are supported during the translation.

Route summarization is the consolidation of advertised addresses. This feature enables an ABR to advertise a single summary route to other areas. If the network numbers in an area are assigned in a way such that they are contiguous, you can configure the ABR to advertise a summary route that covers all the individual networks within the area that fall into the specified range.

When routes from other protocols are redistributed to OSPF area, each route is advertised individually in an external LSA. However, you can configure the Cisco IOS software to advertise a single route with a specified network address and mask for all the redistributed routes that are covered by a specified network address and mask. Thus, the size of the OSPF link-state database decreases.

RFC 3101 allows you to configure an NSSA ABR device as a forced NSSA LSA translator.



---

**Note** Even a forced translator might not translate all LSAs; translation depends on the content of each LSA.

---

The figure below shows a network diagram in which OSPF Area 1 is defined as the stub area. The Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) routes are not propagated into the OSPF domain because routing redistribution is not allowed in the stub area. However, once OSPF Area 1 is defined as an NSSA, an NSSA ASBR can include the EIGRP routes to the OSPF NSSA by generating Type 7 LSAs.



The diagram shows three OSPF areas connected in a chain. OSPF Area 2 on the left contains three routers, with one labeled 'RIP' indicating a redistribution point. OSPF Area 0 in the middle contains one router labeled 'NSSA ABR'. OSPF Area 1 on the right contains two routers, one labeled 'NSSA' and another labeled 'NSSA ABR'. An EIGRP network is shown to the right of Area 1, with a router labeled 'EIGRP' and an arrow pointing towards the 'NSSA ABR' in Area 1. The routers are represented by blue icons with four ports each.

The figure below shows the OSPF stub network with NSSA Area 1. The redistributed routes that Device 4 is propagating from the two RIP networks is translated into Type 7 LSAs by NSSA ASBR Device 3. Device 2, which is configured to be the NSSA ABR, translates the Type 7 LSAs back to Type 5 so that they can be flooded through the rest of the OSPF stub network within OSPF Area 0.

The diagram shows a network topology with four routers: Router 1 (NSSA ABR), Router 2, Router 3 (NSSA ASBR), and Router 4. Router 1 is connected to Router 2 via a serial link (S 10/0 to S 11/0). Router 2 is connected to Router 3 via a serial link (S 10/0 to S 14/0). Router 3 is connected to Router 4 via a serial link (S 13/0 to S 3/0). Router 1 is also connected to an external network (E 0/0) and an external network (E 1/1). Router 4 is connected to an external network (E 4/1). The network is divided into three areas: OSPF Area 0 (containing Router 1 and Router 5), OSPF Area 1 (containing Router 2 and Router 3), and a RIP autonomous system (containing Router 4). Router 1 is the NSSA ABR, and Router 3 is the NSSA ASBR. The diagram shows the configuration of the NSSA ABR and ASBR for OSPF and RIP integration.

## SUMMARY STEPS

- ## Routing Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.x (Catalyst 9500 Switches)

3. **router ospf** *process-id*
4. **redistribute** *protocol* [*process-id*] {**level-1** | **level-1-2** | **level-2**} [*autonomous-system-number*] [**metric** {**metric-value** | **transparent**}] [**metric-type** *type-value*] [**match** {**internal** | **external 1** | **external 2**}] [**tag** *tag-value*] [**route-map** *map-tag*] [**subnets**] [**nssa-only**]
5. **network** *ip-address wildcard-mask area area-id*
6. **area** *area-id nssa* [**no-redistribution**] [**default-information-originate** [**metric**] [**metric-type**]] [**no-summary**] [**nssa-only**]
7. **summary-address** *prefix mask* [**not-advertise**] [**tag** *tag*] [**nssa-only**]
8. **end**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospf</b> <i>process-id</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router ospf 10</pre>	Enables OSPF routing and enters router configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <i>process-id</i> argument identifies the OSPF process. The range is from 1 to 65535.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>redistribute</b> <i>protocol</i> [ <i>process-id</i> ] { <b>level-1</b>   <b>level-1-2</b>   <b>level-2</b> } [ <i>autonomous-system-number</i> ] [ <b>metric</b> { <b>metric-value</b>   <b>transparent</b> }] [ <b>metric-type</b> <i>type-value</i> ] [ <b>match</b> { <b>internal</b>   <b>external 1</b>   <b>external 2</b> }] [ <b>tag</b> <i>tag-value</i> ] [ <b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> ] [ <b>subnets</b> ] [ <b>nssa-only</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# redistribute rip subnets</pre>	Redistributes routes from one routing domain to another routing domain. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In the example, Routing Information Protocol (RIP) subnets are redistributed into the OSPF domain.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>network</b> <i>ip-address wildcard-mask area area-id</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# network 192.168.129.11 0.0.0.255 area 1</pre>	Defines the interfaces on which OSPF runs and the area ID for those interfaces.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>area</b> <i>area-id nssa</i> [ <b>no-redistribution</b> ] [ <b>default-information-originate</b> [ <b>metric</b> ] [ <b>metric-type</b> ]] [ <b>no-summary</b> ] [ <b>nssa-only</b> ] <b>Example:</b>	Configures a Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA) area.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-router)# area 1 nssa	
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>summary-address</b> <i>prefix mask</i> [ <b>not-advertise</b> ] [ <b>tag</b> <i>tag</i> ] [ <b>nssa-only</b> ] <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# summary-address 10.1.0.0 255.255.0.0 not-advertise	Controls the route summarization and filtering during the translation and limits the summary to NSSA areas.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# end	Exits router configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring an NSSA ABR as a Forced NSSA LSA Translator

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. router ospf *process-id*
4. area *area-id* nssa translate type7 always
5. area *area-id* nssa translate type7 suppress-fa
6. end

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospf</b> <i>process-id</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router ospf 1	Enables OSPF routing and enters router configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <i>process-id</i> argument identifies the OSPF process. The range is from 1 to 65535.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>nssa translate type7 always</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# area 10 nssa translate type7 always</pre>	<p>Configures a Not-So-Stubby Area Area Border Router (NSSA ABR) device as a forced NSSA Link State Advertisement (LSA) translator.</p> <p><b>Note</b> You can use the <b>always</b> keyword in the <b>area nssa translate</b> command to configure an NSSA ABR device as a forced NSSA LSA translator. This command can be used if RFC 3101 is disabled and RFC 1587 is used.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>nssa translate type7 suppress-fa</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# area 10 nssa translate type7 suppress-fa</pre>	Allows ABR to suppress the forwarding address in translated Type-5 LSA.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# end</pre>	Exits router configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Disabling RFC 3101 Compatibility and Enabling RFC 1587 Compatibility

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. router ospf *process-id*
4. compatible rfc1587
5. end

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	<p>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospf</b> <i>process-id</i> <b>Example:</b>	<p>Enables OSPF routing and enters router configuration mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <i>process-id</i> argument identifies the OSPF process.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# router ospf 1	• Use <b>router ospf</b> <i>process-id</i> command to enable OSPFv2 routing.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>compatible rfc1587</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# compatible rfc1587	Enables the device to be RFC 1587 compliant.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# end	Exits router configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuration Examples for OSPF NSSA

### Example: Configuring OSPF NSSA

In the following example, an Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) stub network is configured to include OSPF Area 0 and OSPF Area 1, using five devices. Device 3 is configured as the NSSA Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR). Device 2 configured to be the NSSA Area Border Router (ABR). OSPF Area 1 is defined as a Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA).

#### Device 1

```
hostname Device1
!
interface Loopback1
 ip address 10.1.0.1 255.255.255.255
!
interface Ethernet0/0
 ip address 192.168.0.1 255.255.255.0
 ip ospf 1 area 0
 no cdp enable
!
interface Serial10/0
 description Device2 interface s11/0
 ip address 192.168.10.1 255.255.255.0
 ip ospf 1 area 1
 serial restart-delay 0
 no cdp enable
!
router ospf 1
 area 1 nssa
!
end
```

#### Device 2

```
hostname Device2
!
!
```

**Example: Configuring OSPF NSSA**

```

interface Loopback1
 ip address 10.1.0.2 255.255.255.255
!
interface Serial10/0
 description Device1 interface s11/0
 no ip address
 shutdown
 serial restart-delay 0
 no cdp enable
!
interface Serial11/0
 description Device1 interface s10/0
 ip address 192.168.10.2 255.255.255.0
 ip ospf 1 area 1
 serial restart-delay 0
 no cdp enable
!
interface Serial14/0
 description Device3 interface s13/0
 ip address 192.168.14.2 255.255.255.0
 ip ospf 1 area 1
 serial restart-delay 0
 no cdp enable
!
router ospf 1
 area 1 nssa
!
end

```

**Device 3**

```

hostname Device3
!
interface Loopback1
 ip address 10.1.0.3 255.255.255.255
!
interface Ethernet3/0
 ip address 192.168.3.3 255.255.255.0
 no cdp enable
!
interface Serial13/0
 description Device2 interface s14/0
 ip address 192.168.14.3 255.255.255.0
 ip ospf 1 area 1
 serial restart-delay 0
 no cdp enable
!
router ospf 1
 log-adjacency-changes
 area 1 nssa
 redistribute rip subnets
!
router rip
 version 2
 redistribute ospf 1 metric 15
 network 192.168.3.0
end

```

**Device 4**

```

hostname Device4

```

```

!
interface Loopback1
 ip address 10.1.0.4 255.255.255.255
!
interface Ethernet3/0
 ip address 192.168.3.4 255.255.255.0
 no cdp enable
!
interface Ethernet4/1
 ip address 192.168.41.4 255.255.255.0
!
router rip
 version 2
 network 192.168.3.0
 network 192.168.41.0
!
end

```

### Device 5

```

hostname Device5
!
interface Loopback1
 ip address 10.1.0.5 255.255.255.255
!
interface Ethernet0/0
 ip address 192.168.0.10 255.255.255.0
 ip ospf 1 area 0
 no cdp enable
!
interface Ethernet1/1
 ip address 192.168.11.10 255.255.255.0
 ip ospf 1 area 0
!
router ospf 1
!
end

```

## Example: OSPF NSSA Area with RFC 3101 Disabled and RFC 1587 Active

In the following example, the output for the **show ip ospf** and **show ip ospf database nssa** commands shows an Open Shortest Path First Not-So-Stubby Area (OSPF NSSA) area where RFC 3101 is disabled, RFC 1587 is active, and an NSSA Area Border Router (ABR) device is configured as a forced NSSA LSA translator. If RFC 3101 is disabled, the forced NSSA LSA translator remains inactive.

Device# **show ip ospf**

```

Routing Process "ospf 1" with ID 10.0.2.1
Start time: 00:00:25.512, Time elapsed: 00:01:02.200
Supports only single TOS(TOS0) routes
Supports opaque LSA
Supports Link-local Signaling (LLS)
Supports area transit capability
Supports NSSA (compatible with RFC 1587)
Event-log enabled, Maximum number of events: 1000, Mode: cyclic
Router is not originating router-LSAs with maximum metric
Initial SPF schedule delay 5000 msec
Minimum hold time between two consecutive SPF's 10000 msec
Maximum wait time between two consecutive SPF's 10000 msec
Incremental-SPF disabled
Minimum LSA interval 5 secs

```

**Example: OSPF NSSA Area with RFC 3101 Disabled and RFC 1587 Active**

```

Minimum LSA arrival 1000 msec
LSA group pacing timer 240 secs
Interface flood pacing timer 33 msec
Retransmission pacing timer 66 msec
Number of external LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of opaque AS LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of DCbitless external and opaque AS LSA 0
Number of DoNotAge external and opaque AS LSA 0
Number of areas in this router is 1. 0 normal 0 stub 1 nssa
Number of areas transit capable is 0
External flood list length 0
IETF NSF helper support enabled
Cisco NSF helper support enabled
Reference bandwidth unit is 100 mbps
Area 1
Number of interfaces in this area is 1
It is a NSSA area
Configured to translate Type-7 LSAs, inactive (RFC3101 support
disabled)
Area has no authentication
SPF algorithm last executed 00:00:07.160 ago
SPF algorithm executed 3 times
Area ranges are
Number of LSA 3. Checksum Sum 0x0245F0
Number of opaque link LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of DCbitless LSA 0
Number of indication LSA 0
Number of DoNotAge LSA 0
Flood list length 0

```

The table below describes the **show ip ospf** display fields and their descriptions.

**Table 45: show ip ospf Field Descriptions**

Field	Description
Supports NSSA (compatible with RFC 1587)	Specifies that RFC 1587 is active or that the OSPF NSSA area is RFC 1587 compatible.
Configured to translate Type-7 LSAs, inactive (RFC3101 support disabled)	Specifies that OSPF NSSA area has an ABR device configured to act as a forced translator of Type 7 LSAs. However, it is inactive because RFC 3101 is disabled

Device2# **show ip ospf database nssa**

```

Router Link States (Area 1)
LS age: 28
Options: (No TOS-capability, DC)
LS Type: Router Links
Link State ID: 10.0.2.1
Advertising Router: 10.0.2.1
LS Seq Number: 80000004
Checksum: 0x5CA2
Length: 36
Area Border Router
AS Boundary Router
Unconditional NSSA translator
Number of Links: 1
Link connected to: a Stub Network
(Link ID) Network/subnet number: 192.0.2.5
(Link Data) Network Mask: 255.255.255.0

```



Number of MTID metrics: 0  
TOS 0 Metrics: 10

The table below describes the **show ip ospf database nssa** display fields and their descriptions.

**Table 46: show ip ospf database nssa Field Descriptions**

Field	Description
Unconditional NSSA translator	Specifies that NSSA ASBR device is a forced NSSA LSA translator

## Example: Verifying OSPF NSSA

The following is sample output from the **show ip ospf** command. The output displays that OSPF Area 1 is an NSSA area.

```
Device2# show ip ospf

Routing Process "ospf 1" with ID 10.1.0.2
Start time: 00:00:01.392, Time elapsed: 12:03:09.480
Supports only single TOS(TOS0) routes
Supports opaque LSA
Supports Link-local Signaling (LLS)
Supports area transit capability
Router is not originating router-LSAs with maximum metric
Initial SPF schedule delay 5000 msec
Minimum hold time between two consecutive SPF's 10000 msec
Maximum wait time between two consecutive SPF's 10000 msec
Incremental-SPF disabled
Minimum LSA interval 5 secs
Minimum LSA arrival 1000 msec
LSA group pacing timer 240 secs
Interface flood pacing timer 33 msec
Retransmission pacing timer 66 msec
Number of external LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of opaque AS LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of DCbitless external and opaque AS LSA 0
Number of DoNotAge external and opaque AS LSA 0
Number of areas in this router is 1. 0 normal 0 stub 1 nssa
Number of areas transit capable is 0
External flood list length 0
  Area 1
    Number of interfaces in this area is 2
  ! It is a NSSA area
    Area has no authentication
    SPF algorithm last executed 11:37:58.836 ago
    SPF algorithm executed 3 times
    Area ranges are
    Number of LSA 7. Checksum Sum 0x045598
    Number of opaque link LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
    Number of DCbitless LSA 0
    Number of indication LSA 0
    Number of DoNotAge LSA 0
    Flood list length 0
```

```
Device2# show ip ospf data

          OSPF Router with ID (10.1.0.2) (Process ID 1)
    Router Link States (Area 1)
Link ID          ADV Router          Age          Seq#          Checksum Link count
```

## Example: Verifying OSPF NSSA

```

10.1.0.1      10.1.0.1      1990      0x80000016 0x00CBCB 2
10.1.0.2      10.1.0.2      1753      0x80000016 0x009371 4
10.1.0.3      10.1.0.3      1903      0x80000016 0x004149 2

```

```

Summary Net Link States (Area 1)
Link ID      ADV Router    Age      Seq#      Checksum
192.168.0.0  10.1.0.1      1990     0x80000017 0x00A605
192.168.11.0 10.1.0.1      1990     0x80000015 0x009503

```

```

Type-7 AS External Link States (Area 1)
Link ID      ADV Router    Age      Seq#      Checksum Tag
192.168.3.0  10.1.0.3      1903     0x80000015 0x00484F 0
192.168.41.0 10.1.0.3      1903     0x80000015 0x00A4CC 0

```

The following is sample output from the **show ip ospf database data** command. The output displays additional information about redistribution between Type 5 and Type 7 LSAs for routes that are injected into the NSSA area and then flooded through the OSPF network.

```

Device2# show ip ospf database data

                OSPF Router with ID (10.1.0.2) (Process ID 1)
Area 1 database summary
  LSA Type      Count    Delete    Maxage
  Router        3         0         0
  Network       0         0         0
  Summary Net   2         0         0
  Summary ASBR  0         0         0
  Type-7 Ext    2         0         0

Prefixes redistributed in Type-7  0
  Opaque Link  0         0         0
  Opaque Area  0         0         0
  Subtotal    7         0         0

Process 1 database summary
  LSA Type      Count    Delete    Maxage
  Router        3         0         0
  Network       0         0         0
  Summary Net   2         0         0
  Summary ASBR  0         0         0
  Type-7 Ext    2         0         0
  Opaque Link   0         0         0
  Opaque Area   0         0         0
  Type-5 Ext    0         0         0

Prefixes redistributed in Type-5  0
  Opaque AS     0         0         0
  Total         7         0         0

```

The following is sample output from the **show ip ospf database nssa** command. The output displays detailed information for Type 7 to Type 5 translations:

```

Device2# show ip ospf database nssa

                OSPF Router with ID (10.1.0.2) (Process ID 1)
Type-7 AS External Link States (Area 1)
Routing Bit Set on this LSA
LS age: 1903
Options: (No TOS-capability, Type 7/5 translation, DC)
LS Type: AS External Link
Link State ID: 192.168.3.0 (External Network Number )
Advertising Router: 10.1.0.3

```

```

LS Seq Number: 80000015
Checksum: 0x484F
Length: 36
Network Mask: /24
Metric Type: 2 (Larger than any link state path)
TOS: 0
Metric: 20
Forward Address: 192.168.14.3
External Route Tag: 0
Routing Bit Set on this LSA
LS age: 1903
! Options: (No TOS-capability, Type 7/5 translation, DC)
LS Type: AS External Link
Link State ID: 192.168.41.0 (External Network Number )
Advertising Router: 10.1.0.3
LS Seq Number: 80000015
Checksum: 0xA4CC
Length: 36
Network Mask: /24
Metric Type: 2 (Larger than any link state path)
TOS: 0
Metric: 20
Forward Address: 192.168.14.3
External Route Tag: 0

```

The following sample output from the **show ip ospf** command displays that the device is acting as an ASBR and OSPF Area 1 is configured as an NSSA area:

Device3# **show ip ospf**

```

Routing Process "ospf 1" with ID 10.1.0.3
Start time: 00:00:01.392, Time elapsed: 12:02:34.572
Supports only single TOS(TOS0) routes
Supports opaque LSA
Supports Link-local Signaling (LLS)
Supports area transit capability
!It is an autonomous system boundary router
Redistributing External Routes from,
    rip, includes subnets in redistribution
Router is not originating router-LSAs with maximum metric
Initial SPF schedule delay 5000 msec
Minimum hold time between two consecutive SPF's 10000 msec
Maximum wait time between two consecutive SPF's 10000 msec
Incremental-SPF disabled
Minimum LSA interval 5 secs
Minimum LSA arrival 1000 msec
LSA group pacing timer 240 secs
Interface flood pacing timer 33 msec
Retransmission pacing timer 66 msec
Number of external LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of opaque AS LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of DoNotAge external and opaque AS LSA 0
Number of DoNotAge external and opaque AS LSA 0
Number of areas in this router is 1. 0 normal 0 stub 1 nssa
Number of areas transit capable is 0
External flood list length 0
    Area 1
        Number of interfaces in this area is 1
! It is a NSSA area
    Area has no authentication
    SPF algorithm last executed 11:38:13.368 ago
    SPF algorithm executed 3 times
    Area ranges are

```

## Example: Verifying OSPF NSSA

```

Number of LSA 7. Checksum Sum 0x050CF7
Number of opaque link LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of DCbitless LSA 0
Number of indication LSA 0
Number of DoNotAge LSA 0
Flood list length 0

```

The table below describes the significant fields shown in the **show ip ospf** command output.

**Table 47: show ip ospf Field Descriptions**

Field	Description
Routing process "ospf 1" with ID 10.1.0.3	Process ID and OSPF router ID.
Supports ...	Number of types of service supported (Type 0 only).
Summary Link update interval	Specifies summary update interval in hours:minutes:seconds, and time until next update.
External Link update interval	Specifies external update interval in hours:minutes:seconds, and time until next update.
Redistributing External Routes from	Lists of redistributed routes, by protocol.
SPF calculations	Lists start, hold, and maximum wait interval values in milliseconds.
Number of areas	Number of areas in router, area addresses, and so on.
SPF algorithm last executed	Shows the last time an SPF calculation was performed in response to topology change event records.
Link State Update Interval	Specifies router and network link-state update interval in hours:minutes:seconds, and time until next update.
Link State Age Interval	Specifies max-aged update deletion interval, and time until next database cleanup, in hours:minutes:seconds.

### Example: OSPF NSSA Area with RFC 3101 Disabled and RFC 1587 Active

In the following example, the output for the **show ip ospf** and **show ip ospf database nssa** commands shows an Open Shortest Path First Not-So-Stubby Area (OSPF NSSA) area where RFC 3101 is disabled, RFC 1587 is active, and an NSSA Area Border Router (ABR) device is configured as a forced NSSA LSA translator. If RFC 3101 is disabled, the forced NSSA LSA translator remains inactive.

Device# **show ip ospf**

```

Routing Process "ospf 1" with ID 10.0.2.1
Start time: 00:00:25.512, Time elapsed: 00:01:02.200
Supports only single TOS(TOS0) routes
Supports opaque LSA
Supports Link-local Signaling (LLS)
Supports area transit capability
Supports NSSA (compatible with RFC 1587)
Event-log enabled, Maximum number of events: 1000, Mode: cyclic
Router is not originating router-LSAs with maximum metric

```

```

Initial SPF schedule delay 5000 msec
Minimum hold time between two consecutive SPF's 10000 msec
Maximum wait time between two consecutive SPF's 10000 msec
Incremental-SPF disabled
Minimum LSA interval 5 sec
Minimum LSA arrival 1000 msec
LSA group pacing timer 240 sec
Interface flood pacing timer 33 msec
Retransmission pacing timer 66 msec
Number of external LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of opaque AS LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of DCbitless external and opaque AS LSA 0
Number of DoNotAge external and opaque AS LSA 0
Number of areas in this router is 1. 0 normal 0 stub 1 nssa
Number of areas transit capable is 0
External flood list length 0
IETF NSF helper support enabled
Cisco NSF helper support enabled
Reference bandwidth unit is 100 mbps
Area 1
Number of interfaces in this area is 1
It is a NSSA area
Configured to translate Type-7 LSAs, inactive (RFC3101 support
disabled)
Area has no authentication
SPF algorithm last executed 00:00:07.160 ago
SPF algorithm executed 3 times
Area ranges are
Number of LSA 3. Checksum Sum 0x0245F0
Number of opaque link LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of DCbitless LSA 0
Number of indication LSA 0
Number of DoNotAge LSA 0
Flood list length 0

```

The table below describes the significant fields shown in the **show ip ospf** command output.

**Table 48: show ip ospf Field Descriptions**

Field	Description
Supports NSSA (compatible with RFC 1587)	Specifies that RFC 1587 is active or that the OSPF NSSA area is RFC 1587 compatible.
Configured to translate Type-7 LSAs, inactive (RFC3101 support disabled)	Specifies that OSPF NSSA area has an ABR device configured to act as a forced translator of Type 7 LSAs. However, it is inactive because RFC 3101 is disabled

Device2# **show ip ospf database nssa**

```

Router Link States (Area 1)
LS age: 28
Options: (No TOS-capability, DC)
LS Type: Router Links
Link State ID: 10.0.2.1
Advertising Router: 10.0.2.1
LS Seq Number: 80000004
Checksum: 0x5CA2
Length: 36
Area Border Router
AS Boundary Router

```

```

Unconditional NSSA translator
Number of Links: 1
Link connected to: a Stub Network
(Link ID) Network/subnet number: 192.0.2.5
(Link Data) Network Mask: 255.255.255.0
Number of MTID metrics: 0
TOS 0 Metrics: 10

```

The table below describes the significant fields shown in the **show ip ospf database nssa** command output.

**Table 49: show ip ospf database nssa Field Description**

Field	Description
Unconditional NSSA translator	Specifies that NSSA ASBR device is a forced NSSA LSA translator

## Additional References for OSPF Not-So-Stubby Areas (NSSA)

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
OSPF commands	<i>Cisco IOS IP Routing: OSPF Command Reference</i>
Protocol-independent features that work with OSPF	“Configuring IP Routing Protocol-Independent Features” module in <i>IP Routing: Protocol-Independent Configuration Guide</i>

### RFCs

RFC	Title
RFC 1587	<i>The OSPF NSSA Option</i> , March 1994
RFC 3101	<i>The OSPF NSSA Option</i> January 2003

## Feature Information for Configuring NSSA

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

*Table 50: Feature Information for NSSA*

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
OSPF Support for NSSA RFC 3101	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	The OSPF Not-So-Stubby Areas (NSSA) feature enhances the Type 7 autonomous-system external routing calculation and translates the Type 7 Link State Advertisement (LSA) into Type 5 LSA.  This feature was introduced.







## CHAPTER 21

# Configuring OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer

- [Information About the OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer, on page 327](#)
- [How to Configure the OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer, on page 328](#)
- [Configuration Examples for the OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer, on page 330](#)
- [Additional References for OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer, on page 331](#)
- [Feature Information for OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer, on page 332](#)

## Information About the OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer

The OSPFv3 authentication trailer feature (as defined in RFC 7166) provides an alternative mechanism to authenticate Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) protocol packets. Prior to the OSPFv3 authentication trailer, OSPFv3 IPsec (as defined in RFC 4552) was the only mechanism for authenticating protocol packets. The OSPFv3 authentication trailer feature also provides packet replay protection through sequence number and do not have platform dependencies.

To perform non-IPsec cryptographic authentication, devices attach a special data block, that is, authentication trailer, to the end of the OSPFv3 packet. The length of the authentication trailer is not included in the length of the OSPFv3 packet but is included in the IPv6 payload length. The Link-Local Signaling (LLS) block is established by the L-bit setting in the **OSPFv3 Options** field in OSPFv3 hello packets and database description packets. If present, the LLS data block is included in the cryptographic authentication computation along with the OSPFv3 packet.

A new authentication trailer bit is introduced into the **OSPFv3 Options** field. OSPFv3 devices must set the authentication trailer bit in OSPFv3 hello packets and database description packets to indicate that all the packets on this link will include an authentication trailer. For OSPFv3 hello packets and database description packets, the authentication trailer bit indicates the authentication trailer is present. For other OSPFv3 packet types, the OSPFv3 authentication trailer bit setting from the OSPFv3 hello and database description setting is preserved in the OSPFv3 neighbor data structure. OSPFv3 packet types that do not include the **OSPFv3 Options** field uses the setting from the neighbor data structure to determine whether or not the authentication trailer is expected. The authentication trailer bit must be set in all OSPFv3 hello packets and database description packets that contain an authentication trailer.

To configure the authentication trailer, OSPFv3 utilizes the existing Cisco IOS **key chain** command. For outgoing OSPFv3 packets, the following rules are used to select the key from the key chain:

- Select the key that is the last to expire.
- If two keys have the same stop time, select the one with the highest key ID.

The security association ID maps to the authentication algorithm and the secret key that is used to generate and verify the message digest. If the authentication is configured, but the last valid key is expired, the packets are sent using the key. A syslog message is also generated. If no valid key is available, the packet is sent without the authentication trailer. When packets are received, the key ID is used to look up the data for that key. If the key ID is not found in the key chain, or if the security association is not valid, the packet is dropped. Otherwise, the packet is verified using the algorithm and the key that is configured for the key ID. Key chains support rollover using key lifetimes. A new key can be added to a key chain with the send start time set in the future. This setting allows the new key to be configured on all the devices before the keys are actually used.

The hello packets have higher priority than other OSPFv3 packets, and therefore, can get reordered on the outgoing interface. This reordering can create problems with sequence number verification on neighboring devices. To prevent sequence mismatch, OSPFv3 verifies the sequence number separately for each packet type. See RFC 7166 for more details on the authentication procedure.

During the initial rollover of the authentication trailer feature on the network, adjacency can be maintained between the devices configured with authentication routes and devices that are yet to be configured by using the deployment mode. When the deployment mode is configured using the **authentication mode deployment** command, the packets are processed differently. For the outgoing packets, OSPF checksum is calculated even if authentication trailer is configured. For incoming packets, the packets without authentication trailer or the wrong authentication hash are dropped. In the deployment mode, the **show ospfv3 neighbor detail** command shows the last packet authentication status. This information can be used to verify if the authentication trailer feature is working before the mode is set to normal with the **authentication mode normal** command.

## How to Configure the OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer

To configure OSPFv3 authentication trailer, perform this procedure:

### Before you begin

An authentication key is required for configuring OSPFv3 authentication trailer. For more information on configuring an authentication key, see *How to Configure Authentication Keys in Protocol-Independent Features*.

### Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> <b>enable</b>	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	<b>interface</b> <i>type number</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# <b>interface</b> GigabitEthernet 2/0/1	Specifies the interface type and number.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ospfv3 [pid] [ipv4   ipv6] authentication {key-chain chain-name   null}</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>ospfv3 1 ipv6 authentication key-chain ospf-1</b>	Specifies the authentication type for an OSPFv3 instance.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>router ospfv3 [process-id]</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-if) # <b>router ospfv3 1</b>	Enters OSPFv3 router configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>address-family ipv6 unicast</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router) # <b>address-family ipv6 unicast</b>	Configures the IPv6 address family in the OSPFv3 process and enters IPv6 address family configuration mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>area area-id authentication {key-chain chain-name   null}</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>area 1 authentication key-chain ospf-chain-1</b>	Configures the authentication trailer on all interfaces in the OSPFv3 area.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>area area-id virtual-link router-id authentication key-chain chain-name</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>area 1 virtual-link 1.1.1.1 authentication key-chain ospf-chain-1</b>	Configures the authentication for virtual links.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>area area-id sham-link source-address destination-address authentication key-chain chain-name</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>area 1 sham-link 1.1.1.1 1.1.1.0 authentication key-chain ospf-chain-1</b>	Configures the authentication for sham-links.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>authentication mode { deployment   normal }</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>authentication mode deployment</b>	(Optional) Specifies the type of authentication used for the OSPFv3 instance.  The <b>deployment</b> keyword provides adjacency between configured and the unconfigured authentication devices.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af) # <b>end</b>	Exits IPv6 address family configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>show ospfv3 interface</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show ospfv3</b>	(Optional) Displays OSPFv3-related interface information.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>show ospfv3 neighbor</b> [ <i>detail</i> ] <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>show ospfv3 neighbor detail</b>	(Optional) Displays OSPFv3 neighbor information on a per-interface basis.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>debug ospfv3</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# <b>debug ospfv3</b>	(Optional) Displays debugging information for OSPFv3.

## Configuration Examples for the OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer

The following sections provide examples on how to configure the OSPFv3 authentication trailer and how to verify the OSPFv3 authentication trailer configuration.

### Example: Configuring the OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer

The following example shows how to define authentication trailer on GigabitEthernet interface 1/0/1:

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ospfv3 1 ipv6 authentication key-chain ospf-1
Device(config-if)# router ospfv3 1
Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6 unicast
Device(config-router-af)# area 1 authentication key-chain ospf-1
Device(config-router-af)# area 1 virtual-link 1.1.1.1 authentication key-chain ospf-1
Device(config-router-af)# area 1 sham-link 1.1.1.1 authentication key-chain ospf-1
Device(config-router-af)# authentication mode deployment
Device(config-router-af)# end
Device(config)# key chain ospf-1
Device(config-keychain)# key 1
Device(config-keychain-key)# key-string ospf
Device(config-keychain-key)# cryptographic-algorithm hmac-sha-256
!
```

### Example: Verifying OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer

The following example shows the output of the **show ospfv3** command.

```
Device# show ospfv3
  OSPFv3 1 address-family ipv6
    Router ID 1.1.1.1
  ...
RFC1583 compatibility enabled
Authentication configured with deployment key lifetime
Active Key-chains:
```

```
Key chain ospf-1: Send key 1, Algorithm HMAC-SHA-256, Number of interfaces 1
Area BACKBONE(0)
```

The following example shows the output of the **show ospfv3 neighbor detail** command.

```
Device# show ospfv3 neighbor detail
OSPFv3 1 address-family ipv6 (router-id 2.2.2.2)
Neighbor 1.1.1.1
  In the area 0 via interface GigabitEthernet0/0
  Neighbor: interface-id 2, link-local address FE80::A8BB:CCFF:FE01:2D00
  Neighbor priority is 1, State is FULL, 6 state changes
  DR is 2.2.2.2 BDR is 1.1.1.1
  Options is 0x000413 in Hello (V6-Bit, E-Bit, R-Bit, AT-Bit)
  Options is 0x000413 in DBD (V6-Bit, E-Bit, R-Bit, AT-Bit)
  Dead timer due in 00:00:33
  Neighbor is up for 00:05:07
  Last packet authentication succeed
  Index 1/1/1, retransmission queue length 0, number of retransmission 0
  First 0x0(0)/0x0(0)/0x0(0) Next 0x0(0)/0x0(0)/0x0(0)
  Last retransmission scan length is 0, maximum is 0
  Last retransmission scan time is 0 msec, maximum is 0 msec
```

The following example shows the output of the **show ospfv3 interface** command.

```
Device# show ospfv3 interface
GigabitEthernet1/0/1 is up, line protocol is up
  Cryptographic authentication enabled
    Sending SA: Key 25, Algorithm HMAC-SHA-256 - key chain ospf-1
    Last retransmission scan time is 0 msec, maximum is 0 msec
```

## Additional References for OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Configuring OSPF features	<i>IP Routing: OSPF Configuration Guide</i>

### Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Document Title
<a href="#">RFC 7166</a>	RFC for Supporting Authentication Trailer for OSPFv3
<a href="#">RFC 6506</a>	RFC for Supporting Authentication Trailer for OSPFv3
<a href="#">RFC 4552</a>	RFC for Authentication/Confidentiality for OSPFv3

## Feature Information for OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 51: Feature Information for OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer		The OSPFv3 Authentication Trailer feature as specified in RFC 6506 provides a mechanism to authenticate OSPFv3 protocol packets as an alternative to existing OSPFv3 IPsec authentication.  The feature was introduced.



## CHAPTER 22

# Configuring OSPFv3 BFD

- [OSPFv3 for BFD, on page 333](#)

## OSPFv3 for BFD

### Information About OSPFv3 for BFD

The Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) protocol supports Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3).

### How to Configure OSPFv3 for BFD

#### Configuring BFD Support for OSPFv3

This section describes the procedures for configuring BFD support for OSPFv3, so that OSPFv3 is a registered protocol with BFD and will receive forwarding path detection failure messages from BFD. You can either configure BFD support for OSPFv3 globally on all interfaces or configure it selectively on one or more interfaces.

There are two methods for enabling BFD support for OSPFv3:

- You can enable BFD for all of the interfaces for which OSPFv3 is routing by using the **bfd all-interfaces** command in router configuration mode. You can disable BFD support on individual interfaces using the **ipv6 ospf bfd disable** command in interface configuration mode.
- You can enable BFD for a subset of the interfaces for which OSPFv3 is routing by using the **ipv6 ospf bfd** command in interface configuration mode.



---

**Note** OSPF will only initiate BFD sessions for OSPF neighbors that are in the FULL state.

---

#### Configuring Baseline BFD Session Parameters on the Interface

Repeat this task for each interface over which you want to run BFD sessions to BFD neighbors.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **interface** *type number*
4. **bfd interval** *milliseconds min\_rx milliseconds multiplier interval-multiplier*

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>type number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0</pre>	Specifies an interface type and number, and places the device in interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>bfd interval</b> <i>milliseconds min_rx milliseconds multiplier interval-multiplier</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# bfd interval 50 min_rx 50 multiplier 5</pre>	Enables BFD on the interface.

## Configuring BFD Support for OSPFv3 for All Interfaces

## Before you begin

OSPFv3 must be running on all participating devices. The baseline parameters for BFD sessions on the interfaces over which you want to run BFD sessions to BFD neighbors must be configured.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **ipv6 router ospf** *process-id* [**vrf** *vpn-name*]
4. **bfd all-interfaces**
5. **exit**
6. **show bfd neighbors** [**vrf** *vrf-name*] [**client** {**bgp** | **eigrp** | **isis** | **ospf** | **rsvp** | **te-frr**}] [*ip-address* | **ipv6** *ipv6-address*] [**details**]
7. **show ipv6 ospf** [*process-id*] [*area-id*] [**rate-limit**]



## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ipv6 router ospf</b> <i>process-id</i> [ <b>vrf</b> <i>vpn-name</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# ipv6 router ospf 2</pre>	Configures an OSPFv3 routing process.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>bfd all-interfaces</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# bfd all-interfaces</pre>	Enables BFD for all interfaces participating in the routing process.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# exit</pre>	Enter this command twice to go to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show bfd neighbors</b> [ <b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i> ] [ <b>client</b> { <b>bgp</b>   <b>eigrp</b>   <b>isis</b>   <b>ospf</b>   <b>rsvp</b>   <b>te-frr</b> }] [ <b>ip-address</b>   <b>ipv6</b> <i>ipv6-address</i> ] [ <b>details</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show bfd neighbors detail</pre>	(Optional) Displays a line-by-line listing of existing BFD adjacencies.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ipv6 ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] [ <b>rate-limit</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ipv6 ospf</pre>	(Optional) Displays general information about OSPFv3 routing processes.

## Configuring OSPF Support for BFD over IPv4 for One or More Interfaces

To configure BFD on one or more OSPF interfaces, perform the steps in this section.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **interface** *type number*

4. **ip ospf bfd [disable]**
5. **end**
6. **show bfd neighbors [details]**
7. **show ip ospf**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface <i>type number</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface fastethernet 6/0</pre>	Enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ip ospf bfd [disable]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ip ospf bfd</pre>	Enables or disables BFD on a per-interface basis for one or more interfaces associated with the OSPF routing process.  <b>Note</b> Use the <b>disable</b> keyword only if you enable BFD on all of the interfaces that OSPF is associated with using the <b>bfd all-interfaces</b> command in router configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# end</pre>	Exits interface configuration mode and returns the device to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show bfd neighbors [details]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show bfd neighbors details</pre>	(Optional) Displays information that can help verify if the BFD neighbor is active and displays the routing protocols that BFD has registered.  <b>Note</b> If hardware-offloaded BFD sessions are configured with Tx and Rx intervals that are not multiples of 50 ms, the hardware intervals are changed. However, output from the <b>show bfd neighbors details</b> command displays only the configured intervals, not the interval values that change.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ip ospf</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ip ospf	(Optional) Displays information that can help verify if BFD support for OSPF has been enabled.

## Retrieving BFDv6 Information for Monitoring and Troubleshooting

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **monitor event ipv6 static** [enable | disable]
3. **show ipv6 static** [ipv6-address | ipv6-prefix/prefix-length] [interface type number | recursive] [vrf vrf-name] [bfd] [detail]
4. **show ipv6 static** [ipv6-address | ipv6-prefix/prefix-length] [interface type number | recursive] [vrf vrf-name] [bfd] [detail]
5. **debug ipv6 static**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>monitor event ipv6 static</b> [enable   disable] <b>Example:</b>  Device# monitor event ipv6 static enable	Enables the use of event trace to monitor the operation of the IPv6 static and IPv6 static BFDv6 neighbors.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>show ipv6 static</b> [ipv6-address   ipv6-prefix/prefix-length] [interface type number   recursive] [vrf vrf-name] [bfd] [detail] <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ipv6 static vrf vrf1 detail	Displays the BFDv6 status for a static route associated with a static BFDv6 neighbor.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>show ipv6 static</b> [ipv6-address   ipv6-prefix/prefix-length] [interface type number   recursive] [vrf vrf-name] [bfd] [detail] <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ipv6 static vrf vrf1 bfd	Displays static BFDv6 neighbors and associated static routes.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>debug ipv6 static</b> <b>Example:</b>	Enables BFDv6 debugging.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# debug ipv6 static	

## Configuring BFD Support for OSPFv3

This section describes the procedures for configuring BFD support for OSPFv3, so that OSPFv3 is a registered protocol with BFD and will receive forwarding path detection failure messages from BFD. You can either configure BFD support for OSPFv3 globally on all interfaces or configure it selectively on one or more interfaces.

There are two methods for enabling BFD support for OSPFv3:

- You can enable BFD for all of the interfaces for which OSPFv3 is routing by using the **bfd all-interfaces** command in router configuration mode. You can disable BFD support on individual interfaces using the **ipv6 ospf bfd disable** command in interface configuration mode.
- You can enable BFD for a subset of the interfaces for which OSPFv3 is routing by using the **ipv6 ospf bfd** command in interface configuration mode.



**Note** OSPF will only initiate BFD sessions for OSPF neighbors that are in the FULL state.

### Example: Displaying OSPF Interface Information about BFD

The following display shows that the OSPF interface is enabled for BFD:

```
Device# show ipv6 ospf interface

Serial10/0 is up, line protocol is up
  Link Local Address FE80::A8BB:CCFF:FE00:6500, Interface ID 42
  Area 1, Process ID 1, Instance ID 0, Router ID 10.0.0.1
  Network Type POINT_TO_POINT, Cost: 64
  Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State POINT_TO_POINT, BFD enabled
  Timer intervals configured, Hello 10, Dead 40, Wait 40, Retransmit 5
    Hello due in 00:00:07
  Index 1/1/1, flood queue length 0
  Next 0x0(0)/0x0(0)/0x0(0)
  Last flood scan length is 1, maximum is 1
  Last flood scan time is 0 msec, maximum is 0 msec
  Neighbor Count is 1, Adjacent neighbor count is 1
    Adjacent with neighbor 10.1.0.1
  Suppress hello for 0 neighbor(s)
```

## Additional References

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
OSPFv3 for BFD	<i>Bidirectional Forwarding Detection module</i>

**Standards and RFCs**

Standard/RFC	Title
RFCs for IPv6	IPv6 RFCs

## Feature Information for OSPFv3 for BFD

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 52: Feature Information for OSPFv3 for BFD**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
OSPFv3 for BFD	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	BFD supports the dynamic routing protocol OSPFv3.  The feature was introduced.





## CHAPTER 23

# Configuring OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option

- [OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option, on page 341](#)
- [How to Calculate OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option, on page 342](#)
- [Configuration Examples for OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option, on page 342](#)
- [Additional References, on page 343](#)
- [Feature Information for OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option, on page 343](#)

## OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option

The Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) external path preference option feature provides a way to calculate external path preferences per RFC 5340.

### Information About OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option

#### OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option

Per RFC 5340, the following rules indicate which paths are preferred when multiple intra-AS paths are available to ASBRs or forwarding addresses:

- Intra-area paths using nonbackbone areas are always the most preferred.
- The other paths, intraarea backbone paths and interarea paths, are of equal preference.

These rules apply when the same ASBR is reachable through multiple areas, or when trying to decide which of several AS-external-LSAs should be preferred. In the former case the paths all terminate at the same ASBR, and in the latter the paths terminate at separate ASBRs or forwarding addresses. In either case, each path is represented by a separate routing table entry. This feature applies only when RFC 1583 compatibility is set to disabled using the **no compatibility rfc1583** command (RFC 5340 provides an update to RFC 1583).



#### Caution

To minimize the chance of routing loops, set identical RFC compatibility for all OSPF routers in an OSPF routing domain.

# How to Calculate OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option

## Calculating OSPFv3 External Path Preferences per RFC 5340

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router ospfv3** *[process-id]*
4. **no compatible rfc1583**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospfv3</b> <i>[process-id]</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router ospfv3 1	Enables OSPFv3 router configuration mode for the IPv4 or IPv6 address family.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>no compatible rfc1583</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# no compatible rfc1583	Changes the method used to calculate external path preferences per RFC 5340.

## Configuration Examples for OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option

### Example: Calculating OSPFv3 External Path Preferences per RFC 5340

```
show ospfv3

Routing Process "ospfv3 1" with ID 10.1.1.1
```



```

SPF schedule delay 5 secs, Hold time between two SPFs 10 secs
Minimum LSA interval 5 secs. Minimum LSA arrival 1 secs
LSA group pacing timer 240 secs
Interface flood pacing timer 33 msec
Retransmission pacing timer 66 msec
Number of external LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of areas in this router is 1. 1 normal 0 stub 0 nssa
Reference bandwidth unit is 100 mbps
RFC 1583 compatibility disabled
  Area BACKBONE(0) (Inactive)
    Number of interfaces in this area is 1
    SPF algorithm executed 1 times
    Number of LSA 1. Checksum Sum 0x00D03D
    Number of DCbitless LSA 0
    Number of indication LSA 0
    Number of DoNotAge LSA 0
    Flood list length 0

```

## Additional References

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
IPv6 addressing and connectivity	<i>IPv6 Configuration Guide</i>
OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option	<i>Configuring OSPF module</i>

### Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Title
RFCs for IPv6	IPv6 RFCs

## Feature Information for OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

*Table 53: Feature Information for OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option*

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
OSPFv3 External Path Preference Option	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	This feature provides a way to calculate external path preferences per RFC 5340.  The feature was introduced.



## CHAPTER 24

# Configuring Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3

- [Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3, on page 345](#)

## Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3

This feature provides the ability to temporarily shut down an Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) process or interface in the least disruptive manner, and to notify its neighbors that it is going away. A graceful shutdown of a protocol can be initiated on all OSPFv3 interfaces or on a specific interface.

## Information About Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3

### OSPFv3 Graceful Shutdown

The Graceful Shutdown for OSPFv3 feature provides the ability to temporarily shut down the OSPFv3 protocol in the least disruptive manner and to notify its neighbors that it is going away. All traffic that has another path through the network will be directed to that alternate path. A graceful shutdown of the OSPFv3 protocol can be initiated using the **shutdown** command in router configuration mode or in address family configuration mode.

This feature also provides the ability to shut down OSPFv3 on a specific interface. In this case, OSPFv3 will not advertise the interface or form adjacencies over it; however, all of the OSPFv3 interface configuration will be retained. To initiate a graceful shutdown of an interface, use the **ipv6 ospf shutdown** or the **ospfv3 shutdown** command in interface configuration mode.

## How to Configure Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3

### Configuring Graceful Shutdown of the OSPFv3 Process

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. Do one of the following:

- **ipv6 router ospf** *process-id*
  - **router ospfv3** *process-id*
4. **shutdown**
  5. **end**
  6. Do one of the following:
    - **show ipv6 ospf** [*process-id*]
    - **show ospfv3** [*process-id*]

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ipv6 router ospf</b> <i>process-id</i></li> <li>• <b>router ospfv3</b> <i>process-id</i></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# ipv6 router ospf 1 <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router ospfv3 101	Enables OSPFv3 routing and enters router configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>shutdown</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# shutdown	Shuts down the selected interface.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>show ipv6 ospf</b> [<i>process-id</i>]</li> <li>• <b>show ospfv3</b> [<i>process-id</i>]</li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ipv6 ospf <b>Example:</b> Device# show ospfv3	(Optional) Displays general information about OSPFv3 routing processes.

## Configuring Graceful Shutdown of the OSPFv3 Process in Address-Family Configuration Mode

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router ospfv3** *[process-id]*
4. **address-family ipv6 unicast** *[vrf vrf-name]*
5. **shutdown**
6. **end**
7. **show ospfv3** *[process-id]*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. • Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospfv3</b> <i>[process-id]</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router ospfv3 1	Enables router configuration mode for the IPv6 address family.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>address-family ipv6 unicast</b> <i>[vrf vrf-name]</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)#address-family ipv6	Enters IPv6 address family configuration mode for OSPFv3.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>shutdown</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af)# shutdown	Shuts down the selected interface.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ospfv3</b> <i>[process-id]</i> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ospfv3	(Optional) Displays general information about OSPFv3 routing processes.

## Configuration Examples for Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3

### Example: Configuring Graceful Shutdown of the OSPFv3 Process

The following example shows how to configure graceful shutdown of the OSPFv3 process in IPv6 router OSPF configuration mode configuration mode:

```
ipv6 router ospf 6
 router-id 10.10.10.10
 shutdown
```

The following example shows how to configure graceful shutdown of the OSPFv3 process in router OSPFv3 configuration mode:

```
!
router ospfv3 1
 shutdown
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
 exit-address-family
```

The following example shows how to configure graceful shutdown of the OSPFv3 process in address-family configuration mode:

```
!
router ospfv3 1
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
 shutdown
 exit-address-family
```

### Example: Configuring Graceful Shutdown of the OSPFv3 Interface

The following example shows how to configure graceful shutdown of the OSPFv3 interface using the **ipv6 ospf shutdown** command:

```
!
interface Serial2/1
 no ip address
 ipv6 enable
 ipv6 ospf 6 area 0
 ipv6 ospf shutdown
 serial restart-delay 0
 end
```

The following example shows how to configure graceful shutdown of the OSPFv3 interface using the **ospfv3 shutdown** command:

```
!
interface Serial2/0
 ip address 10.10.10.10 255.255.255.0
 ip ospf 1 area 0
 ipv6 enable
 ospfv3 shutdown
 ospfv3 1 ipv6 area 0
 serial restart-delay 0
 end
```

## Additional References for Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Configuring OSPF	“Configuring OSPF”
OSPF commands	<i>Cisco IOS IP Routing: OSPF Command Reference</i>

## Feature Information for Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 54: Feature Information for Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
Graceful Shutdown Support for OSPFv3	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	This feature provides the ability to temporarily shut down an Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) process or interface in the least disruptive manner, and to notify its neighbors that it is going away.  A graceful shutdown of a protocol can be initiated on all OSPFv3 interfaces or on a specific interface.  The feature was introduced.







## CHAPTER 25

# Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3

- [Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3, on page 351](#)

## Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3

Cisco Open Short Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) allows you to configure a Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA). An NSSA is similar to a stub area, except that an NSSA allows you to import autonomous system (AS) external routes within an NSSA using redistribution. This feature adds support for the OSPFv3 NSSA specification described by RFC 3101. RFC 3101 replaced and is backward compatible with RFC 1587.

## Information About Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3

### RFC 1587 Compliance

RFC 3101 compliance is automatically enabled on the devices. Use the **compatible rfc1587** command in router configuration mode to revert to route selection that is based on RFC 1587. When you configure the device to be compatible with RFC 1587, the device performs the following actions:

- Reverts the route selection process to RFC 1587.
- Configures Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR) to configure the P (propagate bit) and zero-forwarding address.
- Disables always translating Area Border Router (ABR).

### ABR as OSPFv3 NSSA LSA Translator

Use the Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA) for Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) feature to simplify administration in a network that connects a central site that uses OSPFv3 to a remote site that uses a different routing protocol.

When the NSSA feature is not implemented, the connection between the border device at the corporate site and the remote device is not established as an OSPFv3 stub area due to following reasons:

- Routes for the remote site are not redistributed into the stub area.
- Two routing protocols must be maintained.

A protocol such as Routing Information Protocol (RIP) for IPv6 is run to handle the redistribution. By implementing NSSA, you can extend OSPFv3 to include the remote connection by defining the area between the border device at the corporate site and the remote device as an NSSA.

As with OSPFv3 stub areas, NSSA areas cannot be injected with distributed routes via a Type 5 Link State Advertisement (LSA). Route redistribution into an NSSA area is possible only with a Type 7 LSA. An NSSA Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR) generates the Type 7 LSA, and an NSSA Area Border Router (ABR) translates the Type 7 LSA into a Type 5 LSA. These LSAs can be flooded throughout the OSPFv3 routing domain. Route summarization and filtering are supported during the translation.

Route summarization is the consolidation of advertised addresses. This feature enables an ABR to advertise a single summary route to other areas. If the network numbers in an area are assigned in a way such that they are contiguous, you can configure the ABR to advertise a summary route that covers all the individual networks within the area that fall into the specified range.

When routes from other protocols are redistributed into an OSPFv3 area, each route is advertised individually in an external LSA. However, you can configure the Cisco IOS software to advertise a single route with a specified network address and mask for all the redistributed routes that are covered by a specified network address and mask. Thus, the size of the OSPFv3 link-state database decreases.

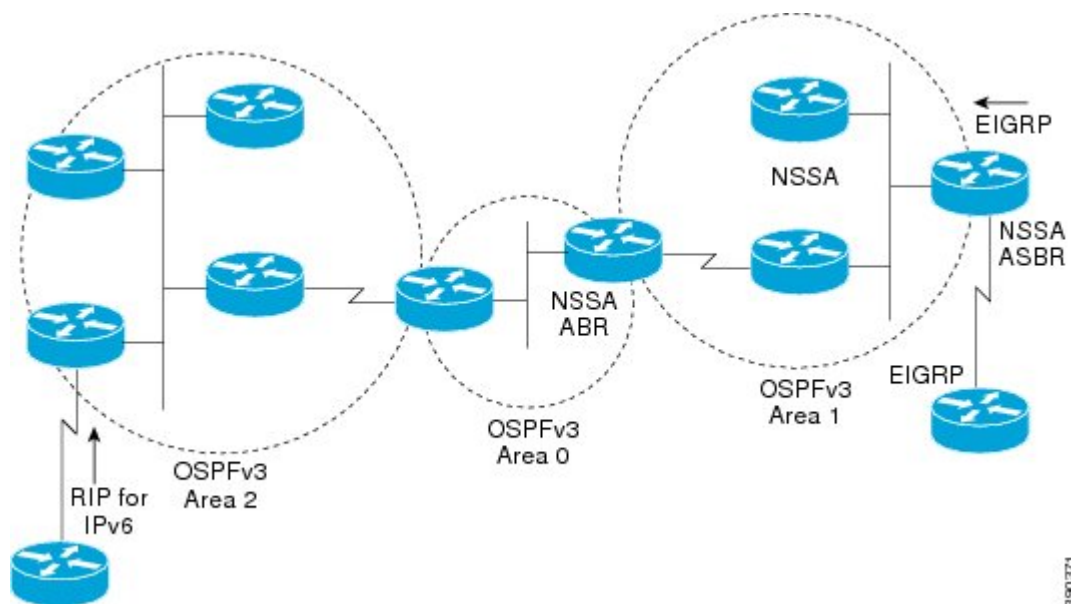
RFC 3101 allows you to configure an NSSA ABR device as a forced NSSA LSA translator.



**Note** Even a forced translator might not translate all LSAs; translation depends on the content of each LSA.

The figure below shows a network diagram in which OSPFv3 Area 1 is defined as the stub area. The Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) routes are not propagated into the OSPFv3 domain because routing redistribution is not allowed in the stub area. However, once OSPFv3 Area 1 is defined as an NSSA, an NSSA ASBR can include the EIGRP routes to the OSPFv3 NSSA by generating Type 7 LSAs.

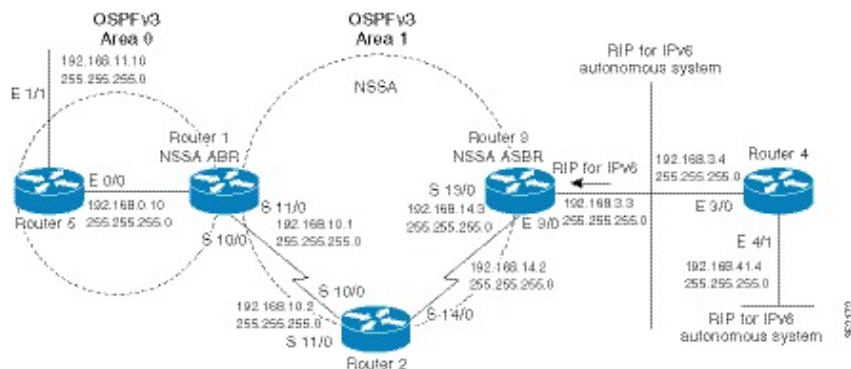
**Figure 15: OSPFv3 NSSA**



The redistributed routes from the RIP device are not allowed into OSPFv3 Area 1 because NSSA is an extension to the stub area. The stub area characteristics still exist, including the exclusion of Type 5 LSAs.

The figure below shows the OSPFv3 stub network with NSSA Area 1. The redistributed routes that Device 4 is propagating from the two RIP networks are translated into Type 7 LSAs by NSSA ASBR Device 3. Device 2, which is configured to be the NSSA ABR, translates the Type 7 LSAs back to Type 5 so that they can be flooded through the rest of the OSPFv3 stub network within OSPFv3 Area 0.

Figure 16: OSPFv3 NSSA Network with NSSA ABR and ASBR Devices



## How to Configure NSSA for OSPFv3

### Configuring an OSPFv3 NSSA Area and Its Parameters

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router ospfv3 process-id**
4. **area area-id nssa default-information-originate nssa-only**
5. **address-family {ipv4 | ipv6} [unicast]**
6. Enter either of the following commands:
  - (For IPv4) **summary-prefix {ip-prefix | ip-address-mask} [not-advertise | [tag tag-value] [nssa-only]]**
  - (For IPv6) **summary-prefix ipv6-prefix [not-advertise | [tag tag-value] [nssa-only]]**
7. **exit**
8. **redistribute protocol [process-id] {level-1 | level-1-2 | level-2} [autonomous-system-number] [metric {metric-value | transparent}] [metric-type type-value] [match {internal | external 1 | external 2}] [tag tag-value] [route-map map-tag] [nssa-only]**
9. **end**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  • Enter your password if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospfv3 <i>process-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# router ospfv3 10</pre>	Enables OSPFv3 routing and enters router configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <i>process-id</i> argument identifies the OSPFv3 process. The range is from 1 to 65535.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>area <i>area-id</i> nssa default-information-originate nssa-only</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# area 1 nssa default-information-originate nssa-only</pre>	Configures an NSSA area and sets the default advertisement to this NSSA area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the example, area 1 is configured as an NSSA area.</li> <li>The <b>nssa-only</b> keyword instructs the device to instigate Type-7 LSA with cleared P-bit, thereby, preventing LSA translation to Type 5 on NSSA ABR device.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>address-family {ipv4   ipv6} [unicast]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv4 unicast</pre> OR <pre>Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6 unicast</pre>	Enables address family configuration mode for Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>address-family ipv4 unicast</b> command configures an IPv4 address family.</li> <li>The <b>address-family ipv6 unicast</b> command configures an IPv6 address family.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	Enter either of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(For IPv4) <b>summary-prefix {<i>ip-prefix</i>   <i>ip-address-mask</i>} [not-advertise] [tag <i>tag-value</i>] [nssa-only]</b></li> <li>(For IPv6) <b>summary-prefix <i>ipv6-prefix</i> [not-advertise] [tag <i>tag-value</i>] [nssa-only]</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> (For IPv4) <pre>Device(config-router-af)# summary-prefix 10.1.0.0/16 nssa-only</pre> (For IPv6) <pre>Device(config-router-af)# summary-prefix 2001:DB8::/32 nssa-only</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(For IPv4 address family only) Defines an IPv4 summary prefix and address mask in Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) and summarizes all routes redistributed from other routing protocols.</li> <li>(For IPv6 address family only) Defines an IPv6 summary prefix in Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) and summarizes all routes redistributed from other routing protocols.</li> <li>The <b>nssa-only</b> keyword instructs the device to instigate Type-7 LSA with cleared P-bit, thereby, preventing LSA translation to Type 5 on NSSA ABR router.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router-af)# exit</pre>	Exits address-family router configuration mode and returns to the router configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>redistribute</b> <i>protocol</i> [ <i>process-id</i> ] { <b>level-1</b>   <b>level-1-2</b>   <b>level-2</b> } [ <i>autonomous-system-number</i> ] [ <b>metric</b> { <b>metric-value</b>   <b>transparent</b> }] [ <b>metric-type</b> <i>type-value</i> ] [ <b>match</b> { <b>internal</b>   <b>external 1</b>   <b>external 2</b> }] [ <b>tag</b> <i>tag-value</i> ] [ <b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> ] [ <b>nssa-only</b> ]  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# redistribute rip nssa-only	Redistributes routes from one routing domain into another routing domain.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the example, Routing Information Protocol (RIP) subnets are redistributed into the OSPFv3 domain.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# end	Exits router configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuring an NSSA ABR as a Forced NSSA LSA Translator for OSPFv3

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router ospfv3** *process-id*
4. **area** *area-id* **nssa translate type7 always**
5. **area** *area-id* **nssa translate type7 suppress-fa**
6. **end**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospfv3</b> <i>process-id</i>  <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# router ospfv3 1	Enables OSPFv3 routing and enters router configuration mode.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <i>process-id</i> argument identifies the OSPFv3 process. The range is from 1 to 65535.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>area <i>area-id</i> nssa translate type7 always</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# area 10 nssa translate type7 always</pre>	<p>Configures a Not-So-Stubby Area Area Border Router (NSSA ABR) device as a forced NSSA Link State Advertisement (LSA) translator.</p> <p><b>Note</b> You can use the <b>always</b> keyword to configure an NSSA ABR device as a forced NSSA LSA translator. This command can be used if RFC 3101 is disabled and RFC 1587 is used.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>area <i>area-id</i> nssa translate type7 suppress-fa</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# area 10 nssa translate type7 suppress-fa</pre> <p>OR</p> <pre>Device (config-router)# address-family [ipv4 ipv6] unicast Device (config-router-af)# area 10 nssa translate type7 suppress-fa Device (config-router-af)# exit</pre>	<p>Allows the ABR to suppress the forwarding address in translated Type 5 LSA.</p> <p><b>Note</b> You can configure this command in both router configuration mode and address-family configuration mode.</p>
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-router)# end</pre>	<p>Exits router configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.</p>

## Disabling RFC 3101 Compatibility and Enabling RFC 1587 Compatibility

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. router ospfv3 *process-id*
4. compatible rfc1587
5. end

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	<p>Enables privileged EXEC mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>	<p>Enters global configuration mode.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospfv3 <i>process-id</i></b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router ospfv3 1	Enables OSPFv3 routing and enters router configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <i>process-id</i> argument identifies the OSPFv3 process.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>compatible rfc1587</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# compatible rfc1587	Changes the method used to perform route selection to RFC 1587 compatibility and disables RFC 3101.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# end	Exits router configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuration Examples for Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3

### Example: NSSA for OSPFv3

Use the **show ospfv3** command to confirm that the device is acting as an Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR) and that the Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) Area 1 has been configured as a Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA) area.

```

Device# show ospfv3

OSPFv3 1 address-family ipv4
Router ID 3.3.3.3
Supports NSSA (compatible with RFC 1587)
It is an autonomous system boundary router
Redistributing External Routes from,
    static
Router is not originating router-LSAs with maximum metric
Initial SPF schedule delay 5000 msec
Minimum hold time between two consecutive SPF 10000 msec
Maximum wait time between two consecutive SPF 10000 msec
Minimum LSA interval 5 sec
Minimum LSA arrival 1000 msec
LSA group pacing timer 240 sec
Interface flood pacing timer 33 msec
Retransmission pacing timer 66 msec
Number of external LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of areas in this router is 1. 0 normal 0 stub 1 nssa
Graceful restart helper support enabled
Reference bandwidth unit is 100 mbps
RFC1583 compatibility enabled
Area 1
    Number of interfaces in this area is 1
    It is a NSSA area
    Configured to translate Type-7 LSAs, inactive (RFC3101 support disabled)

```

```

Perform type-7/type-5 LSA translation, suppress forwarding address
Area has no authentication
SPF algorithm last executed 00:00:07.160 ago
SPF algorithm executed 3 times
Area ranges are
Number of LSA 3. Checksum Sum 0x0245F0
Number of opaque link LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of DCbitless LSA 0
Number of indication LSA 0
Number of DoNotAge LSA 0
Flood list length 0

```

The table below describes the significant **show ip ospf** display fields and their descriptions.

**Table 55: show ospfv3 Field Descriptions**

Field	Description
Supports NSSA (compatible with RFC 1587)	Specifies that RFC 1587 is active or that the OSPFv3 NSSA area is RFC 1587 compatible.
Configured to translate Type-7 LSAs, inactive (RFC3101 support disabled)	Specifies that the OSPFv3 NSSA area has an ABR device configured to act as a forced translator of Type 7 LSAs. However, it is inactive because RFC 3101 is disabled.

The output of the router LSA in LSDB shows Nt-Bit if it is set in the header of LSA.

Router Link States (Area 1)

```

LS age: 94
Options: (N-Bit, R-bit, DC-Bit, AF-Bit, Nt-Bit)
LS Type: Router Links
Link State ID: 0
Advertising Router: 2.2.2.2
LS Seq Number: 80000002
Checksum: 0x8AD5
Length: 56
Area Border Router
AS Boundary Router
Unconditional NSSA translator
Number of Links: 2

```

The “Unconditional NSSA translator” line indicates that the status of the NSSA ASBR router is as a forced NSSA LSA translator.

## Additional References for Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
OSPF commands	<i>Cisco IOS IP Routing: OSPF Command Reference</i>
OSPFv3 in IPv6 routing	“IPv6 Routing: OSPFv3” module



**RFCs**

<b>RFC</b>	<b>Title</b>
RFC 1587	<a href="#">The OSPF NSSA Option</a>
RFC 3101	<a href="#">The OSPF NSSA Option</a>

## Feature Information for Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3

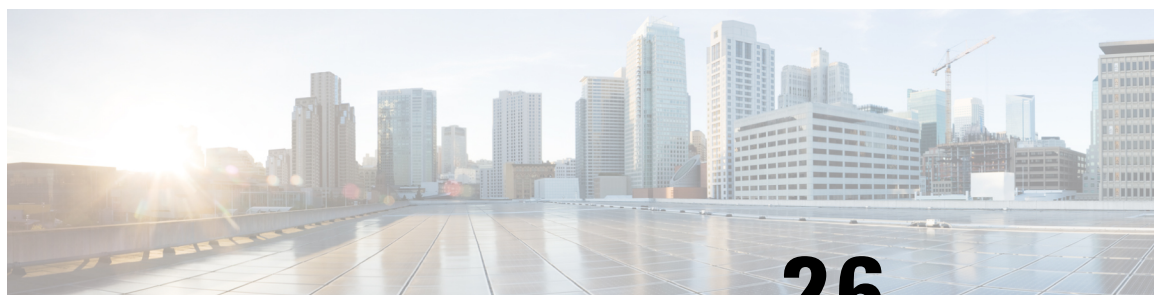
The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 56: Feature Information for Configuring NSSA for OSPFv3**

<b>Feature Name</b>	<b>Releases</b>	<b>Feature Information</b>
OSPFv3 Support for NSSA	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	Cisco Open Short Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) allows you to configure a Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA). An NSSA is similar to a stub area, except that an NSSA allows you to import autonomous system (AS) external routes within an NSSA using redistribution. This feature adds support for the OSPFv3 NSSA specification described by RFC 3101. RFC 3101 replaced and is backward compatible with RFC 1587.  The feature was introduced.





## CHAPTER 26

# Configuring OSPF Retransmissions Limit

- [OSPF Retransmissions Limit, on page 361](#)

## OSPF Retransmissions Limit

The OSPF Retransmissions Limit feature adds a limit to the number of retransmissions of database exchange and update packets for both demand and non-demand circuits. The retransmission of these packets stops once this retry limit is reached, thus preventing unnecessary use of the link in continual retransmission of the packets if, for some reason, a neighbor is not responding during adjacency forming. This feature module describes the change in how the Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) protocol handles retransmissions.

## Restrictions For OSPF Retransmissions Limit

The limit to the number of retransmissions does not apply for update packets on nonbroadcast multiaccess (NBMA) point-to-multipoint direct circuits. In this situation, the dead timer is used to end communication with non-responding neighbors and thus stop the retransmissions.

## Information About OSPF Retransmissions Limit

## Overview About OSPF Retransmissions Limit

There is a limit to the number of retransmissions of database exchange and update packets for both demand and non-demand circuits. The retransmission of these packets stops once this retry limit is reached, thus preventing unnecessary use of the link in continual retransmission of the packets if, for some reason, a neighbor is not responding during adjacency forming.

The limit for both demand circuit and non-demand circuit retransmissions is 24.

The limit-retransmissions command allows you to either remove (disable) the limit or change the maximum number of retransmissions to be a number from 1 to 255.

## Benefits

The limit-retransmissions command provides for backward compatibility for previous or other releases of Cisco IOS or other routers that do not have this feature.

# How to Configure OSPF Retransmissions Limit

## Setting OSPF Retransmission Limits

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router ospf** *process-ID*
4. **limit retransmissions**{[**dc** {*max-number* | **disable**}] [**non-dc** {*max-number* | **disable**}]}
5. **end**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  • Enter your password if prompted.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospf</b> <i>process-ID</i>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router ospf 18	Configures OSPF routing process and enters OSPF router configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>limit retransmissions</b> {[ <b>dc</b> { <i>max-number</i>   <b>disable</b> }] [ <b>non-dc</b> { <i>max-number</i>   <b>disable</b> }]}  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# limit retransmissions dc 5	Sets the limit in the number of retransmissions of database exchange and update packets for both demand and non-demand circuits.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b>  <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router)# end	Exits address router configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

## Configuration Examples for OSPF Retransmissions Limit

### Example: Configuring OSPF Retransmissions Limit

The following is an example of configuring OSPF retransmissions limit.

```
router ospf 18
  limit retransmissions dc 5
```

## Additional References for OSPF Retransmissions Limit

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Configuring OSPF	<i>IP Routing: OSPF Configuration Guide</i>
OSPF Commands	<i>IP Routing: OSPF Command Reference</i>

## Feature Information for OSPF Retransmissions Limit

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 57: Feature Information for OSPF Retransmissions Limit**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
OSPF Retransmissions Limit	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	The OSPF Retransmissions Limit feature adds a limit to the number of retransmissions of database exchange and update packets for both demand and non-demand circuits. The retransmission of these packets stops once this retry limit is reached, thus preventing unnecessary use of the link in continual retransmission of the packets if, for some reason, a neighbor is not responding during adjacency forming. .  The feature was introduced.





## CHAPTER 27

# Configuring OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA

- [OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA, on page 365](#)

## OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA

The Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) max-metric router link-state advertisement (LSA) feature enables OSPFv3 to advertise its locally generated router LSAs with a maximum metric. The feature allows OSPFv3 processes to converge but not attract transit traffic through the device if there are better alternate paths.

## Information About OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA

### OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA

The OSPFv3 max-metric router LSA feature enables OSPFv3 to advertise its locally generated router LSAs with a maximum metric. The feature allows OSPFv3 processes to converge but not attract transit traffic through the device if there are better alternate paths. After a specified timeout or a notification from Border Gateway Protocol (BGP), OSPFv3 advertises the LSAs with normal metrics.

The max-metric LSA control places the OSPFv3 router into the stub router role using its LSA advertisement. A stub router only forwards packets destined to go to its directly connected links. In OSPFv3 networks, a device could become a stub router by advertising large metrics for its connected links, so that the cost of a path through this device becomes larger than that of an alternative path. OSPFv3 stub router advertisement allows a device to advertise the infinity metric (0xFFFF) for its connected links in router LSAs and advertise the normal interface cost if the link is a stub network.

## How to Configure OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA

### Configuring the OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router ospfv3 *process-id***

4. **address-family ipv6 unicast**
5. **max-metric router-lsa** [**external-lsa** [*max-metric-value*]] [**include-stub**] [**inter-area-lsas** [*max-metric-value*]] [**on-startup** {*seconds* | **wait-for-bgp**}] [**prefix-lsa**] [**stub-prefix-lsa** [*max-metric-value*]] [**summary-lsa** [*max-metric-value*]]
6. **end**
7. **show ospfv3** [*process-id*] **max-metric**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospfv3</b> <i>process-id</i> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# router ospfv3 1	Enables OSPFv3 router configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>address-family ipv6 unicast</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config)# address-family ipv6 unicast	Configures an instance of the OSPFv3 process in the IPv6 address family.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>max-metric router-lsa</b> [ <b>external-lsa</b> [ <i>max-metric-value</i> ]] [ <b>include-stub</b> ] [ <b>inter-area-lsas</b> [ <i>max-metric-value</i> ]] [ <b>on-startup</b> { <i>seconds</i>   <b>wait-for-bgp</b> }] [ <b>prefix-lsa</b> ] [ <b>stub-prefix-lsa</b> [ <i>max-metric-value</i> ]] [ <b>summary-lsa</b> [ <i>max-metric-value</i> ]] <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af)# max-metric router-lsa on-startup wait-for-bgp	Configures a device that is running the OSPFv3 protocol to advertise a maximum metric so that other devices do not prefer the device as an intermediate hop in their SPF calculations.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> Device(config-router-af)# end	Exits address family configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ospfv3</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] <b>max-metric</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show ospfv3 1 max-metric	Displays OSPFv3 maximum metric origination information.



# Configuration Examples for OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA

## Example: Verifying the OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA

```
Router# show ipv6 ospf max-metric

      OSPFv3 Router with ID (192.1.1.1) (Process ID 1)

Start time: 00:00:05.886, Time elapsed: 3d02h
Originating router-LSAs with maximum metric
Condition: always, State: active
```

## Additional References

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
IPv6 addressing and connectivity	<i>IPv6 Configuration Guide</i>
OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA	“OSPF Link-State Advertisement Throttling” module

### Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Title
RFCs for IPv6	IPv6 RFCs

## Feature Information for OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 58: Feature Information for OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
OSPFv3 Max-Metric Router LSA	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	The OSPFv3 max-metric router LSA feature enables OSPF to advertise its locally generated router LSAs with a maximum metric.  The feature was introduced.





## CHAPTER 28

# Configuring OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore

- [OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore, on page 369](#)

## OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore

This feature enables you to prevent an interface from accepting demand-circuit requests from other devices by specifying the ignore keyword in the **ipv6 ospf demand-circuit** command.

## Information About OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore

### Demand Circuit Ignore Support

Demand Circuit Ignore Support enables you to prevent an interface from accepting demand-circuit requests from other devices by specifying the ignore keyword in the **ipv6 ospf demand-circuit** command. Demand circuit ignore instructs the router not to accept Demand Circuit (DC) negotiation and is a useful configuration option on the point-to-multipoint interface of the Hub router.

## How to Configure OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore

### Configuring Demand Circuit Ignore Support for OSPFv3

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **interface** *type number*
4. Enter one of the following commands:
  - **ipv6 ospf demand-circuit ignore**
  - **ospfv3 demand-circuit ignore**
5. **end**
6. **show ospfv3** *process-id* [*area-id*] [*address-family*] [**vrf** {*vrf-name* |\*}] **interface** [*type number*] [**brief**]

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>type number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/1/0</pre>	Configures an interface type and number and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	Enter one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ipv6 ospf demand-circuit ignore</b></li> <li>• <b>ospfv3 demand-circuit ignore</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ipv6 ospf demand-circuit ignore</pre> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ospfv3 demand-circuit ignore</pre>	Prevents an interface from accepting demand-circuit requests from other devices.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show ospfv3</b> <i>process-id</i> [ <i>area-id</i> ] [ <i>address-family</i> ] [ <b>vrf</b> { <i>vrf-name</i>  *}] <b>interface</b> [ <i>type number</i> ] [ <b>brief</b> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ospfv3 interface GigabitEthernet 0/1/0</pre>	(Optional) Displays OSPFv3-related interface information.

## Configuration Examples for OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore

### Example: Demand Circuit Ignore Support for OSPFv3

The following example shows how to configure demand circuit ignore support for OSPFv3:

```
interface Serial0/0
 ip address 6.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
 ipv6 enable
```

```
ospfv3 network point-to-multipoint
ospfv3 demand-circuit ignore
ospfv3 1 ipv6 area 0
```

## Additional References for OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore

The following sections provide references related to the OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore feature.

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
OSPF configuration tasks	“Configuring OSPF”
OSPF commands	<i>Cisco IOS IP Routing: OSPF Command Reference</i>

### Technical Assistance

Description	Link
The Cisco Support and Documentation website provides online resources to download documentation, software, and tools. Use these resources to install and configure the software and to troubleshoot and resolve technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support and Documentation website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a>

## Feature Information for OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 59: Feature Information for OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	The OSPFv3 Demand Circuit Ignore feature enables you to prevent an interface from accepting demand-circuit requests from other devices by specifying the ignore keyword in the <b>ipv6 ospf demand-circuit</b> command.  The feature was introduced.





## CHAPTER 29

# Configuring Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3

---

- [Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3, on page 373](#)

## Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3

This feature enables Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) to hide the IPv4 and IPv6 prefixes of connected networks from link-state advertisements (LSAs). When OSPFv3 is deployed in large networks, limiting the number of IPv4 and IPv6 prefixes that are carried in the OSPFv3 LSAs can speed up OSPFv3 convergence.

This feature can also be utilized to enhance the security of an OSPFv3 network by allowing the network administrator to prevent IP routing toward internal nodes.

## Prerequisites for Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3

Before you can use the mechanism to exclude IPv4 and IPv6 prefixes from LSAs, the OSPFv3 routing protocol must be configured.

## Information About Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3

### OSPFv3 Prefix Suppression Support

The OSPFv3 Prefix Suppression Support feature allows you to hide IPv4 and IPv6 prefixes that are configured on interfaces running OSPFv3.

In OSPFv3, addressing semantics have been removed from the OSPF protocol packets and the main LSA types, leaving a network-protocol-independent core. This means that Router-LSAs and network-LSAs no longer contain network addresses, but simply express topology information. The process of hiding prefixes is simpler in OSPFv3 and suppressed prefixes are simply removed from the intra-area-prefix-LSA. Prefixes are also propagated in OSPFv3 via link LSAs.

The OSPFv3 Prefix Suppression feature provides a number of benefits. The exclusion of certain prefixes from advertisements means that there is more memory available for LSA storage, bandwidth and buffers for LSA flooding, and CPU cycles for origination and flooding of LSAs and for SPF computation. Prefixes are also filtered from link LSAs. A device only filters locally configured prefixes, not prefixes learnt via link LSAs.

In addition, security has been improved by reducing the possibility of remote attack with the hiding of transit-only networks.

## Globally Suppress IPv4 and IPv6 Prefix Advertisements by Configuring the OSPFv3 Process

You can reduce OSPFv3 convergence time by configuring the OSPFv3 process on a device to prevent the advertisement of all IPv4 and IPv6 prefixes by using the **prefix-suppression** command in router configuration mode or address-family configuration mode.



**Note** Prefixes that are associated with loopbacks, secondary IP addresses, and passive interfaces are not suppressed by the **router mode** or the **address-family** configuration commands because typical network designs require prefixes to remain reachable.

## Suppress IPv4 and IPv6 Prefix Advertisements on a Per-Interface Basis

You can explicitly configure an OSPFv3 interface not to advertise its IP network to its neighbors by using the **ipv6 ospf prefix-suppression** command or the **ospfv3 prefix-suppression** command in interface configuration mode.



**Note** If you have globally suppressed IPv4 and IPv6 prefixes from connected IP networks by configuring the **prefix-suppression** router configuration command, the interface configuration command takes precedence over the router configuration command.

## How to Configure Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3

### Configuring Prefix Suppression Support of the OSPFv3 Process

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **configure terminal**
3. **router ospfv3** *process-id* [**vrf** *vpn-name*]
4. **prefix-suppression**
5. **end**
6. **show ospfv3**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b>  Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  • Enter your password if prompted.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospfv3 process-id [vrf vpn-name]</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# router ospfv3 23	Configures an OSPFv3 routing process and enters router configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>prefix-suppression</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# prefix-suppression	Prevents OSPFv3 from advertising all IPv4 and IPv6 prefixes, except prefixes that are associated with loopbacks, secondary IP addresses, and passive interfaces.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show ospfv3</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ospfv3	Displays general information about OSPFv3 routing processes.  <b>Note</b> Use this command to verify that IPv4 and IPv6 prefix suppression has been enabled.

## Configuring Prefix Suppression Support of the OSPFv3 Process in Address-Family Configuration Mode

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. router ospfv3 process-id [vrf vpn-name]
4. address-family ipv6 unicast
5. prefix-suppression
6. end
7. show ospfv3

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.  • Enter your password if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>router ospfv3 process-id [vrf vpn-name]</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config)# router ospfv3 23	Configures an OSPFv3 routing process and enters router configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>address-family ipv6 unicast</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router)# address-family ipv6 unicast	Enters IPv6 address family configuration mode for OSPFv3.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>prefix-suppression</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router-af)# prefix-suppression	Prevents OSPFv3 from advertising all IPv4 and IPv6 prefixes, except prefixes that are associated with loopbacks, secondary IP addresses, and passive interfaces.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device(config-router-af)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show ospfv3</b> <b>Example:</b>  Device# show ospfv3	Displays general information about OSPFv3 routing processes.  <b>Note</b> Use this command to verify that IPv4 and IPv6 prefix suppression has been enabled.

## Configuring Prefix Suppression Support on a Per-Interface Basis

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. enable
2. configure terminal
3. interface type number
4. Do one of the following:
  - ipv6 ospf prefix-suppression [disable]
  - ospfv3 prefix-suppression disable
5. end
6. show ospfv3 interface

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device&gt; enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>type number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config)# interface serial 0/0</pre>	Configures an interface type and enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ipv6 ospf prefix-suppression [disable]</b></li> <li>• <b>ospfv3 prefix-suppression disable</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ipv6 ospf prefix-suppression</pre> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# ospfv3 1 prefix-suppression disable</pre>	Prevents OSPFv3 from advertising IPv4 and IPv6 prefixes that belong to a specific interface, except those that are associated with secondary IP addresses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you enter the <b>ipv6 ospf prefix-suppression</b> command or the <b>ospfv3 prefix-suppression</b> command in interface configuration mode, it takes precedence over the <b>prefix-suppression</b> command that is entered in router configuration mode.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device(config-if)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show ospfv3 interface</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>Device# show ospfv3 interface</pre>	Displays OSPFv3-related interface information. <b>Note</b> Use this command to verify that IPv4 and IPv6 prefix suppression has been enabled for a specific interface.

## Troubleshooting IPv4 and IPv6 Prefix Suppression

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **enable**
2. **debug ospfv3 lsa-generation**
3. **debug condition interface** *interface-type interface-number* [**dlci** *dlci*] [**vc** {*vci* | *vpi* | *vci*}]
4. **show debugging**

## 5. `show logging [slot slot-number | summary]`

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter your password if prompted.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>debug ospfv3 lsa-generation</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# debug ospfv3 lsa-generation	Displays informations about each OSPFv3 LSA that is generated.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>debug condition interface</b> <i>interface-type interface-number</i> <b>[dlci dlci] [vc {vci   vpi   vci}]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# debug condition interface serial 0/0	Limits output for some <b>debug</b> commands on the basis of the interface or virtual circuit.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>show debugging</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show debugging	Displays information about the types of debugging that are enabled for your device.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show logging [slot slot-number   summary]</b> <b>Example:</b> Device# show logging	Displays the state of syslog and the contents of the standard system logging buffer.

## Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3

### Example: Configuring Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3

The following example shows how to configure prefix suppression support for OSPFv3 in router configuration mode:

```
router ospfv3 1
 prefix-suppression
 !
 address-family ipv6 unicast
  router-id 0.0.0.6
 exit-address-family
```

The following example shows how to configure prefix suppression support for OSPFv3 in address-family configuration mode:

```
router ospfv3 1
```

```
!  
address-family ipv6 unicast  
router-id 10.0.0.6  
prefix-suppression  
exit-address-family
```

The following example shows how to configure prefix suppression support for OSPFv3 in interface configuration mode:

```
interface Ethernet0/0  
ip address 10.0.0.1 255.255.255.0  
ipv6 address 2001:201::201/64  
ipv6 enable  
ospfv3 prefix-suppression  
ospfv3 1 ipv4 area 0  
ospfv3 1 ipv6 area 0  
end
```

## Feature Information for Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Use Cisco Feature Navigator to find information about platform support and Cisco software image support. To access Cisco Feature Navigator, go to [www.cisco.com/go/cfn](http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn). An account on Cisco.com is not required.

**Table 60: Feature Information for Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3**

Feature Name	Releases	Feature Information
Prefix Suppression Support for OSPFv3	Cisco IOS XE Fuji 16.8.1a	<p>This feature enables Open Shortest Path First version 3 (OSPFv3) to hide the IPv4 and IPv6 prefixes of connected networks from link-state advertisements (LSAs).</p> <p>This feature can also be used to enhance the security of an OSPFv3 network by allowing the network administrator to prevent IP routing toward internal nodes.</p> <p>The feature was introduced.</p>

